

# Environmental Science: East Asia and the World

EnviroLab Asia Fellows

June 12, 2018



# Contents

0.1	Guiding Principles . . . . .	xiii
0.1.1	Goals . . . . .	xiii
0.1.2	Rationale . . . . .	xiii
0.1.3	Activity . . . . .	xiii
0.2	East Asia and the World . . . . .	xiii
0.3	Acknowledgments . . . . .	xiii
0.4	Thoughts for the Contributors . . . . .	xiv
0.4.1	Why Learn L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X? . . . . .	xiv
0.4.2	How to Learn L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X? . . . . .	xiv
0.4.3	Noting Your Contribution . . . . .	xiv
0.5	Setting Up Book Project-Type Setting w/ L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X . . . . .	xiv
0.5.1	The Standard Latex Book Class . . . . .	xiv
0.5.2	Structuring the Text with Nested Hierarchies . . . . .	xiv
0.5.3	Font Changes . . . . .	xiv
0.5.4	Mathematics and Text . . . . .	xv
0.5.5	Lists Environments: Making bulleted, numbered, description lists . . . . .	xvi
0.5.6	Theorem-Like Environments . . . . .	xvii
0.5.7	Peer Review Commenting . . . . .	xvii
0.5.8	Adding Figures, etc . . . . .	xvii
0.5.9	Using Rnw Files – Deprecated . . . . .	xvii
0.5.10	Creating a floating figure . . . . .	xvii
0.5.11	Using Boxes . . . . .	xvii
0.5.12	minibox X . . . . .	xvii
0.5.13	Creating References, Indices, and Glossaries . . . . .	xvii
<b>Introduction</b>		<b>xix</b>
0.6	Goals . . . . .	xix
0.6.1	Guiding Principles . . . . .	xix
0.6.2	Goals . . . . .	xix
0.6.3	Rationale . . . . .	xix
0.7	Acknowledgments . . . . .	xix
0.7.1	EnviroLab Asia . . . . .	xix
0.7.2	Faculty . . . . .	xx
0.7.3	Activity . . . . .	xx
0.8	Patterns and Processes in Scale . . . . .	xx
0.8.1	Project Themes . . . . .	xx
0.9	East Asia and the World . . . . .	xx

<b>I Vertical Processes</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1 Earth-Sun System</b>	<b>3</b>
1.1 The Pale Blue Dot . . . . .	3
1.1.1 Voyager 1's Legacy . . . . .	3
1.2 Formation of the Solar System . . . . .	5
1.2.1 The Nebular Hypothesis . . . . .	5
1.2.2 Rocky versus Giant Gas Planets . . . . .	5
1.3 Global Energy Flow . . . . .	6
1.3.1 Radiant Energy Impinges on the Earth's Atmosphere . . . . .	6
1.3.2 Energy is Conserved . . . . .	6
1.3.3 The Sun and the Solar Constant . . . . .	7
1.3.4 The Dark Earth Model . . . . .	8
1.3.5 The Shiny Earth Model . . . . .	10
1.4 The Atmosphere . . . . .	11
1.4.1 Modeling an Interacting Atmosphere . . . . .	11
1.4.2 Interaction of UV Light . . . . .	11
1.4.3 Interaction of IR Light . . . . .	13
1.4.4 The Shell-Atmosphere Model . . . . .	14
1.5 Greenhouse Gases in Asia . . . . .	16
1.5.1 Gross versus Per Capita GHG Emissions . . . . .	16
1.6 Conclusion . . . . .	17
<b>2 Tropospheric Heat Transfers</b>	<b>27</b>
2.1 Hydrological Cycle . . . . .	27
2.1.1 Solar Radiation as a Driver the Hydrological Cycle . . . . .	27
2.1.2 Heat and Evaporation . . . . .	27
2.1.3 Precipitation: Rain and Snow . . . . .	28
2.1.4 Tropical Zones . . . . .	28
2.1.5 Temperate Zones . . . . .	28
2.1.6 Monsoons . . . . .	28
2.2 Static versus Dynamic Views of the Climate System . . . . .	28
2.2.1 Paleoclimates versus Climate Change . . . . .	28
2.2.2 Climate in the Anthropocene . . . . .	29
2.3 Conclusion . . . . .	29
<b>3 Phytomass</b>	<b>31</b>
3.1 Introduction . . . . .	31
3.1.1 Tropical Forests: Stored Solar Energy & Evolutionary Trove . . . . .	31
3.1.2 Biodiversity Hotspots . . . . .	31
3.2 Primary Production . . . . .	34
3.2.1 Plant Biomass and Productivity . . . . .	34
3.2.2 Gross and Net Primary Productivity . . . . .	35
3.2.3 Photosynthesis . . . . .	35
3.2.4 Biomass and the Carbon Cycle . . . . .	37
3.3 Plant Biodiversity . . . . .	37
3.3.1 What causes biological diversity? . . . . .	37
3.3.2 Structure and Function of Ecosystems: Losses of Biodiversity . . . . .	39

3.4	Deforestation . . . . .	40
3.4.1	Unprecedented Rates of Land Conversions . . . . .	40
3.4.2	Causes and Consequences of Deforestation . . . . .	40
3.4.3	Socio-political Forces . . . . .	42
3.5	Conservation Efforts . . . . .	42
3.5.1	Biodiversity Hotspots and Conservation Priorities . . . . .	42
3.5.2	Traditional Ecological Knowledge . . . . .	42
3.5.3	Box X.X Case Study: The Javan Rhinos . . . . .	44
3.5.4	Conservation and Forest Management . . . . .	44
3.6	Conclusion . . . . .	45
<b>4</b>	<b>Soils</b>	<b>47</b>
4.1	A Living Resources . . . . .	47
4.1.1	Soil Ecosystem Services . . . . .	47
4.1.2	Soil Development: 4 Processes . . . . .	47
4.2	Pedogenesis . . . . .	48
4.2.1	Biotic and Abiotic Factors . . . . .	48
4.2.2	Biogeochemistry of Soils . . . . .	50
4.2.3	Phytomass Drives Pedogenesis . . . . .	50
4.2.4	Soil Horizons versus Sediments . . . . .	51
4.2.5	Soil Horizons . . . . .	52
4.3	Classifying Soils . . . . .	52
4.3.1	Soil Definition . . . . .	52
4.3.2	Geology and Soil Types . . . . .	53
4.3.3	Classification Schemes . . . . .	53
4.3.4	Box XX: USDA Soil Classification . . . . .	54
4.4	Human Impacts on Soils . . . . .	55
4.4.1	Contextualizing Soils in Southeast Asia . . . . .	55
4.4.2	A Resource in Peril . . . . .	58
4.4.3	Soil Erosion . . . . .	58
4.4.4	Soil Erosion and Carbon Cycle . . . . .	59
4.4.5	Swidden and Fallow Cultivation practices . . . . .	60
4.4.6	Soils and Carbon Budget . . . . .	60
4.4.7	Carbon Emissions from Soils . . . . .	62
4.4.8	Mapping of Emissions through Southeast Asia . . . . .	62
4.4.9	Box X.XX Borneo's Biomass . . . . .	63
4.5	Summary . . . . .	63
<b>5</b>	<b>Peatlands</b>	<b>65</b>
5.1	Introduction . . . . .	65
5.1.1	Peatlands . . . . .	65
5.2	What is peat? . . . . .	67
5.3	How is peat formed? . . . . .	68
5.3.1	Characteristics of peat . . . . .	68
5.3.2	What is carbon storage? . . . . .	68
5.3.3	Soil Moisture . . . . .	70
5.3.4	Soil Temperature . . . . .	70
5.4	What are the human impacts on peatlands? . . . . .	70

5.4.1	Climate change . . . . .	72
5.4.2	Mineralization . . . . .	72
5.4.3	Fires . . . . .	73
5.4.4	Land Conversion . . . . .	74
5.5	Indonesian Peatlands Borneo . . . . .	75
5.6	Conclusion . . . . .	76
<b>6</b>	<b>Water - Benthic Interface</b> . . . . .	<b>79</b>
6.1	Introduction . . . . .	79
6.2	Benthos: A Critical Ecological Value . . . . .	79
6.2.1	Oxygen in the Atmosphere . . . . .	80
6.3	Biogeochemistry . . . . .	82
6.3.1	Sediment-Water Interface . . . . .	82
6.3.2	Nutrient Cycling . . . . .	82
6.3.3	Benthic Metabolism . . . . .	82
6.4	Mangroves . . . . .	84
6.4.1	What are mangroves? . . . . .	84
6.4.2	Reproduction . . . . .	85
6.4.3	Tannin Value . . . . .	85
6.4.4	The Ecological and Economic Importance of Mangroves . . . . .	86
6.4.5	Biotic Life in Mangroves . . . . .	88
6.4.6	Fauna . . . . .	88
6.4.7	Abiotic Factors . . . . .	90
6.4.8	Rizospheric Bacteria in Mangroves . . . . .	91
6.5	Shrimp Farming and Aquaculture . . . . .	93
6.5.1	Shrimp and Mangrove Losses in Thailand . . . . .	93
6.5.2	Shrimp Aquaculture . . . . .	93
6.6	Conclusion . . . . .	94
<b>7</b>	<b>Sea Level and Coastal Elevations</b> . . . . .	<b>95</b>
7.1	Introduction . . . . .	95
7.1.1	Coastal Implications to Climate Change . . . . .	95
7.1.2	Geologic Records of Sea Level Changes . . . . .	95
7.1.3	Sea level and SE Asia . . . . .	95
7.1.4	Chapter Preview . . . . .	96
7.2	Sea Level Rise in Southeast Asia . . . . .	96
7.2.1	SE Asia Geography as a Colonial Project . . . . .	96
7.2.2	Tectonic History of SE Asia . . . . .	97
7.2.3	Sea Level Change . . . . .	98
7.2.4	Isostasy . . . . .	99
7.3	Groundwater Extraction . . . . .	101
7.3.1	What is Groundwater? . . . . .	101
7.4	Mekong Delta: Sea Level Rise and Vulnerable Peoples . . . . .	101
7.4.1	Deltas in South Asia and Agriculture . . . . .	101
7.4.2	Geographical Context of Mekong Delta . . . . .	101
7.4.3	Geologic Origins . . . . .	102
7.4.4	Holocene Sea Level Patterns . . . . .	102
7.4.5	Sea Level Rise in the Mekong . . . . .	102

7.4.6	River Hydrograph . . . . .	103
7.4.7	Shoreline and Coastal Erosion . . . . .	104
7.4.8	Socio-economic Considerations . . . . .	104
7.5	Anthropogenic Environmental Challenges . . . . .	105
7.5.1	Hydromodification . . . . .	105
7.5.2	Reef Building as a Shoreline Protection and Mitigation Strategy . . . . .	105
7.5.3	Conclusion . . . . .	106
<b>8</b>	<b>Tectonic Hazards: Earthquakes, Tsumis, and Volcanoes</b>	<b>107</b>
8.1	section . . . . .	107
8.1.1	subsection . . . . .	107
<b>9</b>	<b>Ores and the Miseries of Modernity</b>	<b>109</b>
9.1	Mining Metals . . . . .	109
9.1.1	Aluminum, Copper, and Rare Earth Metals . . . . .	109
9.1.2	Gold in the Philippines . . . . .	109
9.1.3	Geology and Gold . . . . .	110
9.1.4	Mining Methods and Ecological Impacts . . . . .	110
9.2	Asia's Appetite for Sand . . . . .	111
<b>10</b>	<b>Fossil Fuels: Energy Resources in the Lithosphere</b>	<b>113</b>
10.1	Energy: Industry, Food, and Population . . . . .	113
10.1.1	Malthus and New Limits . . . . .	113
10.2	Coal, Natural Gas, and Crude Oil . . . . .	114
10.2.1	Fossil Fuels and the Environment . . . . .	114
10.3	Geologic Processes and Fossil Fuel Production . . . . .	115
10.3.1	What are fossil fuels? . . . . .	115
10.3.2	Coal Formations . . . . .	116
10.3.3	Petroleum and Natural Gas Formation . . . . .	117
10.4	Extracting Fossil Fuels: Coal Mining . . . . .	118
10.4.1	Environmental Effects of Coal Mining . . . . .	119
10.5	Oil and Natural Gas Drilling . . . . .	120
10.5.1	Early Oil Drilling [NEEDS REVISING] . . . . .	120
10.5.2	Predictions of Peak Oil . . . . .	121
10.5.3	Hydraulic fracturing (fracking) . . . . .	122
10.5.4	Environmental Concerns with Oil Drilling . . . . .	122
10.6	A Fossil Fuel Addiction . . . . .	122
10.6.1	Supply and Demand . . . . .	122
10.6.2	Fossil Fuels and Asia . . . . .	123
10.6.3	Development and Greenhouse Gas Emissions . . . . .	123
10.6.4	Does Development Depend on Burning Fossil Fuels? . . . . .	123
<b>11</b>	<b>Nuclear and Geothermal Sources of Energy</b>	<b>127</b>
11.1	Geothermal . . . . .	127
11.2	Nuclear . . . . .	127
11.2.1	What is nuclear fission? . . . . .	127
11.2.2	Mix Safety Records . . . . .	127
11.2.3	Types of Reactors . . . . .	127
11.2.4	Fuel Sources and Processing . . . . .	127

11.2.5 Waste and Storage . . . . .	127
<b>II Lateral Transport</b>	<b>129</b>
<b>12 Weather and Climate in East Asia</b>	<b>131</b>
12.1 Introduction . . . . .	131
12.1.1 What is meteorology and what are meteorological factors? What is their history? . . . . .	131
12.1.2 The relationship between weather and climate . . . . .	133
12.2 Weather and Climate in East Asia . . . . .	134
12.2.1 Is the weather a boring topic? . . . . .	138
12.2.2 The Dynamic Climate System . . . . .	139
12.3 Climate Data . . . . .	140
12.3.1 What is graphed? . . . . .	140
12.3.2 Overall Temperature Trend . . . . .	140
12.3.3 Overall Rainfall Trend . . . . .	142
12.3.4 Why are temperatures rising in Bangkok and Singapore? . . . . .	143
12.3.5 Does the observed variability have anything to do with human forcing? . . . . .	145
12.4 What are the socio-economic implications for the countries analyzed? . . . . .	145
12.4.1 Healthcare . . . . .	146
12.4.2 Water access . . . . .	146
12.4.3 Food . . . . .	147
12.4.4 Biodiversity . . . . .	148
12.4.5 Air Quality . . . . .	148
12.4.6 Infrastructure . . . . .	150
12.5 The Policy Context . . . . .	150
12.5.1 Change at the community level . . . . .	151
12.5.2 International Perspective . . . . .	151
12.6 Conclusion . . . . .	151
<b>13 Floods and Droughts: Thailand</b>	<b>153</b>
13.1 A Cycle of Floods and Droughts in Thailand . . . . .	153
13.2 Mechanisms of Floods and Droughts . . . . .	153
13.3 Flood and Drought Meteorology . . . . .	156
13.3.1 Periodic Sea Surface Temperature Cycles and Precipitation . . . . .	156
13.3.2 Climate Change and Long Term Precipitation Trends . . . . .	158
13.4 The Geography of Floods and Droughts in Thailand . . . . .	160
13.4.1 Spatial Distribution of Floods . . . . .	160
13.4.2 Spatial Distribution of Droughts . . . . .	162
13.5 The Politics of Floods and Droughts in Thailand . . . . .	164
13.5.1 An Overview of Thai Politics and History . . . . .	164
13.5.2 The Influence of Political Instability of Water Infrastructure and Disaster Incidence . . . . .	165
13.5.3 Summary . . . . .	167
13.6 Ideologies and Attitudes Towards Disaster Management . . . . .	167
13.6.1 Sufficiency Thinking and Disaster Management . . . . .	167
13.6.2 Ecosystem-Based Disaster Risk Reduction (Eco-DRR) Approaches . . . . .	168
13.6.3 Moving Forward . . . . .	168

13.7 Community-Based Disaster Risk Management (CBDRM) . . . . .	168
13.7.1 What is CBDRM? . . . . .	168
13.7.2 Aspects of CBDRM . . . . .	169
13.8 Concluding Remarks . . . . .	171
<b>14 Korea's Physical Geography</b> . . . . .	<b>175</b>
14.1 Framing the Peninsula's Physical Geography . . . . .	175
14.2 Geologic Context . . . . .	175
14.2.1 North China Craton . . . . .	175
14.2.2 Korean Peninsula Geology . . . . .	176
14.3 Aquascape: Climate and Water Demand . . . . .	177
14.3.1 A Shared Future on a Divided Peninsula . . . . .	178
14.3.2 Climate Trends . . . . .	179
14.3.3 Temperature . . . . .	179
14.3.4 Precipitation . . . . .	180
14.3.5 Extreme Events . . . . .	181
14.3.6 Climate Scenarios and Natural Resources . . . . .	181
14.4 Food and Water Linkages . . . . .	182
14.4.1 Agriculture and the History of Irrigation . . . . .	182
14.4.2 Food (In)Security in Asia and Water . . . . .	182
14.4.3 Korean Diet . . . . .	183
14.4.4 Westernizing Diets . . . . .	183
14.5 Water Resources, Infrastructure, and Management . . . . .	184
14.5.1 Water Supply and Global Warming . . . . .	184
14.5.2 Surface-Ground Water Interactions . . . . .	184
14.5.3 Water Quality: Nutrients and Drinking Water . . . . .	185
14.5.4 Eutrophication: Inland Waters and Coastal Zone . . . . .	185
14.5.5 Water Quality and Pesticide Use . . . . .	186
14.5.6 Waste Water: Recycling and Treatment . . . . .	186
14.6 Population and GHG Emissions . . . . .	187
14.6.1 Forest Protection and Food Production . . . . .	187
14.7 Food Sufficiency and Sovereignty and Water Security on the Korean Peninsula . . . . .	188
14.7.1 Economic Transitions . . . . .	188
14.7.2 SSR and Water Foot Prints . . . . .	188
14.7.3 Organic and Sustainable Water in Korea . . . . .	188
14.8 Energy Portfolio . . . . .	189
14.8.1 Conflated Policy Goals: Renewable Energy and New Energy Sources . . . . .	189
14.8.2 Industrial Ecology: The Ulsan Eco-Industrial Park . . . . .	189
14.8.3 Ucity . . . . .	189
14.8.4 Shared Goals . . . . .	189
<b>15 Water Quality</b> . . . . .	<b>203</b>
15.1 Arsenic and Water Borne Disease . . . . .	203
15.2 Arsenic . . . . .	203
15.2.1 Arsenic in the Mekong Aquifers . . . . .	203

<b>16 Air Quality</b>	<b>205</b>
16.1 Air Masks in Asia . . . . .	205
16.1.1 Air Pollution and Air-Borne Contagions . . . . .	205
16.1.2 Southeast Asia Haze . . . . .	205
<b>17 Capturing Solar, Wind and Tidal Energy</b>	<b>209</b>
17.1 Solar . . . . .	209
17.2 Wind . . . . .	209
17.3 Tidal . . . . .	209
<b>III Bread Crumbs and Human Scenarios</b>	<b>211</b>
<b>18 Biomimicry: Nature as a Model</b>	<b>213</b>
18.1 Biomimicry: Infrastructure and Design Theory . . . . .	213
18.1.1 Introduction . . . . .	213
18.2 What is Biomimicry? . . . . .	213
18.3 The Theory . . . . .	214
18.4 Biomimicry as a worldview . . . . .	215
18.5 Biomimicry History . . . . .	216
18.6 Case Study: The Cement Industry alternatives . . . . .	218
18.6.1 Dry Process . . . . .	218
18.6.2 Wet Process . . . . .	218
18.6.3 Characteristics of the Cement Industry . . . . .	218
18.6.4 The Biomimicry Solution . . . . .	219
18.6.5 Cost-Benefit Analysis . . . . .	221
18.7 Case Study: Applying Asia's innovation to the United States . . . . .	221
18.7.1 Characteristics of infrastructure industry . . . . .	222
18.7.2 The Bird's Nest Stadium as a Biomimicry Solution . . . . .	223
18.7.3 Applying Bio-infrastructure to Los Angeles . . . . .	223
18.8 Biomimicry and Smart Cities . . . . .	223
18.8.1 Existing initiatives in Asia . . . . .	226
18.8.2 Failed initiatives . . . . .	226
18.8.3 Benefits of a Smart City . . . . .	227
18.8.4 Risks of a Smart City . . . . .	227
18.9 Conclusion . . . . .	227
<b>19 Social Justice, Energy, Climate</b>	<b>229</b>
19.1 Divestment from Fossil Fuels . . . . .	229
<b>20 Sustainable Food Systems</b>	<b>231</b>
<b>21 Sustainable Consumption</b>	<b>233</b>
21.1 Plastics . . . . .	233
21.1.1 Sources of Marine Plastics . . . . .	233
21.1.2 Riverine Plastics . . . . .	233
<b>A Answer Key to Exercises</b>	<b>235</b>

<b>B The Second Appendix</b>	<b>237</b>
<b>IV Backmatter</b>	<b>239</b>



# Preface

## 0.1 Guiding Principles

In this project, the EnviroLab Asia fellows have written a textbook that highlights examples of environmental processes that occur along a vertical axis.

Each student contributes to one theme, composed of two examples that highlight environmental issues of East Asia. However, our goal is not to blame East Asian, but to point to linkages of how a range of globalized economy contribute to these environmental problems.

In the end, it would be useful for us to acknowledge we have some capacity to address these how these global linkages could be modified to reduce these environmental issues.

### 0.1.1 Goals

Processes across horizontal boundaries define many environmental patterns that frame human interactions with the environment. How do humans impact processes that cross these boundaries and how do humans influence these ecosystem interface?

### 0.1.2 Rationale

### 0.1.3 Activity

Each group will be composed of two students, that will become experts and teach their classmates on the topic.

## 0.2 East Asia and the World

## 0.3 Acknowledgments

Everyone in the world!

## 0.4 Thoughts for the Contributors

### 0.4.1 Why Learn L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X?

### 0.4.2 How to Learn L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X?

This template will NOT teach you how to use L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X! To accomplish that, we'll rely on some great online resource that you can find on the project page.

Instead this section of the document is designed to demonstrate how our textbook will look, feel, and ultimately how we contribute to the project.

This document also compiles all of our projects into a single PDF, where each chapter is composed of a input tex file.

### 0.4.3 Noting Your Contribution

Because this is an ongoing project, you should record your contribution to each chapter – but also let go of these contributions at some point; Others might revise and their authorship might take some precedence, so you should both invest in the product but also be willing to detach from the final outcome as others contribute. This will feel uncomfortable at times, but please note from the beginning this is a social process and as such subject to negotiation. Please be generous to the authors that laid the foundation and be respectful of those that follow.

## 0.5 Setting Up Book Project-Type Setting w/ L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X

### 0.5.1 The Standard Latex Book Class

Currently, the text is written using the standard book class. However, in 2019, I (Los Huertos) will convert the format to a Tufte book class.

### 0.5.2 Structuring the Text with Nested Hierarchies

Contributors divide their contributions into sections and subsections. This format allows a consistent approach to structuring the text and forcing themes to be organized in blocks that can be used to organize the overall text. We use section, subsection, and subsubsection to break up the topic into bite sizes.

To accomplish this, contributors use the `\section{Section}` command for major sections, and the `\subsection{Subsection}` command for subsections, and a similar approach for subsubsections.

NOTE: for each nested level, it MUST be followed by the lowest level in the section before a paragraph is started – in contrast to what is shown above!

NOTE: We may dispense with subsubsections in the future to provide a less blocky structure, but for now they remain useful.

### 0.5.3 Font Changes

We can use various methods to alter the typeset: *Emphasize*, **Bold**, *Italics*, and *Slanted*. We can also typeset Roman, Sans Serif, SMALL CAPS, and Typewriter texts. Look online to see the commands to accomplish these changes.

You can also apply the special, mathematics only commands `\texttt{BLACKBOARD BOLD}`, `\texttt{CALLIGRAPHIC}`, and `\texttt{fraktur}`. Note that blackboard bold and calligraphic are correct only when applied to uppercase letters A through Z.

You can apply the size tags – Format menu, Font size submenu – `tiny`, `scriptsize`, `footnotesize`, `small`, `normalsize`, `large`, `Large`, `LARGE`, `huge` and `Huge`.

You can use the `\begin{quote}` etc. `\end{quote}` environment for typesetting short quotations. Select the text then click on Insert, Quotations, Short Quotations:

The buck stops here. *Harry Truman*

Ask not what your country can do for you; ask what you can do for your country. *John F Kennedy*

I am not a crook. *Richard Nixon*

I did not have sexual relations with that woman, Miss Lewinsky. *Bill Clinton*

The Quotation environment is used for quotations of more than one paragraph. Following is the beginning of *The Jungle Books* by Rudyard Kipling. (You should select the text first then click on Insert, Quotations, Quotation):

It was seven o'clock of a very warm evening in the Seeonee Hills when Father Wolf woke up from his day's rest, scratched himself, yawned and spread out his paws one after the other to get rid of sleepy feeling in their tips.

Mother Wolf lay with her big gray nose dropped across her four tumbling, squealing cubs, and the moon shone into the mouth of the cave where they all lived. “*Augrh*” said Father Wolf, “it is time to hunt again.” And he was going to spring down hill when a little shadow with a bushy tail crossed the threshold and whined: “Good luck go with you, O Chief of the Wolves; and good luck and strong white teeth go with the noble children, that they may never forget the hungry in this world.”

Use the Verbatim environment if you want LATEX to preserve spacing, perhaps when including a fragment from a program such as:

```
#include <iostream>           // < > is used for standard libraries.
void main(void)             // ''main'' method always called first.
{
    cout << "This is a message.";
                           // Send to output stream.
}
```

(After selecting the text click on Insert, Code Environments, Code.)

#### 0.5.4 Mathematics and Text

##### Warning: Special Characters

When you use percent and ampersand symbols, hash tags, and other non-standard ASCII characters, LATEX will be very uncooperative. So, do yourself a favor and make sure you understand that these are used for special typesetting functions. To use them you have to “escape” and use commands to get them to do what you might usually expect! % # & è ñ “ and ” to show a few that do not reflect the key stroke you might expect.

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X doesn't like a range of characters or they reserved for special behavior...

For example, the # is used for tabs in a table environment. % is used to make comments, thus stuff behind a % is ignored. There are lots of others, but these come up the most.

### Creating equations

One of the most powerful parts of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X is how it can be used to write complex equations, with all those symbols and Greek letters! This can be done inline  $y = mx + b + \epsilon$  for fairly simple equations, or set apart for more complex equations:

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-x^2} dx = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2} \quad (1)$$

### Theorems, etc

**Theorem 1** (*The Current minimax principle.*) Let  $T$  be completely continuous selfadjoint operator in a Hilbert space  $H$ . Let  $n$  be an arbitrary integer and let  $u_1, \dots, u_{n-1}$  be an arbitrary system of  $n-1$  linearly independent elements of  $H$ . Denote

$$\max_{\substack{v \in H, v \neq 0 \\ (v, u_1) = 0, \dots, (v, u_n) = 0}} \frac{(Tv, v)}{(v, v)} = m(u_1, \dots, u_{n-1}) \quad (2)$$

Then the  $n$ -th eigenvalue of  $T$  is equal to the minimum of these maxima, when minimizing over all linearly independent systems  $u_1, \dots, u_{n-1}$  in  $H$ ,

$$\mu_n = \min_{u_1, \dots, u_{n-1} \in H} m(u_1, \dots, u_{n-1}) \quad (3)$$

The above equations are automatically numbered as equation (2) and (3).

### 0.5.5 Lists Environments: Making bulleted, numbered, description lists

We use special commands to create an itemized list.

You can create numbered, bulleted, and description lists (Use the Itemization or Enumeration buttons, or click on the Insert menu then chose an item from the Enumeration submenu):

- 1. List item 1
- 2. List item 2
  - (a) A list item under a list item.
  - (b) Just another list item under a list item.
    - i. Third level list item under a list item.
    - A. Fourth and final level of list items allowed.
- Bullet item 1
- Bullet item 2
  - Second level bullet item.

**Figure 1:** My plot's caption is here!

- \* Third level bullet item.
  - Fourth (and final) level bullet item.

**Description List** Each description list item has a term followed by the description of that term.

**Bunyip** Mythical beast of Australian Aboriginal legends.

### 0.5.6 Theorem-Like Environments

The following theorem-like environments (in alphabetical order) are available in this style.

**Example 2** *This is an example*

**Exercise 3** *This is an exercise*

**Theorem 4** *This is a theorem*

### 0.5.7 Peer Review Commenting

You can put your comments in square brackets and in color for things that need help. [This section is confusing, I am not sure what commenting means.]

### 0.5.8 Adding Figures, etc

### 0.5.9 Using Rnw Files – Deprecated

Originally, I used R and Rnw files that were converted to tex files, in Rstudio. However, this step was too complicated for students, so I now recommend the use of tex files and use Rstudio to create figure files as a separate process. Thus, I will no longer explain the process in this document.

### 0.5.10 Creating a floating figure

This is my floating figure (Figure 1).

### 0.5.11 Using Boxes

#### 0.5.12 minibox X

Some text

### 0.5.13 Creating References, Indicies, and Glossaries

#### Bibliography generation

This document was produced in RStudio using the knitr package ([Xie, 2013](#)) by <http://texblog.org>.

Also try [Fenner \(2018\)](#) to create an author title.

Currently, we are using the ecology.bst, but it has trouble with misc type of references, so I will changing this in 2019.

### Creating glossary words

**Definition 5** This is a definition and the word is use in an glossary, e.g. **Peat**. **Peat** is when you want to capitalize the defined word without having to re-define a capitalized version, the only downside of case sensitivity in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

# Introduction

## 0.6 Goals

### 0.6.1 Guiding Principles

The introduction is entered using the usual chapter command. Since the introduction chapter appears before the `mainmatter` TeX field, it is again an unnumbered chapter. The primary difference between the preface and the introduction in this sample document is that the introduction will appear in the table of contents and the page headings for the introduction are automatically handled without the need for the `markboth` TeX field. You may use either or both methods to create chapters at the beginning of your document. You may also delete these preliminary chapters.

In this project, the EnviroLab Asia fellows have written a textbook that highlights examples of environmental processes that occur along a vertical axis.

Each student contributes to one theme, composed of two examples that highlight environmental issues of East Asia. However, our goal is not to blame East Asian, but to point to linkages of how a range of globalized economy contribute to these environmental problems.

In the end, it would be useful for us to acknowledge we have some capacity to address these how these global linkages could be modified to reduce these environmental issues.

### 0.6.2 Goals

Processes across horizontal boundaries define many environmental patterns that frame human interactions with the environment. How do humans impact processes that cross these boundaries and how do humans influence these ecosystem interface?

Non-declinationist views...but also no technological optimism.

### 0.6.3 Rationale

## 0.7 Acknowledgments

### 0.7.1 EnviroLab Asia

We begin with the EnviroLab Asia scholars at the Claremont Colleges and thank them for their contributions over the years. In addition to our East Asian partners, in particular Yale NUS and the work of Brian McAdoo.

### 0.7.2 Faculty

Everyone in the world!

### 0.7.3 Activity

Each group will be composed of two students, that will become experts and teach their classmates on the topic.

## 0.8 Patterns and Processes in Scale

### 0.8.1 Project Themes

How do environmental interfaces in East Asia influence human infrastructure and vice versa?

- A. **Space-Atmosphere Interface** These might include the Earth's energy budget, drivers of climate and climate change, UV radiation and ozone processes.
- B. **Mantle-Lithosphere** The Earth's core and mantle are active agents in the definition and processes that influence tectonic and landforms – but also frame how, where, and when natural disasters occur, but they also tell us much about the resources, fuels and ores, used in the development of modern industrialization.

### X. Hydrologic Cycle

- D. **Soil-Water-Atmosphere Interface: Plant Biomass and Diversity** Light and gas exchange are the most common discussed fluxes across the air-water interface, but various dead and living biotic material also comes from or is deposited into the water column. While rainfall drives the productivity of terrestrial plant growth, the diversity is thought to depend on a range of processes.

- C. **Soil-Air Interface** Pedogenesis of soils includes climate (rain, air temperatures), atmospheric deposition of dust and other particles and gas exchange.

### X Carbon in Air, Plants, and Soil: Peatlands

- E. **Benthos-Water Interface** The flow of ions, organic matter deposited, gas and nutrient exchanges.

### X. Isostasy and Continental Plates

### X. Tectonic Hazards

### X. Weather Patterns and the Dynamic Climate System

### X. Hydrologic Hazards: Floods and Droughts

## 0.9 East Asia and the World

# **Part I**

# **Vertical Processes**



# Chapter 1

## The Earth-Sun System: Atmospheric Composition and Energy Balance

COLIN ADAMS<sup>1</sup>

### 1.1 The Pale Blue Dot

#### 1.1.1 Voyager 1's Legacy

On September 5, 1977, the *Voyager 1* space probe was launched into space by the United States' National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA). The space probe's mission was to explore the outer solar system, specifically, to study Jupiter and Saturn. In 1990, after completing its original purpose, *Voyager 1* received a new mission: take a solar system "family portrait." That is, from a distance of approximately 6 billion kilometers from the sun, *Voyager 1* would take pictures of six planets and their relative positions by combining different images together.

On February 14, 1990 *Voyager 1* turned around and pointed its camera back at Earth. It took 60 different photos of the solar system (see Figure 1.1) and sent them back to Earth where they were stitched together. It took over five and a half hours to transmit the photographic data across the vast expanse of space, from *Voyager 1* back to Earth.

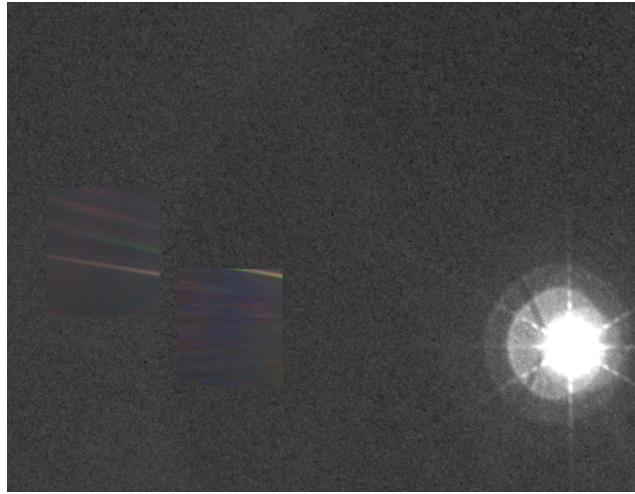
Three of the sixty photographs contained Earth as a single point of light. By processing these three photographs, NASA was able to produce an image of the earth taken over six billion kilometers away from the sun. In each case, Earth was less than a single pixel in each of the photographs.

Coincidentally, when the photograph was taken, sunlight scattered across the lens of the camera, creating the illusion that the earth was caught in a ray of light from the sun (see Figure 1.2). In his book, astronomer Carl Sagan commented upon this image and its significance:

Look again at that dot. That's here. That's home. That's us. On it everyone you love, everyone you know, everyone you ever heard of, every human being who ever was, lived out their lives. The aggregate of our joy and suffering, thousands of confident religions, ideologies, and economic doctrines, every hunter and forager, every hero and coward, every creator and

---

<sup>1</sup>Colin Adams completed all the research, writing, and developed the graphics for this chapter.



**Figure 1.1:** A picture of the sun and inner solar system. Superimposed on the left side are pictures of Venus and Earth (see Figure 1.2). This is what *Voyager 1* saw nearly 6 billion km away from the sun. Image taken from NASA/JPL.

destroyer of civilization, every king and peasant, every young couple in love, every mother and father, hopeful child, inventor and explorer, every teacher of morals, every corrupt politician, every “superstar,” every “supreme leader,” every saint and sinner in the history of our species lived there—on a mote of dust suspended in a sunbeam.

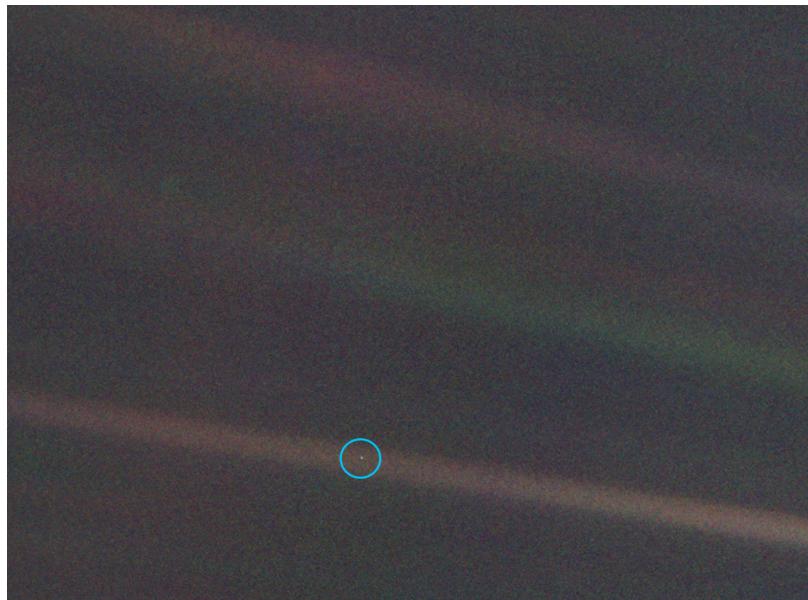
The Earth is a very small stage in a vast cosmic arena. Think of the rivers of blood spilled by all those generals and emperors so that, in glory and triumph, they could become the momentary masters of a fraction of a dot. Think of the endless cruelties visited by the inhabitants of one corner of this pixel on the scarcely distinguishable inhabitants of some other corner, how frequent their misunderstandings, how eager they are to kill one another, how fervent their hatreds.

Our posturings, our imagined self-importance, the delusion that we have some privileged position in the Universe, are challenged by this point of pale light. Our planet is a lonely speck in the great enveloping cosmic dark. In our obscurity, in all this vastness, there is no hint that help will come from elsewhere to save us from ourselves.

The Earth is the only world known so far to harbor life. There is nowhere else, at least in the near future, to which our species could migrate. Visit, yes. Settle, not yet. Like it or not, for the moment the Earth is where we make our stand.

It has been said that astronomy is a humbling and character-building experience. There is perhaps no better demonstration of the folly of human conceits than this distant image of our tiny world. To me, it underscores our responsibility to deal more kindly with one another, and to preserve and cherish the pale blue dot, the only home we've ever known [Sagan \(1994\)](#).

With this perspective, we delve into the study of the earth, its environment, and us. We attempt to unearth our interactions with and our impacts on our only home. To begin, we look at the interaction between the earth and its main source of energy: the sun. By doing this, we will understand the greenhouse effect and its necessity by looking at very crude models of the earth and its atmosphere.



**Figure 1.2:** The Pale Blue Dot. This is perhaps the most famous photograph taken by *Voyager 1* on February 14, 1990. The size of the Earth is less than a single pixel. The Earth is circled for clarity. Image taken and modified from NASA/JPL.

## 1.2 Formation of the Solar System

### 1.2.1 The Nebular Hypothesis

Nobody is entirely sure how the solar system formed, but there are a few **hypotheses** on how it did. Here, we will present the Nebular hypothesis of its formation.

As we know it today, the solar system is anywhere from 4.5 to 4.8 billion years old. Scientists believe stars form from huge clouds of gas (called a **nebulae**) and other, heavier elements. The gas is compressed by gravity, becoming more and more dense until the gas gets so hot that two protons combine to form helium. This process is known as **nuclear fusion**. When fusion occurs, the star releases a tremendous amount of energy in the form of electromagnetic radiation—such as visible light, infrared light (IR), x-rays, ultraviolet (UV) rays, radio waves, etc.—and the ball of gas begins to shine. When this happens, a star is born. Like every star, the sun was formed after the gravitational collapse of a nebula. This process occurred over the course of about a million years (Montmerle et al., 2006).

In the process of this formation, a disk of gas and other elements caught by the sun's immense gravitational pull began to clump together to form grains that collided into one another, becoming bigger, and bigger. Over the course of 10–100 million years, these grains collided and merged until they became large enough to form the planets of our solar system (Hayashi et al., 1985).

### 1.2.2 Rocky versus Giant Gas Planets

The **terrestrial planets**, also known as the rocky planets, (e.g. Mercury, Venus, Earth, and Mars) are closest to the sun because the inner solar system was too warm to for volatile molecules to be structurally important for the planet. Thus, only elements with higher melting points (iron, nickel,

silicon, etc.) could remain in this region. When the planets got large enough, the terrestrial planets' gravity was strong enough to maintain an atmosphere. Unsurprisingly, the more massive a planet is (i.e. the stronger its gravity) the more equipped it is at maintaining its atmosphere. For example, studies have shown that Mars had a much thicker atmosphere with a different composition in the past than it does today, more similar to Earth's. However, Mars has about 1/10 the mass that Earth does. Current hypotheses believe that solar wind destroyed much of Mars' atmosphere, as its gravitational field was unable to maintain it while Earth's remained intact despite being closer to the sun ([Owen, 1992](#)). Much of the remaining gas of the nebula formed into the much larger **gas giants** in the outer solar system (Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, and Neptune) or was blown away by solar wind ([Hayashi et al., 1985](#)).

Over the next few billion years, the solar system evolved into what we see today. At some point along the way, water formed on the surface of the earth and life soon followed—exactly how remains one of the great mysteries of modern science. Over billions of years, life evolved into what we see around us today ([Bell et al., 2015](#)) As life enveloped the earth's surface, spreading to every corner, it changed everything from its the physical surface to the composition of the atmosphere.

## 1.3 Global Energy Flow

### 1.3.1 Radiant Energy Impinges on the Earth's Atmosphere

The earth's principal source of energy comes from the sun which releases radiant energy that impinges upon the earth's atmosphere. Some of this energy is reflected back into space by clouds, some is absorbed by the clouds themselves, while some penetrates through the atmosphere making it to the earth's surface, where it is again either reflected or absorbed. Some of the energy is indeed reflected (water, snow, ice, clouds—in what is known as the **albedo effect**). Once it makes it to the earth's surface, it is absorbed and *re-radiated*.

When this energy is absorbed by the surface, it warms the soil or water. The warmer soil and water can transfer energy from the surface to the lower atmosphere by **conduction**. The warmer, lower atmosphere transfers energy horizontally and vertically of the upper atmosphere layers through **convection**.<sup>2</sup>

In addition to all of this, the atmosphere can lose some of this heat by re-radiating some of this energy in the form of infrared light. This infrared light can either be sent back to the earth's surface, ejected into space, or re-absorbed somewhere else in the atmosphere. Eventually, the vast majority of the energy that has entered near the earth will leave it.

If this process seems like a complicated, then you are correct! What was described above is what ultimately determines the earth's temperature, climate, and weather.

### 1.3.2 Energy is Conserved

Because energy is always conserved and there is negligible energy that is gained by the earth, there is a balance between the amount of energy the earth receives from the sun and the amount it radiates away over a given period of time. In other words, the earth and the sun are in **equilibrium** with

---

<sup>2</sup> Conduction is the direct transfer of heat or electricity without the movement of the material. Convection is the transfer of heat through the movement caused within a fluid. A good example to keep the two straight in your head would be a wood-fired furnace. When you touch the furnace (and probably burn your hand), you are warming your hand through direct contact with a material, i.e. conduction. When you place your hand just above the furnace (the safer thing to do), you are letting the air (a fluid) warm your hand through by first warming the surrounding air that is transferred to your hand, i.e. convection.

each other (Thorndike, 1976). If they were not, the earth would continue to get warmer and warmer over time until it was in equilibrium with the sun. However, when considering the whole surface of the earth, the surface temperature is essentially constant implying an equilibrium. To emphasize this point once more, the earth radiates away energy at the same rate it receives it from the sun. This will be the fundamental basis for the rest of the chapter where we will use very simple models in order to gain a better understanding of the earth, its atmosphere, and the greenhouse effect.

### 1.3.3 The Sun and the Solar Constant

The sun is approximately  $1.5 \times 10^8$  km away from the earth with a surface temperature of about 5800 K. By simply knowing the temperature of the sun's surface as well as its distance away from the earth, we are able to calculate the frequency distribution of the light emitted by the sun (Figure 1.3) as well as its brightness. This is because, to a very good approximation, the sun (and the earth, as we will later see) behaves as a blackbody which emits **blackbody radiation**. You probably are familiar with the idea of blackbody radiation whether you know it or not. When an object is at a certain temperature, it emits light centered around a peak wavelength and other wavelengths of light are distributed about this peak. The distributions of emitted light from objects at different temperatures have similar shapes but have their peak wavelength value at a different value. The hotter the object, the shorter its wavelength and the bluer it looks. This is why hot objects glow red, hotter objects glow blue, and even hotter objects glow white. We can treat both the sun and the earth as objects at a certain temperature. The sun mostly emits visible light while the earth emits infrared light (See Figure 1.3 and Figure 1.7 for a visual representation of this).

The surface temperature of the sun as well as its distance from Earth is enough information to calculate a value called the **solar constant**, which we will denote by  $S$  in this text. The solar constant tells us the amount of solar energy per unit time and per unit area the earth receives. The units are  $\text{J/s/m}^2 = \text{W/m}^2$ . A joule, denoted by  $J$ , is a unit of energy. For a concrete example, an object that has a mass of 2 kg that is moving at 1 m/s has one joule of energy. The amount of energy released during a given period of time is a measure of power. Here we use watts as the unit of power, which is denoted by  $\text{W}$ , and is defined to be  $1 \text{ W} = 1 \text{ J/s}$ .

One way to visualize what the solar constant actually means is to imagine a unit of area (in this case, one square meter) that is placed just above the earth's atmosphere oriented such that the sun shines squarely on it. The amount of energy (measured in joules) that flows through that area in a given amount of time (in this case, one second). This solar constant has been measured to be  $S = 1370 \text{ W/m}^2$  (Schroeder, 1999; Thorndike, 1976)p

We have already discussed that the earth and the sun are in equilibrium with one another. Again, this simply means that the earth is radiating the same amount of energy into space as it receives from the sun in a given period of time. The total power (energy per unit time) that is emitted by an object is given by

$$\text{power} = \sigma e A T^4 \quad (1.1)$$

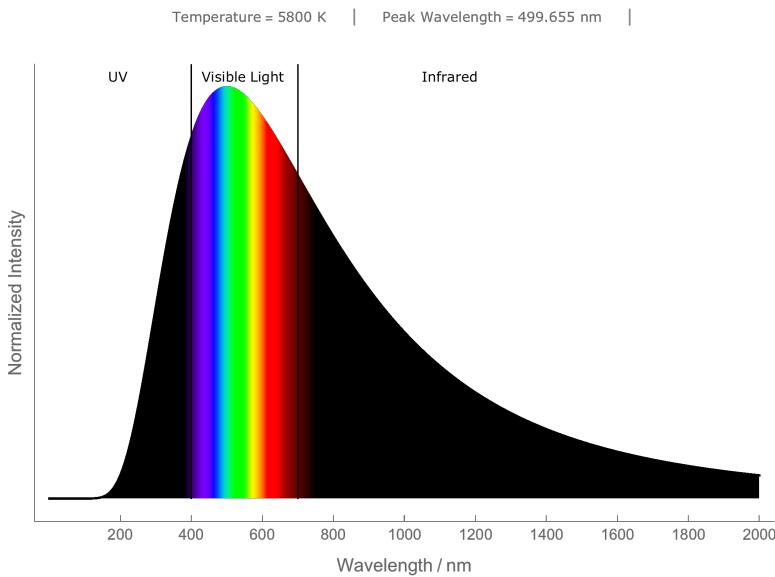
where  $T$  is the object's temperature,  $A$  is the object's area,  $e$  is the object's emissivity,<sup>3</sup> and  $\sigma$  is the Stefan-Boltzmann constant<sup>4</sup> where

$$\sigma = 5.67 \times 10^{-8} \text{ W}/(\text{m}^2\text{K}^4). \quad (1.2)$$

---

<sup>3</sup> The emissivity is the fraction of light absorbed at a particular wavelength. For an object that absorbs all incoming light (a blackbody) then  $e = 1$ ; an object that reflects all light would have  $e = 0$ .

<sup>4</sup> This is just a constant (with units!), and is rather easy to remember. Just think “5-6-7-8” but don't forget the minus sign in front of the 8.



**Figure 1.3:** The intensity of light as a function of wavelength for an object the same temperature as our Sun (5800 K). This distribution of wavelengths is only dependent on the temperature of the object. The black portions of the distribution are wavelengths of light that human eyes cannot detect. Looking at this, you should realize that it is no coincidence that life on Earth managed to evolve to see in the visible spectrum of light.

Equation (1.1) is known as **Stefan's Law**. An important point: when using Eq. (1.1), you must be careful to use the correct temperature units of Kelvin. To convert between Celsius and Kelvin we have a conversion formula of  $T_K = T_C + 273.15$  where  $T_K$  is the temperature in Kelvin and  $T_C$  is the temperature in Celsius.

**Exercise 6** What is the temperatures of water's (a) freezing point ( $0^\circ\text{C}$ ) (b) and boiling point at sea level ( $100^\circ\text{C}$ ) given in kelvin?

**Exercise 7** If a person's body has a surface area of roughly  $1.4 \text{ m}^2$  and a temperature of  $37^\circ\text{C}$  (take  $e = 1$ ):

- (a) How much power does a person give off?
- (b) Compare the total energy radiated by your body in one day compared to the energy in the food that you eat. Why is there such a large discrepancy? (Note that 1 Calorie = 4184 J).

### 1.3.4 The Dark Earth Model

Now we are finally able to model the energy flow to and from the earth. However, the “earth” that we will first be describing will be a rather simple one: it will have no atmosphere and no oceans. We will also assume that this earth is a perfect blackbody (with  $e = 1$ ), meaning that it reflects *no* incident radiation from the sun. Previously, we argued that earth was in equilibrium with the sun. Again, the rate at which the earth receives energy from the sun is the same as the rate the earth expels energy. So if we balance the amount of energy flowing from the sun to the earth over a given

period of time, ( $\mathcal{S}$ ), and set it equal to the amount of energy being emitted by the earth over a given period of time, we can calculate the surface temperature of the earth. That is, we have

$$\underbrace{\mathcal{S}(\pi R^2)}_{A_{circ}} = \underbrace{(4\pi R^2)\sigma T^4}_{A_{sph}} \quad (1.3)$$

where  $R$  is the radius of the earth and  $T$  is the surface temperature of the earth. Now each term contained within parentheses of Eq. (1.3) is the relevant area. On the left-hand side of the equation, the sun only sees the earth as a circular disk, hence we use the area of a circle  $A_{circ} = \pi r^2$ . However, the earth emits this radiation from all directions of a sphere, which—you may remember from geometry—has a surface area of  $A_{sph} = 4\pi r^2$ . When we solve for the temperature,  $T$ , in Eq. (1.3) we get

$$T = \left( \frac{\mathcal{S}}{4\sigma} \right)^{1/4} = \left( \frac{1370 \text{ W/m}^2}{4 \cdot 5.67 \times 10^{-8} \text{ W/(m}^2\text{K}^4)} \right)^{1/4} = 279 \text{ K} \quad (1.4)$$

which is actually a really good estimate for the earth's equilibrium temperature because the average surface temperature is measured to be 288 K (15 °C) (Schroeder, 1999). In fact, this simple model agrees too well! We had no right to be this close to what we measure with the crudeness of our assumptions. This will become apparent when we refine the model in Sec. 1.3.5. However, before moving on to a better model, we should discuss the stability of the earth-sun system by discussing the concept of **feedback**—a process in which a system reacts to an action or behavior.

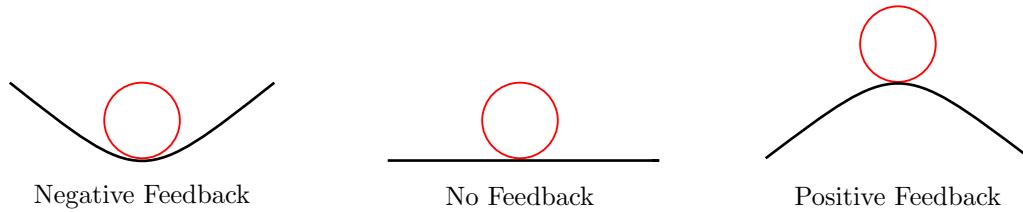
### Feedback—A Digression

[LET'S MAKE THIS INTO A TEXT BOX – PROBABLY USING MINIPAGE FUNCTIONS.] Feedback loops crop up all over the natural world and are especially prominent when studying the environment. Because of this, being able to recognize and identify various feedback loops is an important skill to have.

Consider three balls placed on three different surfaces: one on a concave surface, one on a flat surface, and one on a convex surface as illustrated in Figure 1.4. When placed on the surfaces at rest and left undisturbed, the three balls will remain at rest forever; however, if the balls are slightly bumped then there are three very different responses.

The concave ball (the leftmost) will try to return back to its starting location if displaced. This is known as a **stable equilibrium**. The initial displacement leads the ball to feel a restoring force pushing it back to where it started. The restoring force in this case would be gravity, and it is said to provide **negative feedback**. For the ball in the center, we have a situation of **neutral equilibrium**. If displaced it, it will simply have changed locations but will not return or roll away from its original position. There is **no feedback** in this situation. Lastly, for a ball on a convex surface (an **unstable equilibrium**), if it is nudged slightly, the ball will experience a force forcing it away from its equilibrium. As you may have guessed, this is an example of **positive feedback**. The adjectives of “positive” and “negative” are not meant to convey “good” or “bad,” rather they express the direction the system will move towards after being displaced: “positive” means move away from where it started whereas “negative” means returning to where it started.

This may have been a lengthy aside but one that is important. For example, if we look at feedback in the context of our dark earth model, then we need to consider a few situations. For instance, consider what would happen if the surface temperature drops to below its equilibrium temperature. According to Stefan's Law (Eq. 1.1), then the rate at which the earth energy would be radiated away would also drop, cooling itself, thus returning to equilibrium. This is an example of negative feedback.



**Figure 1.4:** An example of various feedback loops. Consider a ball at rest on various surfaces that is suddenly displaced by a small amount in one direction (we are looking at a cross section). On the left, a ball is in a bowl, and when displaced from either side, the ball will roll back and forth, always returning to the center of the bowl. In the middle image, we have a ball on a flat surface. When displaced, it simply changes locations. On the right, we have a ball balanced on a bowl. If displaced slightly, its balance is upset, and it will roll down the bowl faster and faster.

**Exercise 8** Find two examples of feedback loops on your own: one positive and one negative.

### 1.3.5 The Shiny Earth Model

To motivate why we need to refine our model of the earth, we should consider Figure 1.5.



**Figure 1.5:** The famous “Earthrise” photo taken during the Apollo 8 lunar mission. Image taken from NASA.

If the earth, as we assumed in Sec. 1.3.4, absorbed all incident light, we would not see an image like the Apollo 8 astronauts did; rather we would see nothing as the earth would appear black. From our everyday experience, we know some objects (e.g. clouds, ice, snow, etc.) reflect a large fraction of the light incident upon them (see Table 1.1), again illustrated in Figure 1.5. The reflectivity of an object averaged over the entire surface is known as its **albedo**, and we will denote it as  $A$  in equations in this text. The earth reflects roughly 30% of the sun’s incident light, meaning that  $A = 0.30$ , and the remaining light is absorbed (Schroeder, 1999; Thorndike, 1976) Consequently, we

must modify Eq. (1.4) so that this is taken into account. It is a small correction yet important and is given below.

$$T = \left( \frac{(1 - A)\mathcal{S}}{4\sigma} \right)^{1/4} = \left( \frac{(0.70) \cdot 1370 \text{ W/m}^2}{4 \cdot 5.67 \times 10^{-8} \text{ W/(m}^2\text{K}^4)} \right)^{1/4} = 255 \text{ K} \quad (1.5)$$

We found our new equilibrium temperature is a frigid 255 K ( $-18^\circ\text{C}$ ) which is much colder than we did before. The result is worse if we consider the feedback loops as related to the earth's albedo. Consider a slight drop in temperature on earth, below its equilibrium. This will lead to more snow—which reflects more light from the sun—which consequently increasing the albedo. The larger albedo lowers the equilibrium temperature further—as we just saw—leading to more snow being formed. So in this example, the feedback loop is positive. Conversely, a slight warming of earth will melt snow and glaciers, reflecting less light, and decreasing the albedo. This will cause an increase in the earth's equilibrium temperature which is also a positive feedback loop. The big takeaway is that the system appears to be unstable.

Object	Reflectivity (percent)
Clouds	20–70 (depends on type and thickness)
Open Water	3–8
Open Water (polar regions)	25 (due to larger angle of incidence)
Snow and ice	30–70
Arable land & Coniferous forest	10–15
Deciduous forest	18
Desert	30

**Table 1.1:** Reflectivity of various surfaces on Earth, all of which contribute to the earth's overall albedo ([Thorndike, 1976](#)). The percentages tell you how much incident light is reflected for a given surface.

## 1.4 The Atmosphere

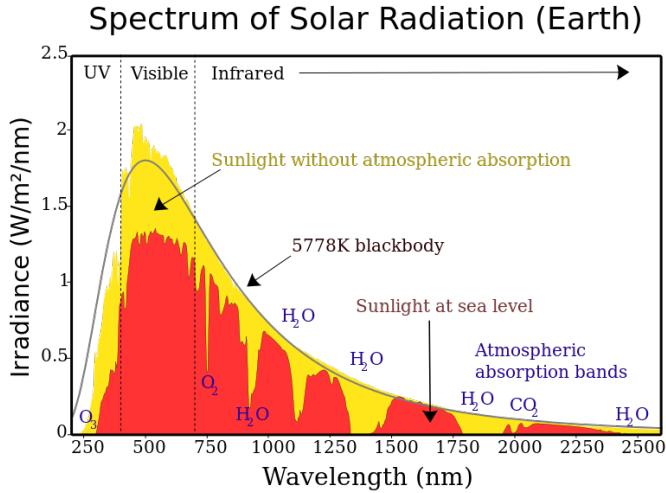
### 1.4.1 Modeling an Interacting Atmosphere

In the previous section, we found that with a more realistic model of the earth, the average surface temperature will be a chilly 255 K ( $-18^\circ\text{C}$ ) by taking into account the reflectivity of the earth's surface and atmosphere. However, we have yet to consider how the atmosphere interacts with the incident sunlight on the whole which is what we will do next.

The earth's atmosphere is largely transparent to the incident solar spectrum (in the visible region as well as the near ultraviolet and near infrared light). However, we are going to consider what happens to the absorption of ultraviolet and infrared radiation in the atmosphere and the processes they are responsible for creating ([Schroeder, 1999](#); [Thorndike, 1976](#)). We will consider these in turn.

### 1.4.2 Interaction of UV Light

If we look at the UV-radiation first, we should note that light below 300 nm is harmful to humans and most living creatures ([Thorndike, 1976](#)) This is the type of light that causes sunburns as well as damages the DNA of living organisms. In addition to this, these wavelengths of light are capable



**Figure 1.6:** A spectrum showing the actual solar distribution, compared to the blackbody distribution (c.f. Figure 1.3), as well as the sunlight that reaches sea level. This is a figure with a lot of information. Take time to look over it carefully and understand it. Taken from Wikipedia.

of breaking the chemical bonds that are found in living matter. Fortunately for us, wavelengths of light shorter than 180 nm are absorbed heavily by molecular oxygen in the upper-most layer of the atmosphere (called the **ionosphere**) nearly 100 km above the earth's surface (Thorndike, 1976). Wavelengths of light between 180 nm and 290 nm are less strongly absorbed and penetrate through the ionosphere and the mesosphere (which is below the ionosphere) where it is eventually absorbed by the stratosphere by molecular oxygen gas and ozone<sup>5</sup> ( $O_2$  and  $O_3$  respectively). Light with wavelengths larger than 290 nm are only weakly absorbed: only around 20% are absorbed before reaching the earth's surface.

This ultraviolet light also causes chemical processes to occur due to its high energy. Ozone in the atmosphere is inherently unstable; despite this, it has a long lifetime in the atmosphere before it breaks down. However, this breakdown can be accelerated by the introduction of other chemicals in the atmosphere. In 1974, Mario Molina and F. Sherwood Rowland (who ended up winning the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1995 for this work) realized that chlorine atoms ( $Cl$ ) are very effective at breaking down ozone in the atmosphere. A certain class of gaseous molecules, called **chlorofluorocarbon molecules (CFC)**—which are made up of a carbon atom surrounded by chlorine and fluorine atoms—don't undergo any reaction until they reach the upper atmosphere. While in the upper atmosphere, the energetic UV-light break the carbon-chlorine bond, allowing the chlorine atom to react with ozone in the atmosphere, breaking it down. Eventually it was discovered that there was a large “hole” in ozone over the South Pole. By “hole” we mean that the concentration of ozone was significantly lower in the atmosphere than other parts of the world.

This was so problematic that soon after Molina and Rowland’s work, international governments came together to ban the use of CFCs by signing the Montreal, London, Copenhagen, and Vienna protocols in 1987, 1990, 1992, and 1995, respectively (Spiro et al., 2012) Their work is a shining example of the ways the scientific method can unify people of diverse backgrounds to address global

---

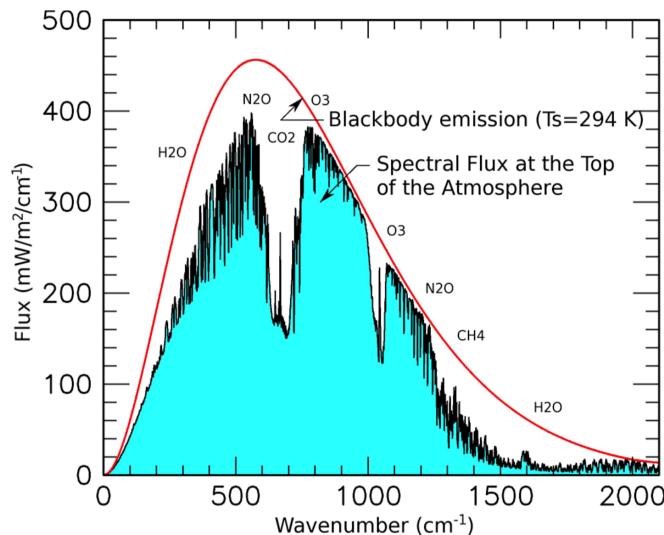
<sup>5</sup> Ozone is an important gas that is found high in the earth’s atmosphere. It plays an important role for life on Earth as it acts as a filter by absorbing harmful UV-rays (Spiro et al., 2012).

challenges.

### 1.4.3 Interaction of IR Light

While the earth's atmosphere is largely transparent to infrared radiation produced by the sun, it is very much opaque to the earth's re-radiation. In fact, if you were to look at the earth from outer space with an eye that is only sensitive to infrared light, what you see is mostly the atmosphere and not the surface because none of that light is able to make it through the atmosphere without being absorbed. The equilibrium temperature we calculated in Sec. 1.3.5 of 255 K is (roughly) the temperature of the upper atmosphere (Schroeder, 1999)

Just like the sun can be modeled as a blackbody that produces the largest amount of solar radiation in the visible spectrum, the earth acts as a blackbody that peaks in the infrared light. However, this frequency of light that the earth emits (at a temperature of 294 K) is largely absorbed by various gases in the atmosphere. In other words, the heat radiated by the earth's surface will not disperse directly into space but will be absorbed by the atmosphere. When the atmosphere absorbs this energy, the atmosphere will warm and re-radiate some of this energy back to earth in the form of infrared light, also warming the earth's surface. Thus, the atmosphere acts as a sort of blanket that keeps the earth's surface warmer than it would be otherwise. This phenomena is called the **greenhouse effect** and is important for maintaining life here on earth by keeping the earth at more mild temperature.



**Figure 1.7:** The blackbody spectrum of the earth (red) compared to what is measured (blue). This discrepancy comes from the rotational and vibrational excitations of the greenhouse gases (e.g. water, methane, etc.). See Appendix 1.6. The gap between the red and the blue is where the various greenhouse gases absorbed energy.

The gases in the atmosphere that are responsible for the absorption of the earth's infrared radiation are called **greenhouse gases**. Some examples of these include water, carbon dioxide, nitrous oxide, and methane.<sup>6</sup> As you probably expect, different gases have a different impact on the

---

<sup>6</sup>In fact, water is the earth's largest greenhouse gas, however you don't hear about it in the news as there isn't

greenhouse effect. The measure of how well a greenhouse gas can trap heat is characterized by the **Global Warming Potential (GWP)**. GWP is characterized by the following criteria:

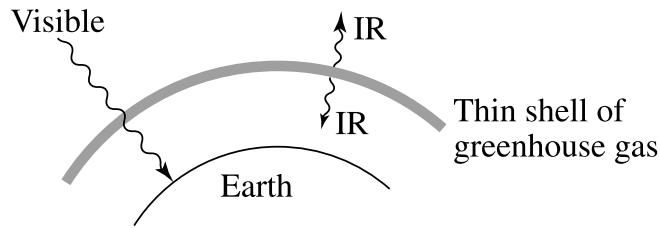
1. The absorption of infrared radiation by a given species,
2. The spectral location of absorbing wavelengths. This means, where on Figure 1.7 does the light absorb. Is it closer to where the red curve peaks or closer to the tail end?
3. The atmospheric lifetime of the chemical species.

The standard GWP reference is carbon dioxide. The GWP for nitrous oxide ( $\text{N}_2\text{O}$ ) and methane ( $\text{CH}_4$ ), over a time period of twenty years, is 268 and 86, respectively.

It's important to explicitly note that not all gases are greenhouse gases. Only gases that absorb the infrared radiation produced by the earth through rotations and vibrations act as greenhouse gases. For a much more thorough description of how and why certain molecules behave as greenhouse gases, I would strongly encourage you to read Appendix A.

#### 1.4.4 The Shell-Atmosphere Model

The greenhouse effect is essential for maintaining the earth's surface temperature at a reasonable level. To make a simple model, as we have done multiple times in this chapter already, we assume a "shell of atmosphere" that is a single layer above the earth's surface that is transparent to the sun's visible light but opaque to the earth's infrared light. Since the shell is transparent to the sun, the energy flowing into the earth would be the same as if the shell were not there. Because all of the energy radiated by the earth is stopped by the shell, it follows that the shell would have the temperature that we calculated in Sec. 1.3.5, namely 255 K. The shell, on the other hand, will not only radiate energy to space but will radiate some back to the earth's surface. A good illustration of this description is found in Figure 1.8.



**Figure 1.8:** A simple model of the earth's atmosphere as a thin shell. Equilibrium requires that the earth's surface receive as much energy from the atmosphere as the sun. Taken with permission from *Quantum Physics* (2010) by John S. Townsend ([Townsend, 2010](#))

Consequently, the energy that the earth will receive will be twice that of the "no shell" calculation we had in Sec. 1.3.5. Thus, we would expect the temperature to be

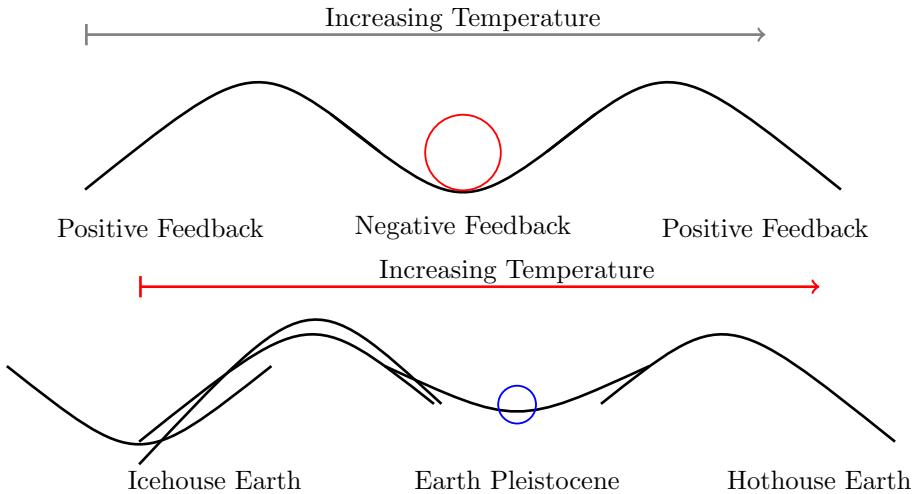
$$T = 2^{1/4} \cdot 255 \text{ K} = 303 \text{ K}. \quad (1.6)$$

This is a temperature of 30 °C which is much more pleasant to live in! This temperature we calculated is a little higher than what scientists measure experimentally, but then again we made a very simple

---

anything we can really do about releasing water into the atmosphere. Carbon dioxide is another story on the other hand as we can control how much carbon dioxide is released through the burning of fossil fuels.

model of an atmosphere. The real atmosphere isn't a single, perfectly opaque layer, but this example brings home the point that the greenhouse effect is important to maintaining life by creating a warmer environment. This model predicts that the more IR-absorbing material (e.g. carbon dioxide and methane) there is in the atmosphere, the higher the surface temperature of the earth. In fact, this can get very out of hand, causing a planet to get extremely hot. This is called a runaway greenhouse effect and is an example of a positive feedback loop. To see what happens and how this actually works, I encourage you to work out Exercise 9 and look at Figure 1.9.



**Figure 1.9:** A simplified view of the feedback processes of the earth's surface temperature. If it gets too cold, there will be a runaway albedo effect much like the ice age where more and more ice forms on the Earth. This is an example of positive feedback. As the concentration of the greenhouse gases increases, there is a point of no return and we have a runaway greenhouse effect, i.e. positive feedback. Luckily we live in a “sweetspot” where these forces seem to cancel each other out.

**Exercise 9** *The planet Venus is different than Earth in several respects; First, it is 30% closer to the sun. Next, it has thick clouds that reflect 77% of the incident sunlight. Finally, its very thick atmosphere is much more opaque to infrared light than the earth's. Given the solar constant for Venus, which we will denote by  $\mathcal{V}$  (rather than Earth's solar constant  $\mathcal{S}$ ), takes on a value of  $\mathcal{V} = 2796 \text{ W}/(\text{m}^2\text{K}^4)$ :*

- Calculate the surface temperature of Venus if it did not reflect any incident light.*
- Estimate the surface temperature taking Venus' albedo into account.*
- The atmosphere of Venus absorbs roughly 70 times the amount of infrared light of that of Earth's atmosphere. We can model this with 70 successive atmospheric shells like we did in Sec. 1.4.4 with each shell at a different equilibrium temperature. The temperature of the top layer will be what you found in part (b). The next layer is warmer by a factor of  $2^{1/4}$ . The layer below that is warmer by a smaller factor. Keep working your way down until you see a pattern.*

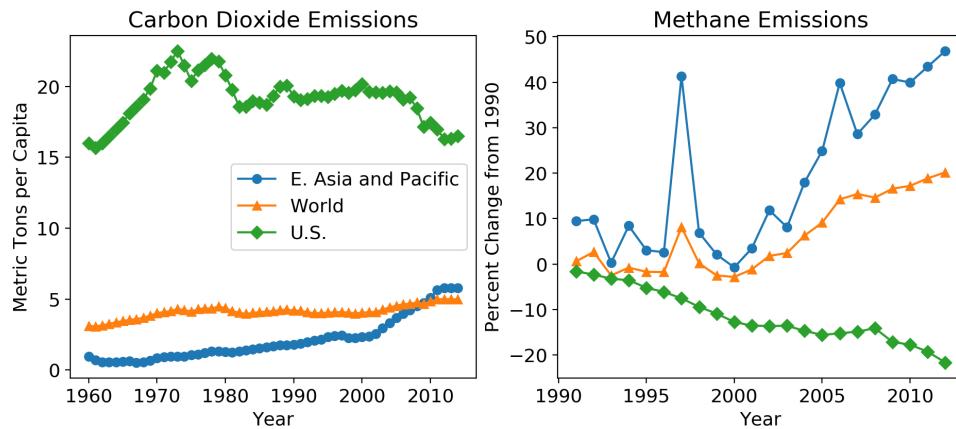
*Use this to estimate the surface temperature of Venus. The measured surface temperature of Venus is 740 K; how does your answer compare? This is a good illustration of the runaway greenhouse effect.*

*Note: this is a challenging problem! Don't worry if you don't get it immediately!*

## 1.5 Greenhouse Gases in Asia

### 1.5.1 Gross versus Per Capita GHG Emissions

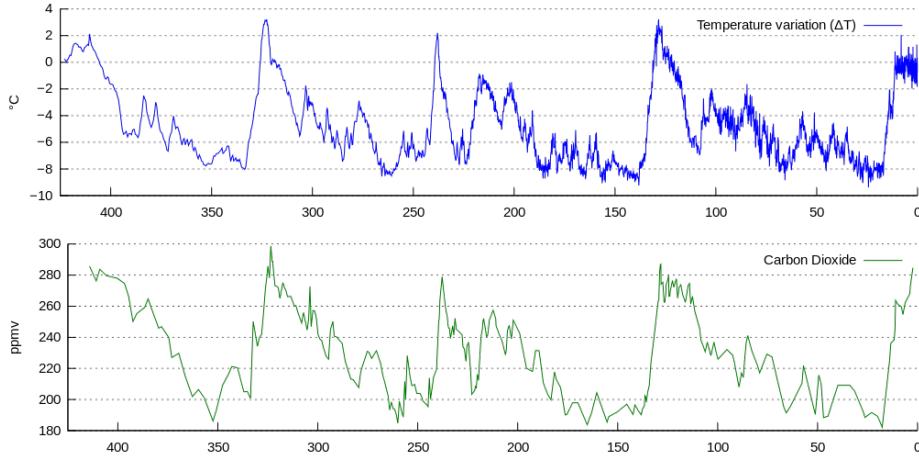
After seeing the potential for the greenhouse effect to raise the surface temperature, we should look at carbon dioxide emissions around the world. Specifically, we are going to focus on Asia's emissions. The Asian economy is made up of more than 4.5 billion people which is significantly more than half of the world's population. In addition to this, Asia is the largest and fastest growing economic region in the world, according to the International Monetary Fund. In addition to this, the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) projects that Asia will remain the fastest growing economic region in the world through 2030. All the while, the population and energy demands of the region (and world) will increase. Economic growth and greenhouse gas emissions—specifically carbon dioxide—have been linked together ([Saidi and Hammami, 2015](#)).



**Figure 1.10:** The relative emissions of East Asian and Pacific countries (excluding the high income population) compared to the world taken as a whole. Data taken from the World Bank and is current up to 2014 ([The World Bank, 2018a,b](#)).

As you might expect, a rapidly growing economy needs to produce a large amount of energy. Currently, a cheap and convenient form of energy is **fossil fuels**, which are natural fuels that formed millions of years ago from the remains of organisms. Some examples of fossil fuels are coal, oil, and natural gas (methane). Fossil fuels are burned in order to release energy, in the form of heat, into their surroundings allowing work to be done. However, when fossil fuels are burned, they release carbon dioxide and water into the atmosphere. Now we can make a prediction. Since Asia has and, recently, has had the fastest growing economy in the world, we would expect the emissions of the region to be rising faster compared to the rest of the world. This is exactly what we see in Figure 1.10. Since the early 2000's, there has been a steady and relatively constant increase in the amount of both carbon dioxide and methane into the atmosphere. In comparison to the rest of the world, East Asia and the Pacific are releasing significantly more carbon dioxide per person and methane per year into the atmosphere. However, Asia—as a continent—has a significantly higher population than the rest of the world.

This release of greenhouse gases will, as we saw in our toy model, lead to an increase in average surface temperature of the earth. This change will affect many aspects of the earth. This is why people are concerned about releasing greenhouse gases into the atmosphere. When the average surface temperature of the earth warms, it causes large problems in ecosystems. This phenomena is called **climate change** and is at the forefront of international and scientific communities because of its potential consequences. Climate change and its consequences will be of central focus to the rest of this book.



**Figure 1.11:** Correlation between the temperature of the earth with the concentration of carbon dioxide over a timescale of 420,000 years. Data is taken from the Vostok ice core in The current concentration of carbon dioxide is over 400 parts per million (ppm). Taken from Wikipedia.

## 1.6 Conclusion

The earth, although it may seem large to us humans, is merely a pale blue dot when compared to the solar system as a whole. Almost the entirety of Earth's energy comes from the sun. In fact, at the top of the atmosphere, we receive 1370 W of power for every square meter, or one solar constant. With this, an important greenhouse effect, and little else, over the course of billions of years, life has managed to not only start but thrive. Some of the organisms that lived and died millions of years ago have converted into fossil fuels by geologic processes.

Today, almost the entirety of the world is dependent on burning these fossil fuels for energy, to fuel growing economies, to power our lights, and even produce the food we eat. However, extracting and burning these fossil fuels has and will continue to release potent greenhouse gases into our atmosphere—contributing to one of the most pervasive positive feedback loops of our generation: global climate change. Because fossil fuels are so integral to the world's infrastructure today, we should look at them more closely. This is the topic of our next chapter.

## Appendix A:

### The Symmetry of Molecules and Greenhouse Gases

In this appendix we are going to focus on how various molecules are able to move around. Specifically, we will look at how molecules translate, rotate, and—most importantly—vibrate. Now why do we care? How molecules are able to move plays a fundamental role in what type and how much energy they absorb. We will learn why some gases in the atmosphere are greenhouse gases and some are not.

In order to make this appendix tractable, I'm assuming that you have some basic chemistry background already.

### Chemical Bonding

Molecules, quite simply, are atoms that are bonded together via **chemical bonds**. Chemical bonds are the links between atoms (Atkins et al., 2014) There are a few different types of common, chemical bonds that we see around us in Nature: (1) covalent bonding, (2) ionic bonding, and (3) metallic bonding. In this appendix, we are mainly going to focus molecules that are held together through covalent bonds; another name for these molecules are covalent compounds. **Covalent bonds** are bonds in molecules where different atoms will share pairs of electrons in order to reduce their energies. For example, water, methane, and carbon dioxide have each of their respective atoms bonded together like this.

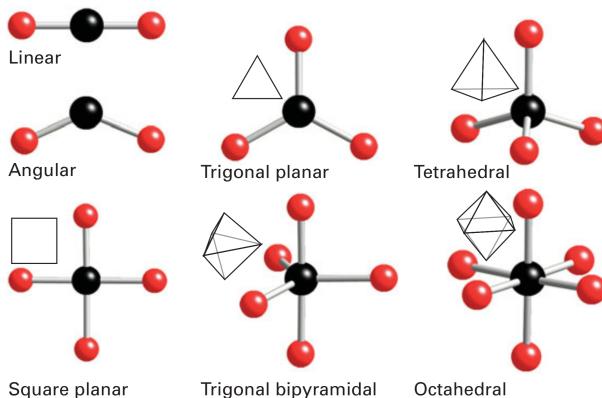
When molecules are formed, their shape is determined by minimizing the repulsion from the negatively charged electrons surrounding the various atoms in the molecule (Atkins et al., 2014) This comes about from various lone pairs of electrons that originate with covalently-bonded molecules. Lone pairs of electrons are assumed to be more repulsive than bonded atoms. Because of this, molecules take the shape as to maximize the separation of these lone pairs.<sup>7</sup>

We will look at the geometric shapes a few different molecules that will frequently appear, except for sulfur hexafluoride, and are relevant in this text: carbon dioxide ( $\text{CO}_2$ ), water ( $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ), methane ( $\text{CH}_4$ ), and sulfur hexafluoride ( $\text{SF}_6$ ). All four of these molecules are **polyatomic molecules**, meaning that there is more than one type of atom present, e.g. hydrogen and oxygen constitute the elements of water, sulfur and fluorine are the elements found in sulfur hexafluoride, etc.

Carbon dioxide is a linear molecule with the carbon atom in the middle of two oxygen atoms, water is a bent molecule, methane is tetrahedral, and sulfur hexafluoride is octahedral. All four of these molecules' shapes can be visualized in Figure 1.12.

Some atoms are more **electronegative** than others. That is, some atoms attract electrons more strongly than others. The net result of this leads to a partial negative charge (denoted  $\delta^-$ ) near the atoms that are more electronegative and a partial positive charge (denoted  $\delta^+$ ) located somewhere else on the molecule. When this occurs and there is an unequal sharing of electrons, we say that the covalent bonds are **polar**. Now, when there are two opposite charges  $Q$  separated by a distance  $d$ , then there is something that we call an electric **dipole moment**,  $\mu$ , whose magnitude is given by  $\mu = Qd$ . So when there are two different atoms bonded together, there will be a nonzero dipole moment. However, for the molecule *as a whole*, there may not be any net dipole moment. For example, the double bond between carbon and oxygen in carbon dioxide is polar with the oxygen atom being more electronegative than the carbon. Thus, there is a dipole moment. However, since

<sup>7</sup>For an understanding of how these molecules take these shapes, I recommend reading any general chemistry textbook or a good online resource like [www.khanacademy.org/science/chemistry/chemical-bonds](http://www.khanacademy.org/science/chemistry/chemical-bonds) about valence-shell electron pair repulsion (VSEPR) as well as Lewis Structures.



**Figure 1.12:** The geometric shapes used to describe symmetric, polyatomic molecules. In our examples,  $\text{CO}_2$  is linear,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  is angular,  $\text{CH}_4$  is tetrahedral, and  $\text{SF}_6$  is octahedral. Figure taken from Atkins' *Physical Chemistry* (Atkins et al., 2014)

there is an identical dipole moment pointing in the *opposite direction*, they cancel and thus, there is no overall dipole moment in carbon dioxide. In fact, of all the molecules we are going to discuss, only water has a non-zero dipole movement. Dipole moments will dictate the absorption of infrared light in Sec. 1.6 below (Atkins et al., 2014; Harris and Bertolucci, 1978; Bishop, 1993)

## Symmetry Operations and Elements

Some objects are more symmetric than others. For example, a circle is more symmetric than a square. You are able to rotate a circle about its center by any angle and get a similar object. However, you are only able to rotate a square about its center by 90°, 180°, 270° and get back the same shape that you started with. Similarly, a sphere is more symmetric than a cube. An operation that transforms an object and leaves it looking the same is called a **symmetry operation**. The **symmetry element** about which a symmetry operation is performed which can be a line, point, or a plane. For example, a reflection is performed about a particular plane of an object. There are five symmetry operations that we will consider in this text: (1) identity, (2) reflections, (3) rotations, (4) improper rotations, and (5) inversions. We will treat and tackle each of these below.

### Identity

This is the simplest symmetry operation that every object has is the **identity** and is denoted by  $E$ . This operation tells you to do nothing to the object. The reason we include it is because some objects only have this symmetry and it is needed to satisfy certain mathematical requirements that we will not discuss here.

### Rotations

Another common symmetry operation that you may encounter is the **n-fold rotation** which we denote by  $C_n$ ; this means that we can rotate an object by  $360^\circ/n$  and get back an equivalent object.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>8</sup>It's important to make the explicit distinction between *equivalent* and *identical*. An equivalent object looks like the same object that you started with. An identical object is the object that you started with. For example, rotating

It makes no difference whether you choose to rotate the object in a clockwise or counterclockwise direction, so long as you are consistent. In this text, we will choose the clockwise direction.

You can perform an  $n$ -fold rotation an arbitrary, integer number of times, say  $m$  so long as  $m$  is smaller than  $n$ . We denote  $m$  rotations about the  $n$ -fold rotation axis as  $C_n^m$ . For example, if you rotate a square by  $180^\circ$  then you have just performed the  $C_4^2$  operation which is also the same as a  $C_2$  rotation. In other words

$$C_4 \cdot C_4 = C_4^2 = C_2$$

. Furthermore, if you start with a square, rotate it by  $90^\circ$  and then rotate this equivalent object by another  $270^\circ$  you get the identical object that you started with. It's as if you hadn't rotated it at all! We call denote the operation that gives back the identity the **inverse**. More mathematically, we write

$$C_4^3 \cdot C_4 = C_4^4 = E.$$

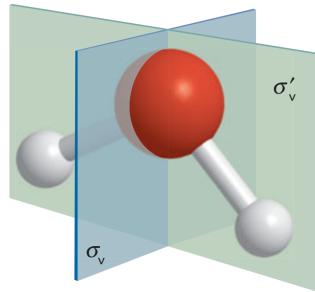
In general, we can see that  $C_n^{n-m}$  and  $C_n^m$  are inverses of each other, i.e.  $C_n^{n-m} \cdot C_n^m = C_n^m \cdot C_n^{n-m} = E$ .

Some simple examples would be a triangle has a 3-fold rotation axis, i.e. you can rotate the triangle about its center by  $360^\circ/3 = 120^\circ$ , a square has a 4-fold rotation axis, a pentagon has a 5-fold rotation axis, etc. As we saw in our square example, some objects have multiple rotation axes. Consider a hexagon. You can rotate the hexagon by  $180^\circ$ ,  $120^\circ$ ,  $60^\circ$  corresponding to  $C_2$ ,  $C_3$ , and  $C_6$  rotations respectively. The highest value of  $n$  (in this case 6) is called the **principal axis**.

**Exercise 10** Name the different  $C_n$  in a cube. There should be three not including the identity operation. What is the principal axis and how many principal axes are there? (Hint: Look at the corners and edges of the cube.)

## Reflections

The next symmetry operator, one that is likely familiar to you, is the **reflection** through a plane which is denoted by the Greek letter  $\sigma$ . The mirror plane can either be parallel or perpendicular to the principal axis. If the mirror plane is parallel, we label the mirror plane  $\sigma_v$  where the  $v$  stands for “vertical” and if it is perpendicular we label it as  $\sigma_h$  where  $h$  stands for “horizontal.”



**Figure 1.13:** An example of the two different mirror planes that correspond to the water molecule. Figure taken from Atkins' *Physical Chemistry* (Atkins et al., 2014)

---

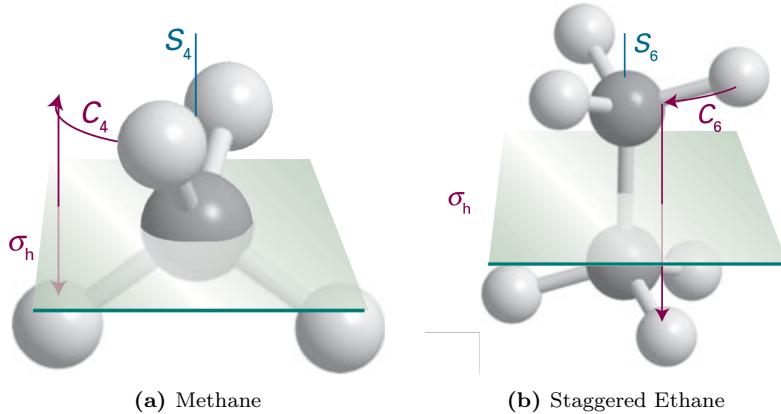
a triangle by  $120^\circ$  gives you an equivalent object whereas rotating it by  $360^\circ$  gives you the identical triangle.

Note that if you perform two reflections across the same plane in a row you get exactly what you started with, i.e. it's as if you performed the identity operation; more mathematically, we would describe it as such:  $\sigma \cdot \sigma = \sigma^2 = E$ . Therefore, we see that  $\sigma$  is its own inverse.

**Exercise 11** How many reflection planes does a square have? A rectangle?

### Improper Rotations

This next symmetry operation is a little trickier to see and most of us don't have a good intuition for it like we might with proper rotations and reflections because it is a combination of the two. First you rotate the object by some amount and then reflect the object across a mirror plane that is perpendicular to the axis of rotation. See Figure 1.14a for a visualization of this. We call this an **improper rotation** and denote it with the symbol  $S_n$ . The inverse of  $S_n^m$ , in general, is  $S_n^{n-m}$  if  $n$  is an even number and  $S_n^{2n-m}$  if  $n$  is an odd number. Can you see why we must make this distinction between  $n$  being odd versus even?



**Figure 1.14:** (a) A visualization of one of methane's three  $S_4$  symmetry operations. First you rotate the molecule by  $90^\circ$  ( $C_4$ ) and reflect it across the horizontal plane ( $\sigma_h$ ). While neither the  $C_4$  or  $\sigma_h$  operation is a symmetry operation of methane by itself, by combining them together we see the molecule is indistinguishable (or equivalent) from what we started with. (b) Similarly for ethane only with at  $S_6$  rather than  $S_4$ . Figure taken from Atkins' *Physical Chemistry* (Atkins et al., 2014)

### Inversion

The final symmetry operation we will go over is **inversion** which is represented as  $i$  in symbolic form.<sup>9</sup> We imagine passing each point in an object through its **center of symmetry** and placing it on the opposite side. If a point initially has the coordinates  $(x, y, z)$  then after the inversion the coordinates will become  $(-x, -y, -z)$ . It turns out that this operation is equivalent to an  $S_2$  operation (i.e.  $i = S_2$ ), but inversion's importance warrants the distinction. An example of an object is the staggered ethane molecule shown in Figure 1.14b. Note that inversion is its own inverse.

**Exercise 12** Find and sketch an objects that has inversion symmetry.

<sup>9</sup>This is not to be confused with the same  $i$  you may have encountered in a mathematics course previously where  $i = \sqrt{-1}$  by definition.

**Exercise 13** *The Great Pyramid of Giza is one of the world's seven ancient wonders. Name and draw seven symmetry operations it has.*

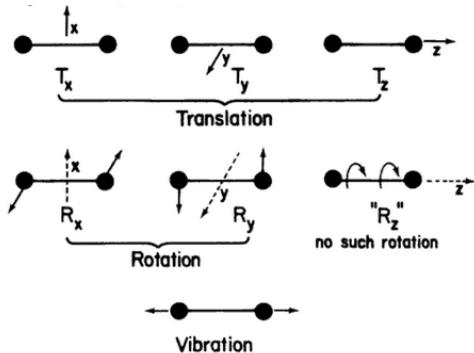
**Exercise 14** *Name all of the symmetry operations for (a) carbon dioxide, (b) water, (c) methane, and (d) sulfur hexafluoride.*

## Physical Properties and Symmetry

Now at this point, you may be wondering why we went over this discussion of symmetry, much less in an environmental science textbook. The answer is that symmetry plays a fundamental role in how the natural world works around us.<sup>10</sup> So it should be no surprise that properties (both physical and chemical) arise from the symmetries of its structure.

Molecules can essentially do three things. They can translate across space. They can rotate. And lastly, they can vibrate.

Now let us consider a single particle floating in free space by itself. There are only three ways for it to move, either in the  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$ -directions respectively. Because there are three ways for it to move, we say that there are three *degrees of freedom*. Now when there are two particles moving together in free space, there are a total of six degrees of freedom. Three of the six include simple translation. That is, the molecule can move around. There are two ways it can rotate. This is a subtle point that only holds for diatomic molecules. In Figure 1.15, we see that there is no way for a diatomic molecule to rotate about its  $z$ -axis, leaving one degree of freedom left for vibration.



**Figure 1.15:** The six degrees of freedom of a diatomic molecule. Notice that there are only two ways that it can rotate. The rotation about the  $z$ -axis does not change the location of the atoms, and thus, does not count (However, in any non-linear molecule, there will be a  $R_z$  rotation). Because of this, there is a remaining degree of freedom: a vibrational one. Figure taken from Harris' *Symmetry and Spectroscopy* (Harris and Bertolucci, 1978)

In principle, we can continue to just add more and more atoms to the molecules, making them bigger and bigger. With each atom, we get three more degrees of freedom. When the molecules are not linear, six of the degrees of freedom are contained within translation and rotation. The remaining degrees of freedom are turned into various vibrations of the molecule. To summarize, in

---

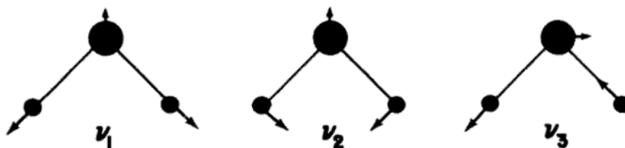
<sup>10</sup> The details are not important, but if you think of various conservation laws you may have heard of in various sciences courses (e.g. conservation of energy, conservation of linear and angular momentum, conservation of charge, etc.) all arise from various symmetries of systems that we are studying. This isn't important to this text, but it does show how interesting Nature is.

a molecule with  $N$  atoms, if the molecule is *linear* there are  $3N - 5$  vibrational modes; if it is not linear, there are  $3N - 6$  vibrational modes.

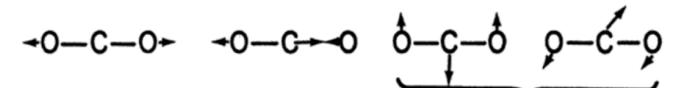
**Exercise 15** How many modes of vibration are there for (a) carbon dioxide, (b) water, (c) methane, and (d) sulfur hexafluoride?

A logical next question would be, why do we care how many vibrational modes a molecule has? Quite simply, the answer is that when one of these vibrational modes is excited, the molecule *absorbs* energy. Molecules can be thought of various atoms attached together with springs (the covalent bonds). When you have a mass on a spring, you can put energy into the system by displacing the mass by either compressing or stretching the spring. When you release the spring, the mass will vibrate back and forth. The same thing happens with molecules. The covalently bonded atoms act in the same way only with light exciting the bonds (springs), allowing the molecule to absorb energy and later radiate it back towards the earth contributing to the greenhouse effect.

Now depending on the symmetry of the molecule, that is what symmetry operations each molecule has, determines how a molecule can vibrate. The different ways a molecule can vibrate are called **vibrational modes**. Here is the key concept to take away: a molecule will only absorb infrared radiation if the vibrational mode *changes the overall dipole moment of the molecule*. ([Harris and Bertolucci, 1978](#); [Atkins et al., 2014](#); [Bishop, 1993](#)). When a molecule absorbs IR-radiation, it is said to be **infrared active**. To further illustrate this, we will look at the case of water and carbon dioxide as seen in Figure 1.16.



(a) Vibrational Modes of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Figure taken from Harris' *Symmetry and Spectroscopy* ([Harris and Bertolucci, 1978](#))



(b) Vibrational Modes of  $\text{CO}_2$ . Figure taken from Harris' *Symmetry and Spectroscopy* ([Harris and Bertolucci, 1978](#))

**Figure 1.16:** Here are the vibrational modes of water and carbon dioxide. Every single way that either of these two molecules can vibrate is some combination of the modes given above. Only some of these are infrared active ([Harris and Bertolucci, 1978](#)) N.B., the underbrace below the rightmost  $\text{CO}_2$  vibrational modes are there to suggest that these are excited by the same energy, i.e. they are degenerate.

The dipole moment of water that is not vibrating, has a net dipole moment where the negative charge is centered near the oxygen atom and the positive charge is centered directly between each of the hydrogens.<sup>11</sup> If you go through each of the three vibrational modes of water given in Figure 1.16a, then you will see that either the distance or direction of its this arrow, its dipole moment, will change. Consequently, each of the three ways that water can vibrate will absorb IR-radiation.

<sup>11</sup> Imagine drawing an arrow of length  $d$  from the positive to the negative charge as a visualization of  $\mu$ .

However, if we look at carbon dioxide in Figure 1.16b, we see the left-most vibrational mode has zero net change in carbon dioxide's dipole moment as there is still an equal but opposite dipole moment pointing from the carbon atom to each oxygen; consequently, that vibrational mode is **infrared inactive**.

Now we are finally understanding how important a molecule's symmetry actually is in determining its potency as a greenhouse gas. In the case of methane<sup>12</sup> and sulfur hexafluoride,<sup>13</sup> there are a relatively high number of atoms (5 and 7 respectively) leading to  $3N - 6$  vibrational modes. If a molecule is highly symmetric, then essentially any vibration will change it's nonzero, net-dipole moment, leading to vibrations in the molecule that will absorb (and eventually re-emit) infrared radiation. This, coupled to with the lifetimes of these molecules in the atmosphere, make highly symmetric molecules much more potent greenhouse gases. As human-induced greenhouse gases (mostly carbon dioxide and methane) are the main contributors to climate change, it is important to understand how and why these gases have the relative potency that they do.

**Exercise 16** Which of the following molecules are greenhouse gases:  $N_2$ ,  $H_2$ ,  $CF_4$ , and  $N_2O$ . Why?

---

<sup>12</sup>Check out <http://www.chemtube3d.com/vibrationsCH4.htm> to visualize the vibrational modes of methane.

<sup>13</sup>Check out <http://www.chemtube3d.com/vibrationsSF6.htm> to visualize the vibrational modes of  $SF_6$ .

## Appendix B: Answers to Selected Exercises

**Solution 6:** (a) 273.15 K, (b) 373.15 K.

**Solution 7:** (a) 734.51 W, (b) Assuming 2000 Cal/day: 32% of food energy goes to body heat.

**Solution 9:** (a) 333.2 K, (b) 230.8 K, and (c) 669.8 K.

**Solution 13:**  $E$ ,  $C_4$ ,  $C_2$ ,  $4\sigma_v$ .

**Solution 15:** 4, 3, 9, 15.

**Solution 16:**  $\text{CF}_4$ ,  $\text{N}_2\text{O}$ .



# Chapter 2

## Tropospheric Heat Transfers: Evaporation, Transpiration, and Precipitation

MARC LOS HUERTOS

### 2.1 Hydrological Cycle

#### 2.1.1 Solar Radiation as a Driver the Hydrological Cycle

The sun's energy powers the hydrologic cycle in Earth. And the hydrology effectively creates weather.

As described in Chapter 1, the sun heats the planet's atmosphere. While keeping our planet well above 0 °C made life as we know it possible, it does a lot more.

First, the heat drives weather patterns, and for our purposes now, it drives the hydrologic cycle.

#### 2.1.2 Heat and Evaporation

##### Evaporation and Evapotranspiration

The heated atmosphere allows the air to hold more water – thus increases the rate of evaporation. The water vapor in the atmosphere can then be redistributed by air currents.

Water is lost directly from plants as well – but it forms a tight linkage to soils, where evapotranspiration is the loss of water via stomata in leaves that has traveled through the vascular system of plants, the roots and soil.

##### Potential Evaporation

However, just because the air is warm enough and it can 'hold' more water doesn't mean it will. The difference between water that is actually evaporated and what could be evaporated is termed as potential evaporation. When biomass is related to potential ET we see a strong correlation.

### 2.1.3 Precipitation: Rain and Snow

#### Temperature

Water the atmospheric temperature falls below a certain temperature... thus, the atmosphere can no longer hold water.

#### Precipitation and Elevation

These changes in temperature can depend on the height of the air mass. As air masses heat they also rise, as the air mass go up in temperature, the temperature declines and can't hold water, thus, it rains.

#### Orographic Effects

*Orographic effects...*

#### Rain and Latitude

### 2.1.4 Tropical Zones

The tropical zone, loosely defined as the region between the Tropic of Cancer and Tropic of Capricorn (latitude XX and -XX). The region has rainfall that often exceeds XX mm per year and a mean annual temp of XX and at lower elevations never any frost events.

The vegetation is adapted to XXX

#### Desert Regions

### 2.1.5 Temperate Zones

### 2.1.6 Monsoons

Much of east Asia is temperate — but as one moves south the climate become increasingly tropical. The temperate zone is defined by ... however, we are now confronted with the monsoon – which was coined for the weather of east asia, we will explore the monsoon weather as we begin to unpack weather patterns with more detail (Chapter 12).

## 2.2 Static versus Dynamic Views of the Climate System

### 2.2.1 Paleoclimates versus Climate Change

As shown in Chapter 1, the Earth has experienced dramatic shifts in climate over a record of 100 thousand years. Thus, the climate of the Earth, the average of weather is non-stationary or static. The Earth's climate is dynamic and sensitive to various factors (forcings) that lead to warming or cooling.

Since the Holocene ( 18,000 years ago), the Earth has been warming. The warming has driven changes in weather patterns, as the patterns of how heat is distributed can be disrupted. The shift to a warming climate became with melting glaciers and caused by XXX???, but even this warming has been interrupted, by various events, such as the "Little Ice Age". What cause this event is subject to much debate, but was likely caused by...

### 2.2.2 Climate in the Anthropocene

Meanwhile, the Earth's climate has been on an accelerated increase in temperature, over and above the warming post the Holocene. Although the exact amount that is due to natural cycle and anthropogenic causes might be considered controversial by some, we have a pretty good idea that the average energy entering the Earth is higher because of greenhouse gases. This increases the amount of energy in our earth's weather systems. We will discuss the implications of these changes in Chapter 12.

## 2.3 Conclusion

The upward and downward transfer of heat and rain define the basic weather patterns on planet Earth, but as we'll see in Chapter 12 the lateral transfer of heat and moisture with winds provide yet another process that help us understand how weather and climate works. Once we understand these additional factors, then we can better appreciate the complexity of climate and its dynamic nature. Stay tuned.



# Chapter 3

## Converting Solar Energy in Organic Carbon: Phytomass

ALLISON JOSEPH AND MADDIE NELSON<sup>1</sup>

### 3.1 Introduction

#### 3.1.1 Tropical Forests: Stored Solar Energy & Evolutionary Trove

The tropical rain forests of Southeast Asia are a part of the earth's oldest existing tropical ecosystems. As one of the most biologically diverse ecosystems, the species richness may exceed the Amazon and African tropical rain forests. They also represent a significant portion of the Earth's biomass — created by the sun's energy via photosynthesis, warm temperatures, and relatively high levels of precipitation.

However, when searching the internet on the topic of SE Asia ecosystems, one is confronted with dire predictions associated with deforestation. So why are so many concerned about the tropical forests in SE Asia? Are they that unique? What makes them special? What strategies are there that might improve their changes?

**Exercise 17** *Search academic databases on the topic of SE Asia ecosystems and select a specific country; list the causes and consequences of deforestation in the country.*

#### 3.1.2 Biodiversity Hotspots

##### What is Biodiversity?

**Biodiversity** is defined as the variety of life and its processes, including genes, species, communities, ecosystems and the ecological and evolutionary processes that keep them functioning ([Noss and Cooperrider, 1994](#)).

Biodiversity depends on biomass in an ecosystem, where diversity to be positively correlated with biomass ([Cardinale et al., 2007](#)). In the case of Southeast Asian forests, biomass provides habitat for a diverse array of organisms, including thousands of vertebrate, invertebrate, lichen and microbial species. By interacting with each other and the environment, this diversity provides a diverse array

---

<sup>1</sup>Statement of Contributions:

of important ecosystem functions and services, that includes soil development and productivity and nitrogen fixation ([Humphrey et al., 1999](#)); food, fiber, and oil products; and complex array of plants and animals.

### How is Biodiversity Measured?

Biodiversity is a function of species richness (number of species) and how they are distributed in space. Species richness is the number of species, which is easy to measure if we can identify species with ease. True for mammals, but it's a tougher task for insects and worms.

**Table 3.1:** Types of Diversity

Type of Diversity	Characteristics
$\alpha$ -diversity	Diversity of each site (local species pool).
$\beta$ -diversity	Differences in species composition among sites.
$\gamma$ -diversity	Diversity of the entire landscape (regional species pool).

Species diversity is relative. It's meaningful when we compare indices. Of course, we might even wonder what the value of this measure is. Species diversity is a function of evolutionary diversification, but we might also be interested in functional diversity – what does an organism “do” in the ecosystem.

### Taxonomic Uncertainties

It's popular to cite locations that have high levels of biodiversity, but these indices are often focused on a specific taxa, e.g. amphibians, orchids, beetles, etc. For example, South East Asia has the highest global diversity for a number of taxa when analyzed at a family level (<http://www.iucnredlist.org/>). However, systemicists are quick to admit that the relationship between family and species is highly uncertain. In other words, the we don't know if family level diversity is meaningful at the species level.<sup>2</sup>

The level of taxonomic uncertainty associated with many taxa may be significantly higher than other parts of the world, with only a small proportion of many large taxa described (e.g., 50% of bats remain XX described ([Francis et al., 2010](#))), and this lack of knowledge makes regional prioritization challenging.

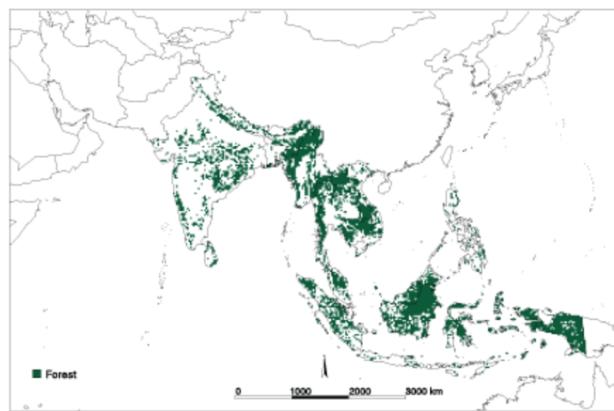
This taxonomic uncertainty and rapid rate of species description extends across taxa with over 2216 described between 1997 and 2014 (i.e., see WWF-Greater Mekong <http://greatermekong.panda.org/>), and consequently, many species in the region may be driven to extinction while still undescribed.

### Linking Biodiversity to Biomass Production

The tropical forests of Southeast Asia account for about one-fifth of the world's forest, and cover around 26% of the land area in the region (Figure 3.1) ([Brown et al., 2003](#)). These ecosystems are characterized by vertical layering of vegetation and the formation of distinct habitats for animals within each layer. On the forest floor is a sparse layer of plants and decaying plant matter. Above that is an understory of short, shrubby foliage. A layer of trees rises above this understory and is topped by a closed upper canopy the uppermost overhead layer of branches and leaves.

<sup>2</sup>Need to check if this is true and get citations.

Although tropical rainforests form less than half of the total forest on earth, their leaf systems comprise approximately 70% of the world's total leaf surface area (Gower et al., 1999). In addition, the temperature and sunlight profiles of tropical rainforests are stable in comparison to other terrestrial biomes. Their location on the equator provides more solar radiation and therefore more opportunity for primary productivity. Overall, a consistent amount of daily sunlight and lack of temperature seasonality allows for year-round growth. It is not surprising, then, that tropical rainforests account for between 30% and 50% of net primary productivity in terrestrial systems, although they cover only 6% of the total land area of the earth (Houghton, 2005). This means that they store more carbon per unit area than any other type of ecosystem. Thus, tropical forests are critical ecosystems in mitigating the carbon cycle of the planet.



**Figure 3.1:** Forest/non-forest classification of the study area, displayed with 0.25-degree resolution. A database was generated of estimates of geographically referenced carbon densities of forest vegetation in tropical Southeast Asia for 1980. A geographic information system (GIS) was used to incorporate spatial databases of climatic, edaphic, and geomorphological indices and vegetation to estimate potential (i.e., in the absence of human intervention and natural disturbance) carbon densities of forests. The resulting map was then modified to estimate actual 1980 carbon density as a function of population density and climatic zone. (Brown et al., 1991).

## Conservation and Tropical Forests

The presence of forest biomass is essential to the existence of plants, animals and atmospheric processes. Forest biomass greatly influences the global carbon cycle, bio-geochemical processes, and biodiversity. In addition, forest biomass serves as a habitat for millions of species. However, the loss of forest cover ultimately alters the interactions between the land surface and the atmosphere, disrupting healthy ecosystem structure and functioning. Thus, conserving forest has become an important normative goal in conservation biology.

Before we look at the conservation issues, let's look at the ecological drivers that promote biodiversity as we first look at how photosynthesis and plant diversity can drive other types of diversity.

## 3.2 Primary Production

### 3.2.1 Plant Biomass and Productivity

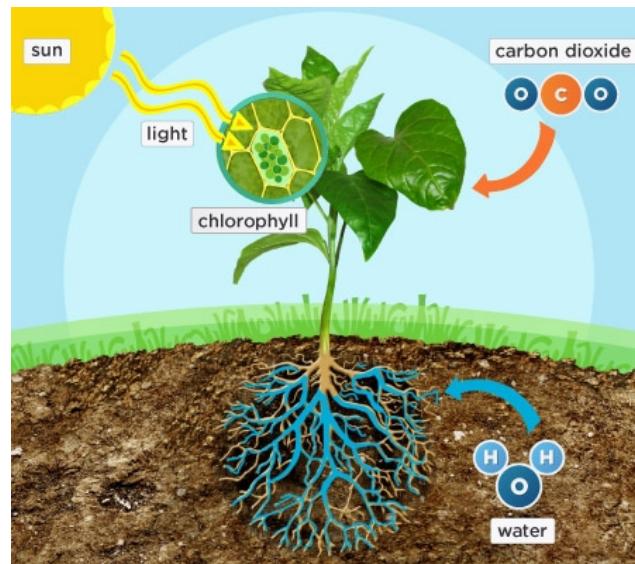
**Biomass** can be defined as the total amount of above-ground organic matter in trees, shrubs, and herbs including twigs, leaves, branches and bark. Measures of biomass are expressed as mass per unit area (Brown et al., 1991). However, below ground biomass (roots, soil microbes) can be substantial, and any measure of ecosystem biomass should estimate above and below ground biomass.

Without context, measures of ecosystem biomass is not all the engaging. However, when we compare ecosystems, the relative amounts generate more interest. For example, the amount standing biomass found in the tropics is quite exceptional (Table 3.2), where tropical rainforests have over twice the standing biomass as the next highest ecosystems.

**Table 3.2:** Above-ground[?] biomass, net primary productivity, and return rate?? (source: TBD (2018)).

Ecosystem	Biomass	NPP	R <sub>t</sub>
Tropical Rainforest	45,000	2,000	22.5 years
Boreal Forest	20,000	800	25 years
Temperate Grasslands	1,500	500	3.0 years
Lakes	20	500	15 days
Open Ocean	3	125	9 days

Biomass is also the product of productivity – such as annual primary production (mass per unit area per year). Annual primary productivity on depends on a host of environmental factors which determine the physiological processes in plant growth. Without water limitations, the productivity in tropical rainforests are exceptionally productive, but they also can be limited by numerous factors, to be described below.



**Figure 3.2:** The process of photosynthesis.

### 3.2.2 Gross and Net Primary Productivity

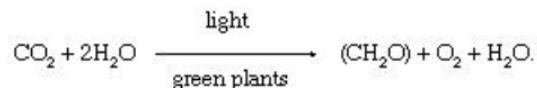
The importance of forests in the carbon cycle depends on the extent of the forest, the amount of carbon stored per unit area as plant body or as organic material in the soil, and the rate at which carbon (or CO<sub>2</sub>) is “fixed” by the plants during photosynthesis. The rate of fixation of carbon by photosynthesis is the ***gross primary productivity*** (GPP). Some fraction of this fixed energy is used by primary producers for cellular respiration and maintenance of existing tissues. The remaining fixed energy is referred to as ***net primary productivity*** (NPP). NPP is the rate at which all the plants in an ecosystem produce net useful chemical energy. It is equal to the difference between the GPP and the rate at which they use some of that energy during respiration (Corlett, 2014).

$$NPP = GPP - \text{respiration} \quad (3.1)$$

The ratio of NPP to GPP — the carbon-use efficiency — is widely assumed to be around .5, but there is evidence to suggest it varies over a wider range (DeLucia et al., 2007).<sup>3</sup> Some, but not all components of the total NPP can be measured directly. Field studies usually measure the two largest components: the above-ground biomass increment, the increase in the dry mass of above-ground plant parts over a measurement interval of one to several years, and the fine litter fall, the dry mass of above-ground plant parts that is produced and shed during the measurement interval for the biomass increment (Ruimy et al., 1996).

### 3.2.3 Photosynthesis

Plant biomass originates by conversion of solar energy where the photosynthesis converts atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> into organic carbon (Figure 3.3).



**Figure 3.3:** Photosynthesis

Although this process is the basis for much of what we rely, by understanding the mechanisms of this process we can better appreciate why different ecosystems have different levels of productivity.

Through the process of ***photosynthesis***, chlorophyll absorbs light energy from the sun, this is called the light reaction and is, in general, composed of two steps within ***chloroplasts*** (Figure 3.4). The majority of light captured by the plants are in the wavelengths between the visible and near infrared portions of the electromagnetic spectrum 400 to 1100 nm (Stenberg et al., 2010). The light-absorbing pigments that are effective in photosynthesis have absorption bands in this range.

Chemical energy is created by the light reaction in the form of an electrical gradient, which is used to create ATP — the energy currency inside of cells. The ATP is then used to create 5-carbon sugars that can be used to fix CO<sub>2</sub> from the air. The Krebs Cycle is a common mechanism for plants to fix carbon dioxide and then recycle the 5-carbon sugar to fix more CO<sub>2</sub> (Figure 3.5).

The final result is the creation of glucose, an energy-rich organic compound used as an energy source or building block for more complex compounds (Figure 3.6).

The biomass produced can also be thought of potential energy — where energy is released by respiration (Chapters 4 and 5, or converted to fossil fuels (Chapter 10) or burned in fires (Chapter 5).

---

<sup>3</sup>Why is this important?

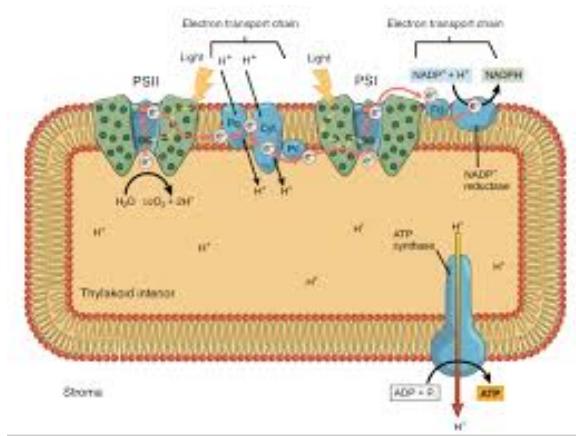


Figure 3.4: Light reaction

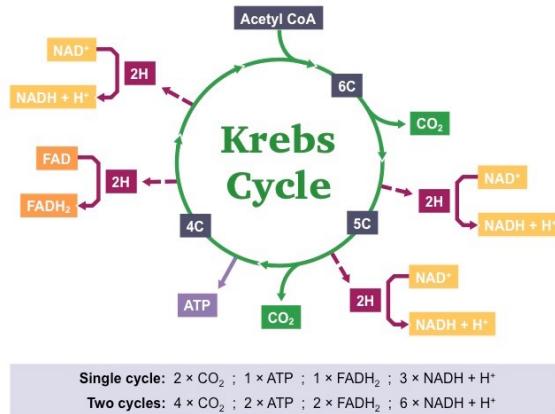


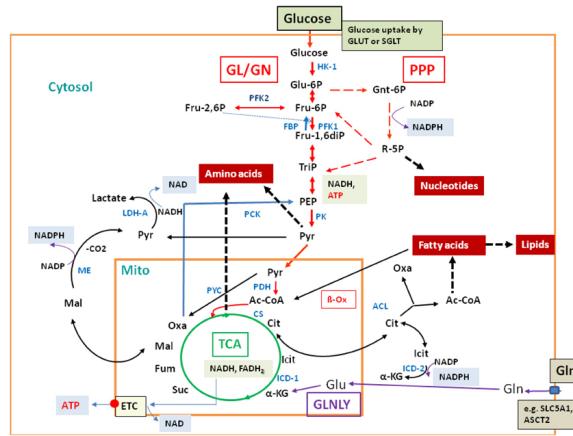
Figure 3.5: Krebs cycle

This process allows for the continuation of plant growth, serving as the ultimate source of biomass production in ecosystems. Thus, the quantity of biomass in a forest is a result of the difference between production (through photosynthesis) and consumption (by respiration and harvesting processes).

**Problem 18** Plants need water, carbon dioxide, and light for photosynthesis. According to the diagram, how does the plant absorb water for photosynthesis?

- (a) Through the leaves
- (b) Through the chlorophyll
- (c) Through the roots
- (d) Through the sun

Answer: C

**Figure 3.6:** cat and anabolic

**Problem 19** According to the diagram, where does the plant get the energy that powers photosynthesis?

- (a) From chlorophyll
- (b) From sunlight
- (c) From carbon dioxide
- (d) From water

Answer: B

### 3.2.4 Biomass and the Carbon Cycle

Carbon, in its many forms, is exchanged among the atmosphere, oceans, and land. This is called the carbon cycle (Figure 3.7). A critical part of the carbon cycle takes place in forests. Forests exchange large amounts of CO<sub>2</sub> and other gases with the atmosphere and store carbon in their leaves, wood, and roots. The carbon stored in the plants and soils is called **sequestered carbon**. The carbon that is returned to the atmosphere when it has been used by trees or other organisms as energy for life is called **respired carbon**.

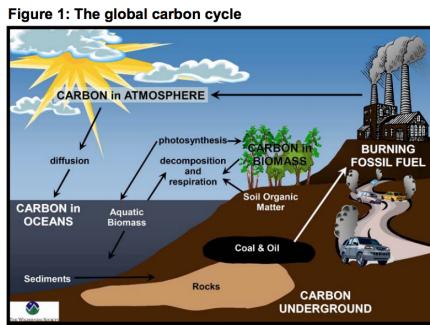
## 3.3 Plant Biodiversity: Causes and Implications

### 3.3.1 What causes biological diversity?

There is no definitive answer to what causes biological diversity. in spite of dozens of thoughtful scientists to evaluate these issues, we are left with educated guesses, waiting for others to test a range of models, evaluate empirical data, etc. ...

Bottom-up versus top-down...

**Figure 3.7:** The Carbon Cycle. Plants take carbon dioxide ( $\text{CO}_2$ ) from the atmosphere and turn it into biomass (wood, leaves, fruits etc.) through photosynthesis. By extracting fossil fuels (oil, gas and coal) from deep in the Earth, we are overloading the atmosphere with carbon, and changing our climate in irreversible ways. In addition, changes in land use, such as deforestation for agriculture, represent a smaller fraction, roughly 15%, of  $\text{CO}_2$  emissions each year. Source The Wilderness Society



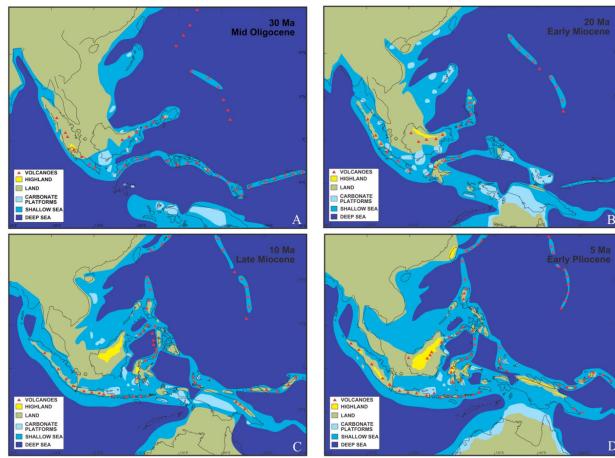
### Temperature

Aside from the sun, the abundance of biomass in forests is influenced by many factors, such as soil humidity, soil and air temperature, solar radiation, precipitation and soil nutrient availability. One of the most important factors influencing biomass is temperature. Optimum temperatures for plant growth are dynamic since they change with the species and varieties, duration of exposure, age of the plant, and stage of development (Marshall, 1988). However, the important plant metabolic processes, such as photosynthesis, are influenced by the temperature. Temperature also influences the absorption of water and nutrients, which ultimately affects the plant growth. In addition, soil nutrient availability is another factor influencing plant growth. Both nutrient deficiency and toxicity negatively affect total biomass and fruit production (Chatzistathis and Therios, 2013). Thus, by controlling the optimum levels of nutrient availability in soil, the production of biomass can be maximized. In the cases of limited nutrient availability in soils, fertilization is a common practice adopted by the farmers in order to ameliorate the low nutrient status.

### Geology

The high species richness and endemism in Southeast Asia is linked to its complex geological history (Sodhi et al., 2004). The tropical forests of Southeast Asia are the oldest, consistent rain forests on Earth, dating back to the Pleistocene Epoch 70 million years ago Hutchison et al. (1989). During this formation period, the rest of the world went through cooling and warming periods, but the climate of the Southeast Asian region remained more or less the same. This was due mainly because of its location on the equator and being surrounded by water. Because the climate on the equator does not change much and the surrounding oceans provide plenty of moisture in the form of rain, the region was able to have consistent forests over very long periods of time.

As sea levels rose and fell through warming and icing cycles, small pockets of forests survived as reservoirs of wildlife from which various species could re-establish themselves (See Fig. 1.2). When the glaciers melted and sea levels rose many of these reservoirs were cut off from each other. This forced species to develop their own distinctive evolutionary paths in response to local environments, leading to an amazing diversity of species of every kind.



**Figure 3.8:** Postulated distribution of land and sea in Southeast Asia in the Cenozoic. A. 30 mya. B. 20 mya. C. 10 mya. D. 5 mya. Figures from [Hall \(2002\)](#).

### Trophic Drivers

Efforts to understand the ecological regulation of species diversity via bottom-up approaches have failed to yield a consensus theory. According to [Terborgh \(2015\)](#), theories based on the alternative of top-down regulation have fared better than bottom-up approaches.

Based on simple experiments that remove top predators, many systems become unstable and the community transitions to radically distinct alternative states. These transitions typically involve community reorganization and loss of diversity, implying that top-down forcing is crucial to diversity maintenance.

Contrary to the expectations of bottom-up theories, many terrestrial herbivores and mesopredators are capable of sustained order-of-magnitude population increases following release from predation, negating the assumption that populations of primary consumers are resource limited and at or near carrying capacity.

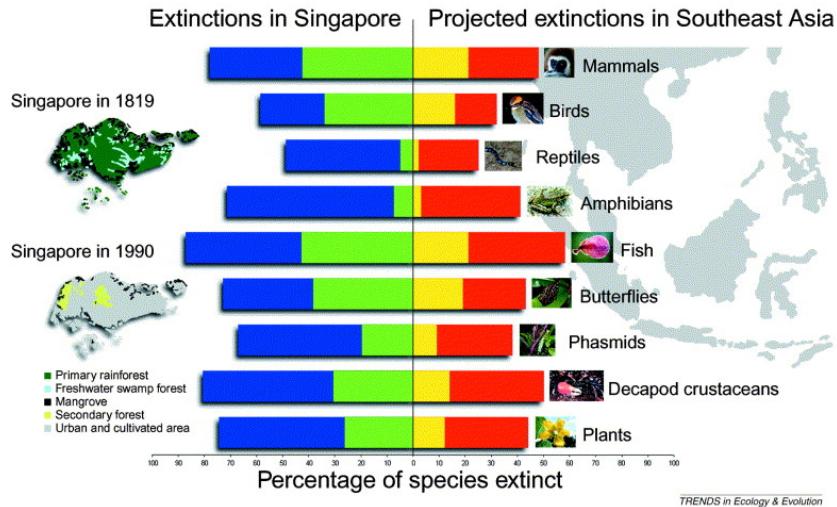
Diversity is maintained by the interaction between predation and competition, such that strong top-down forcing reduces competition, allowing coexistence.

### 3.3.2 Structure and Function of Ecosystems: Losses of Biodiversity

The balance among the many factors sustaining these environments has been increasingly threatened over the last century, as Southeast Asia has lost large percentages of biomass and species diversity. Over the last 15 years alone, 14.5% of the region's forest cover has been destroyed ([Gullison et al., 2007](#)). In countries like the Philippines, where deforestation has leveled 93% of the country's original forest cover, there is little left to be saved ([Sodhi et al., 2004](#)). Vietnam has suffered the highest rate of forest destruction in recent decades, losing 43 percent of their forest cover, according to an analysis of satellite imagery.

The scope of biomass loss and deforestation was highlighted by the conservation group the World Wildlife Fund (WWF), which noted that from 1973, near the end of the Vietnam War, to 2009, the greater Mekong region lost nearly one-third of its remaining forest cover ([Sunderland et al., 2012](#)). The impacts of this devastation are substantial in one of the world's biodiversity hotspots, as there

has been large decreases in biomass quantities and available habitats for species. Most remaining forests exist in relatively small and isolated fragments, allowing only the most adaptable species to survive.



**Figure 3.9:** This figure illustrates the population extinctions in Singapore and Southeast Asia. Green and blue bars represent recorded and inferred extinctions in Singapore, respectively. Yellow and red bars represent minimum and maximum projected extinctions in Southeast Asia, respectively (Source: [Sodhi et al. \(2004\)](#)).

## 3.4 Deforestation

### 3.4.1 Unprecedented Rates of Land Conversions

Southeast Asia is losing its forest coverage faster than any other tropical region in the world. Southeast Asia could lose three quarters of its original forests by 2100 and up to 42% of its biodiversity ([Sodhi et al., 2004](#)). At the current rate of deforestation, these rain forests could vanish in a hundred years.

Before we understand the causes and implications of these losses, it's important to note that the loss of forests and grassland has been a long-term trend that has been part of the development processes in every corner of the world. For example, the loss of the great prairies in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries amounts to a XX loss of the stored carbon on Earth at the time and XX of the CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.<sup>4</sup> Thus, it's important to reflect that the changes experienced by regions of the world have similar drivers and consequences and requires a sophisticated ethical evaluation of these drivers, lest we cast stones before understanding the globalized processes that drive these changes.

### 3.4.2 Causes and Consequences of Deforestation

Although not all deforestation is intentional, some resulting from natural factors like wildfires, human impacts and involvement have caused a disproportionate amount of destruction. Most notoriously,

<sup>4</sup>We need to put this loss in context – would Americans be willing to restore the prairies as a quid pro quo to Thailand?

the region's forests are endangered and threatened by conversion to agriculture, logging (both legal and illegal), and encroaching oil palm plantations. The human impacts on the rain forests in Southeast Asia have driven many endemic tropical plant and animal species to the brink of endangerment and even extinction.

### Access Roads and Globalized Wood Products

Unfortunately, the tropical forests of Southeast Asia are constantly changing as a result of harvesting and conversion to other land cover. Since the East Asian Miracle in 1990, the FAO (Food and Agriculture Organization) estimates that 38.7 million hectares of primary and other naturally regenerated forest have been lost in the Asia Pacific region an area greater than the size of Japan (Figure 3.10) ([FAOUN, xxx](#)). The rapid socio-economic development in Southeast Asia particularly infrastructure, agriculture and industrial development has affected the level of timber production and other forest ecosystem services. In addition, this loss of forests has a profound effect on the global carbon cycle. Tropical deforestation accounts for at least a quarter of all anthropogenic carbon emissions, with both the highest rates of deforestation worldwide and, as a result of high forest biomass, the highest carbon emissions per hectare cleared ([Corlett, 2014](#)).

	Forest cover change (000 ha/yr)		Growing stock change (million m <sup>3</sup> /yr)		Carbon stock in forest (tonnes) <sup>5</sup>
	2000- 2005	2005- 2010	2000- 2005	2005- 2010	
Cambodia	-163.0	-127.4	-16.8	-13.2	464
Indonesia	-310.4	-685.0	-154.0	-223.2	13 017
Lao PDR	-78.0	-78.2	-4.6	-5.6	1 074
Malaysia	-140.2	-86.8	-52.0	-39.4	3 212
Myanmar	-309.4	-309.6	-14.0	-13.8	1 654
Philippines	54.8	54.8	1.8	1.3	663
Thailand	-21.2	14.8	-0.8	0.6	880
Viet Nam	270.4	144.0	12.2	3.0	992
<b>SE Asia</b>	<b>-709.8</b>	<b>-1 086.4</b>	<b>-228.6</b>	<b>-290.8</b>	<b>22 028</b>

**Figure 3.10:** Deforestation and degradation rates in Southeast Asian countries, 2000-2010. Includes carbon in living above- and below ground biomass. Source: ([FAOUN, xxx](#)).

### Agriculture

Most of the clearing is done for agricultural purposes — both grazing cattle and planting crops. Often rural residents chop down a small area (typically a few acres) and burn the tree trunks, a process known as Slash and Burn agriculture. Intensive, or modern, agriculture occurs on a much larger scale, sometimes deforesting several square miles at a time.

### Palm Oil Plantations

Found in everything from shampoo to donuts, palm oil is now the most common<sup>5</sup> vegetable oil in the world and also one of the world's leading deforestation drivers. Most palm oil is produced in two countries, Malaysia and Indonesia, where huge swaths of tropical forests have been cleared to make way for oil palm plantations. This transition is responsible for releasing large quantities of carbon into the atmosphere while shrinking habitats for a multitude of endangered species. Between 2000

<sup>5</sup>not sure what this means

and 2010 palm cultivation in Malaysia was responsible for 2 to 9 percent of worldwide emissions from tropical land use ([Carlson and Curran, 2013](#)).

### Logging

Commercial logging is another common form of deforestation. Logging can occur selectively — where only the economically valuable species are cut—or by clear-cutting, where all the trees are cut. Logging activities are responsible for at least 50% decline in the Southeast Asia's forest carbon density ([Hawthorne et al., 2011](#)). Logging affects the ecological processes in timber concessions by removing biomass, manipulating forest structural characteristics, changing light regimes, and altering microclimatic conditions at both the ground and canopy levels. Logging also introduces people into the forest, increases access via logging roads, and generally increases disturbance.

### 3.4.3 Socio-political Forces

The motivators for deforestation are complex. A competitive global economy drives the need for money in economically challenged tropical countries. At the national level, governments encourage modern agriculture or sell logging concessions to raise money for projects, to pay international debt, or to develop industry. The logging companies seek to harvest the forest and make profit from the sales of pulp and valuable hardwoods such as mahogany. Similarly, palm oil plantations or large cattle pastures often replace rainforest to sell their commodities in the world market.

## 3.5 Conservation Efforts

### 3.5.1 Biodiversity Hotspots and Conservation Priorities

In our opinion, it's a rather weak argument as a case to protect biodiversity because 1) it sets up a perverse competition between cites for conservation dollars thus ranking some ecosystems over others using somewhat meaningless measures and 2) privileges certain taxa over other environmental values or ecosystem processes.

### 3.5.2 Traditional Ecological Knowledge

#### Swidden Agriculture

[ARE WE GOING TO TALK ABOUT TRADITIONAL ECOLOGICAL KNOWLEDGE – IF SO, GET TO IT....]

This transition is best illustrated in the dominant knowledge and practice of forestry and agriculture. Most local knowledge systems have been based on the life-support capacities of tropical forests, not on their commercial timber value. Traditional food systems based on the forest, either directly, or indirectly have been seen as non-existent in the field of vision of a reductionist forestry and a reductionist agriculture even though they have been and still are the sustenance base for many communities of the world. For example, the rainforests of Southeast Asia supply all the food needs of the Kavan, Kenyah, the Punan Bah, the Penan who gather food from the forest and practice swidden agriculture (1999). The plant supplies are gathered mostly from the surrounding forest, and some 223 basic plant types are regularly consumed. The most important food items are mushrooms (kulat), ferns (paku) and the hearts of various plants (ubot) which include bamboo shoots, wild palms, and wild bananas ([Hong et al., 1987](#)).

Deforestation has been happening for centuries on a smaller scale. However, since the introduction of modern forestry and agriculture, plant biomass has been split into separate non-overlapping domains on the basis of separate commodity markets to which they supply raw materials and resources. In local knowledge systems, the plant world is not artificially separated between a forest supplying commercial wood and agricultural land supplying food commodities. The forest and the field are in ecological continuum, and activities in the forest contribute to the food needs of the local community, while agriculture itself is modelled on the ecology of the tropical forest. In this model, some forest dwellers gather food directly from the forest, while many communities practise agriculture outside the forest, but depend on the fertility of the forest for the fertility of agricultural land. In contrast, the global capitalist industrial complex splits forestry from agriculture and reduces forestry to timber and wood supply (De Beer et al., 1989). The creation of fragmented categories thus blinks out the entire spaces in which local knowledge exists - knowledge which is far closer to the life of the forest and more representative of its integrity and diversity.

### Monocultures of the Mind

South Asian scholar, Vandana Shiva, emphasizes that the regions transition towards industrialism and economic productivity has materialized as traditional local knowledge values of the forest have been systematically undermined (Shiva, 1993). This knowledge and power nexus has largely arose in the context of globalization and its associated set of values based on commercial capitalism [I think this is an important critique, but we'll need to make a bit more of a sophisticated analysis. For example, all capitalism is commercial, i.e. relies on selling things. Let's chat about what you want to accomplish here] King, 1993.

#### **Exercise 20** *What is the effect of biomass on ecosystem biodiversity?*

- (a) *Biomass has no impact on biodiversity.*
- (b) *Increased biomass results in high rates of biodiversity.*
- (c) *Increased biomass results in lower rates of biodiversity*

#### **Exercise 21** *The fragmentation of forests:*

- (a) *Increases the number of species, reducing competition for food resources*
- (b) *Creates isolated habitats, upon which species biodiversity increases*
- (c) *Decreases biodiversity, allowing only the most adaptable species to survive*
- (d) *Is a preferred method of forest conservation*

#### **Exercise 22** *True or False: Mono-culture forests produce higher rates of above ground biomass than mixed species forests.*

*False. Mixed species forests produce higher rates of above ground biomass and biodiversity.*

### 3.5.3 Box X.X Case Study: The Javan Rhinos

Large mammals, such as the Javan rhino, are especially vulnerable to forest degradation because they require large areas of forest to survive. The Javan Rhino is a herbivore, whose source of food depends on lowland rainforest biomass. The Javan rhino is primarily a browser, its diet consisting of shoots, twigs, young foliage and fallen fruit.

The Javan Rhino was declared extinct in Vietnam in 2010, due to the compounding effects of poaching and deforestation ([Brook et al., 2014](#)). In addition to inadequate response to heavy poaching of rhinos, forest habitats well-suited to rhinos were disproportionately impacted by deforestation and fragmentation for agricultural plots. Conservation efforts, which commenced in earnest during the late 1980s, proved too late for the Javan Rhino. It is now the hope that lessons learned from the Vietnamese population of rhinos may be used to protect the remaining population in Indonesia.



The remaining Javan rhinos live within the Udung Kulon National Park, located on a small Indonesian Island. Although protected, the park and its surrounding forests are under pressure from human activities. In addition, the rhinos find themselves threatened by the invasive Arenga palm, which is having a devastating impact on the plants that the rhinos rely on for food. The palm has spread to cover more than half of the area inhabited by rhinos, shading out the under-story and reducing the amount of plants available to the rhinos. This decreased availability of food reduces the carrying capacity of the park and slows the breeding rate of the rhinos.

Recently, there have been talks of re-locating a small number of the remaining Javan Rhino population and forming a second, independent population. Conservationists are concerned about the risk of natural disasters on the Indonesian island. Increased tectonic and volcanic activity threaten the rhinos, as well as the compounding threat of tsunamis due to these natural disasters ([Setiawan et al., 2018](#)). However, without the appropriate amount of forest space and biomass, the 62 remaining rhinos will not survive in a new location.

**Exercise 23** *Discuss: Is saving the Javan Rhino worth the time, money and effort of conservationists? Why or why not?*

### 3.5.4 Conservation and Forest Management

The complexity of addressing the threats facing Southeast Asian tropical forests have made the region a top conservation priority. However, environmental apathy, corruption, poor natural resource governance, poverty, lack of data, and lack of conservation funding remain formidable challenges for

conservationists in Southeast Asia ([Sodhi et al., 2004](#)).

Scientists of the WWF and other experts believe that it is essential to begin preserving the greater Mekong region's forest. The Vietnamese government has been heralded for its reforestation efforts, yet, these programs largely consist of monoculture tree plantations that harbor limited biodiversity and decreased biomass. Results of long-term experiments in Southeast Asia have examined the effect of tree species biodiversity on aboveground biomass quantities. Forest mixtures and corresponding monocultures were compared on the same site to control for outside environmental variables such as climate or weather. The study found that the productivity of mixed-species forests was 15% greater than the average of their corresponding monocultures, and not statistically lower than the productivity of the best corresponding monoculture ([Sunderland et al., 2012](#)). Thus, the greater biodiversity of mixed species forests produced statistically significant higher rates of above ground biomass.

The presence and continued supply of biomass represents a key concern in managed forest systems. Overall, conservation responses will need to be strategic, addressing the need for long-term development and employing temporary measures to secure species and ecosystems under imminent threat. Future conservation policies will act as living documents in response to the regions they represent. Multiple actions will be needed, ranging from initiatives at international, regional and national policy level to many thousands of projects, negotiations and decisions at the level of sites and landscapes.

However, the decisions by policy-makers regarding the management and use of forest and trees will require more accurate and precise information on the state and patterns and rates of change of the resource. To attain these needs, reliable estimates on the state and change of forest biomass for all countries over the long term must be made ([Brown et al., 1991](#)).

### 3.6 Conclusion

The tropical forest biomass of Southeast Asia plays an intricate and vital role in the functioning of healthy ecosystems and atmospheric balances. However, tropical deforestation has greatly lowered quantities of forest biomass, resulting in decreased biodiversity, a disruption of ecosystem service and the endangerment of endemic species. In addition, through its essential participation in the global terrestrial carbon cycle, forest biomass has been recognized as an essential climate variable.

Forest biomass also affects global and regional climate and environmental health. From 2002 to 2012, the degradation of forest was responsible for a 10% increase in greenhouse gas emissions ([Gullison et al., 2007](#)). It is estimated that forest protection and reforestation efforts, if successful, could be powerful enough to offset greenhouse gas emissions for up to 40 years as other energy sources are developed and integrated ([Lasco, 2002](#)). With booming economies, the countries of the Southeast Asia region must now balance legitimate needs for development while safeguarding ecosystem services that are under growing threat.

Thus, in the coming decades, the preservation and management of forest biomass should remain a top priority for conservationists, government officials, and local individuals. Many scientists are currently researching the best methods of sustainable forest management, with the hope of developing practical recommendations for a modern Southeast Asia.



# Chapter 4

## Soils: Atmosphere, Lithosphere and Biosphere Linkages

WILFRIDO BATISTA AND ISRAEL TERU<sup>1</sup>

### 4.1 Soils as a Living Resource

#### 4.1.1 Soil Ecosystem Services

##### Soils — Food and Water

Soil is a resource that is non renewable and essential to life on Earth. Soil helps sustain many of the natural processes that happen on the Earth from water quality, land use, and vegetation security.

When looking at the human production benefits for soil it literally grows the food we eat, adds fiber to paper and clothing, foundation for the roads and buildings humans make. Without soil the world as we know it would literally crumble to pieces and all chaos would ensue from the perspective of an natural scientist. Witnessing soils' natural attributes of mitigating pollutants and excess water, groundwater recharge, cycling of nutrients, and habitat for microorganism and biota. The vitality of soil is ever prevalent in the everyday lives we walk through.

##### Carbon Sinks and Sources

The carbon fixed by autotrophic organisms, dominated by plants biomass, drives carbon sequestration on the planet. Although XX% of this carbon is stored in plant biomass, soils sequester a very large proportion of the carbon fixed. Thus, soils provide a conduit that stores carbon and even promotes long-term burial of carbon — reducing global CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations — and helping the planet maintain it's relatively warm, but not excessively hot energy balance.

#### 4.1.2 Soil Development: 4 Processes

Four basic processes determine soil development:

---

<sup>1</sup>Statement of Contributions: Wilfrido Bautista wrote the introduction to soils, carbon pollution, and agriculture (above ground carbon sequestration).

**Additions** is the concept of different elements and material adding to the already existing soil in the region. The materials are added to the soil through decomposing vegetation and organism or new mineral materials. Natural elements that fall onto soil we see are water and dust added minerals. Organic particles we see is added by organic matter adding nutrients. Human influences of addition that we see in soil is fertilizer.

**Losses** through the evaporation of water. When precipitation occurs we see soil particles wash away in the storm. The organic matter in the soil can erode breaking down into carbon dioxide. Harvetation from the soil is other factor that occurs many times leading to poor soil conditions if excessive. We see physical/chemical of soil shifts leading to lost of many natural material within.

**Translocations** move soil material whether organic or mineral between soil profiles. Organism that can burrow down into the soil can move materials through the soil to their benefit. We can see translocation through change in coloration differences, texture, and structure.

**Transformation** we see in the soil when chemical or biological process of the soil occur. We see transformation with leaf decomposition into humus. In the soil we can also see hard rock through weathering process turns into soft clay. Reduced Iron ( $\text{Fe}+2$ ) in soil can react to oxygen that causes rusting.

## 4.2 Vertical Patterns as Product of Pedogenesis

### 4.2.1 Biotic and Abiotic Factors

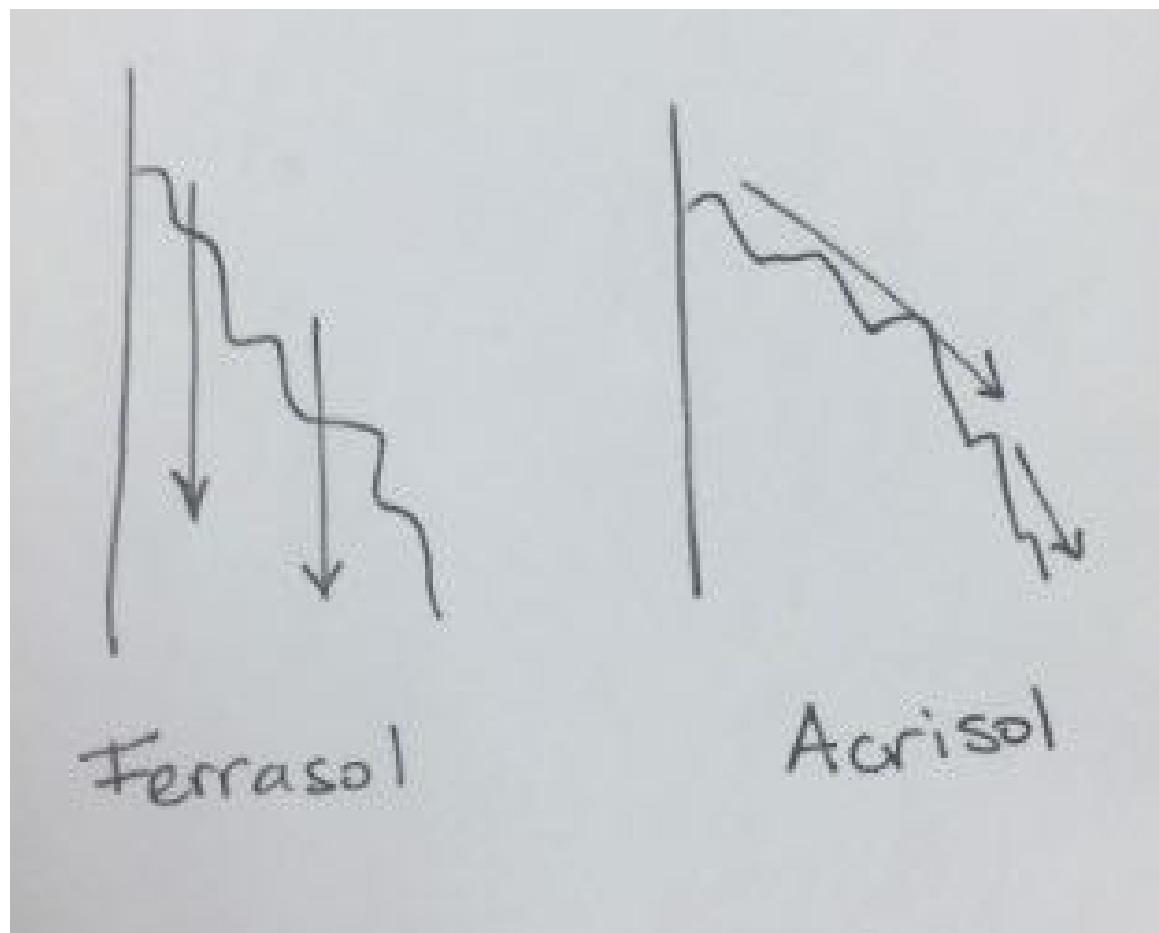
Soils are the product of biologic activity – but their development depends on a range of influential factors.

Soils act as key players in global interfaces which are both horizontal and vertical.

They serve as the intersection of many scientific subjects – take hydrology for instance. Hydrology relates water to land through vertical and horizontal interactions. It is important to study hydrology because we can learn and predict about relevant environmental conditions like time and scale of flooding, distribution of moisture in the soil which relates to the distribution of plants, chemical and sedimentary transmission from the built environment to rivers, and agricultural productivity ([Chappell, 2010](#)).

In 2001, Elsenbeer fostered the notion that subsurface water pathways in the tropics start with vertical flow in Ferralsol soil and transition to lateral flow in Acrisol soil 4.1 ([Elsenbeer, 2001](#)). The study has been shown to have some inconsistencies, partly a result of the better definitions that exist for soil types today. It has been found that the proportion and type of clay in the soil can lend these types of soils a wide range of vertical and lateral properties. For example, Bukit Timah in Singapore is dominated by Acrisols with kaolinite, a type of clay, and has less than 10% lateral flow ([Chappell and Sherlock, 2005](#)). Hence, generalizations like Eisenbeer's should be questioned. One can now see how picking up on such nuances is crucial to scientists.

Taking us back to the geologic timeline, quaternary soils are known to be generally unconsolidated, also holding many hydrological properties such as fluvial (river) deposition, marine inundation, slope wash and more ([Chappell et al., 2007](#)). Many of the sediments in Southeast Asia are loose, attributing soil permeability to regions like the Mekong Lowland of Cambodia and Central Plain of Thailand ([Chiem, 1993](#)). This means that rainfall does not simply reach river by a lateral pathway over land, instead it can often times percolate before it reaches rivers. Aquifers, large areas of underground water characterized by porosity and ease of percolation, are found in these regions



**Figure 4.1:** Elsenbeer's Hypothesis on the Water Pathways in Ferrasols and Acrisols

(Struckmeier et al., 2004).

These factors include abiotic characteristics: climate, topography, parent material, and time. In many cases, the trajectory of how these characteristics influence the development of soil is via water. Water promotes weathering of minerals, and chemical and clay translocations.

### 4.2.2 Biogeochemistry of Soils

As the terrestrial reservoir of nutrients, soils play an important role in phosphorus and nitrogen cycles (Van Oost et al., 2007). When organic carbon is mineralized (i.e. released as inorganic CO<sub>2</sub> , dissolved nitrogen and phosphorous may also released (Jacinthe et al., 2002). Burial of carbon can lead to the stabilization of nitrogen as seen in the consistent Carbon-Nitrogen ratios in topsoil across a given ecosystem. Nitrogen cycling can also affect carbon cycling with biomass production (van Groenigen et al., 2006). If nitrogen is a limiting factor for biomass, then nitrogen can also be viewed as a limiting factor for carbon.

### 4.2.3 Phytomass Drives Pedogenesis

#### SE Asia's Tropical Forests and Soils

Southeast Asia lies right on the equator. The equator is home to much of Asia's tropical forests thanks to its relatively intense moisture and warmth. Anyone who visits these tropical forests will notice the cramped and dense canopy level, known for being evergreen and semi-deciduous (losing leaves for a relatively short amount of time, if at all) (Lieth and Werger, 2012). At low latitudes and with heat, the growing season in tropical forests is long and the rates of decomposition and nutrient recycling are speedy. While across all ecosystems, on average, 69% of the carbon is stored in the soil and 31% in living biomass, these accelerated processes stimulate an allocation of is about equal in parts in the tropics (Dixon et al., 1994). In this respect, deforestation in the tropics is noticeably more harmful than elsewhere.

#### Abiotic Factors: Role of Water

Water also promotes the biotic factors, i.e. organisms that live in or interact with soils. With more water, we tend to see more above ground biomass. Depending on the water content of the soils, organic carbon stored in the soil can vary to a high degree. Thus, soils provide an important mechanism to store carbon in the biosphere.

But water does much more. Chemicals and clays are transported downward or upward in the soils.

#### Weathering Processes that Shape Soil

When looking at soil formation we need to take in account the different occurrences that can affect forever changing soils. The change of soil formation are largely determined by the weathering of rock. Rock can go through three different types of weathering. [HELP, I only see three categories of weathering, what am I missing? Perhaps Biological weathering?]

Physical weathering is the when an adequate amount of stressed is applied to rock to break it. The processes that help in this process of physically breaking rock are erosion, freeze- thaw cycles, bioturbation, the presence of cracks or gaps in soils.

Chemical weathering deals with the changes in the chemical nature of rocks. This occurs with mineral structure, reactivity, surface area, and particle size. The occurrences normally happen when there is instability of primary minerals at the Earth's surface, which is driven by instability of minerals. There must be exposure to the environment for the weathering process to happen. When looking at primary minerals and secondary minerals the presence of secondary minerals that are based off primary minerals show there will be a significant amount of clay. The presence of clay shows evidence for weathering because it is proof there was a secondary elements. Chemical weather increases in warmer, humid climates, with water and oxygen. We also see biological weathering with the microbial and plant root metabolism acid ([Brady and Weil, 2007](#)).

Chemical weathering processing can happen in four ways. Oxidation is one of the chemical processes that can happen in soil that involves high oxygen supply leading to an elemental lose of electrons. Reduction is the gaining of electrons and happens in environments where oxygen is decreasing. Hydration is the presence of water molecules in the mineral structure. Hydrolysis is hydrogen ions (water) presence in breaking down silicate structures (rock.)

#### 4.2.4 Soil Horizons versus Sediments

As a result of the vertical structure of biological activity, e.g. above ground deposition of detritus from plants or root uptake or turnover, soils develop important vertical structure that can be identified visually. The soil layers are defined as distinct layers called horizons (See Box).

In a somewhat arbitrary distinction, sediments are also subject to many of these factors, but the results are quite different. In general, deposited by particles in aquatic systems, sediments are not subject to water/air interactions that create distinct horizons because they are associated with aquatic systems. Obviously, the distinction is nearly meaningless in wetland systems, but we'll address later.

#### 4.2.5 Soil Horizons

The top uppermost layer is the O horizon composed of organic matter. This top horizon can vary in abundance due to factors like erosion. We see a great distinction in O horizon in forested habitats.

The next layer the A horizon is composed of mainly minerals forming at/below soil surfaces. We can see either the presence of organic matter in this horizon as well. And if the use of tillage (cropping preparation) has been done to the soil we can see accumulated organic matter. The A horizon and O horizon can both play part each other when if heavy cultivation occurs on the soil leading to O horizon organic material to be found in the A horizon.

The E horizon, known as the eluvial horizon due to its loss of clay, iron (Fe) or aluminum (Al) is most common mineral horizon in forest soils. The loss of these dark minerals is due to leaching of nutrient via root zone due to water movement through the soil horizons. This leads to lighter mineral color like quartz, silica, or other minerals being the most abundant in E horizon. The E horizon is seen as a lighter horizon compared to the other layers present due to this reason.

The B horizon is most commonly found below the O, A horizons and either below or above the E horizon. The B horizon receives the deposited dissolved material of clay, iron and aluminum oxide, organic matter of decay plant and animal matter, carbonates, gypsum, and leached silicates from other layers. The presence of the Fe and Al oxide give the B horizon its reddish dark color than other horizons.

The C horizon is home to little soil influenced by weathering process. This leads to presence of more parent material which attribute to the the chemical and physical properties of soil. There is a clear transition in this horizon from soil to bedrock

The last horizon is the R horizon which consist of unweathered parent material, e.g. bedrock. In terms of depth into the soil where you can find R horizon it strictly depends geographic location, environmental conditions, and landscape position it can go as deep as 100 feet or a few centimeters from soil surface.

### 4.3 Classifying Soils

#### 4.3.1 Soil Definition

The definition of soil by the Natural Resource Conservation Service (NRCS) touches upon its physical definition, natural body comprised of soils (minerals and organic matter), liquid, and gases that occurs on the land surface, occupies space and is characterized by one or both of the following: horizons that are distinguishable from the initial material as a result of additions, losses, translocations, and transformation of energy and matter or the ability to support rooted plants in a natural environment ([Baillie, 2001](#)).

Other definition for soils is in environmental genetics terms is, the unconsolidated mineral or organic matter on the surface of the Earth that has been subject to and shows effects of genetic and environmental factors of: climate (including water and temperature effects), and macro- and micro organism, conditioned by relief, acting on parent material over a period of time. A product-soil differs from the material from which is derived in many physical, chemical, biological, and morphological properties and characteristics.

### 4.3.2 Geology and Soil Types

The soils of Southeast Asia, particularly of islands in the region, are known to be generally much younger than those in Africa and the Americas ([Juo and Franzluebers, 2003](#)). Much of the land rose from the oceans during the recent Cenozoic Era, which only spans the past 65 million years since the extinction of non-avian dinosaurs ([Hall, 2002](#)).

The Quaternary period, the current period in the Era, brought a regime of monsoonal weather and limestones ([Verstappen, 1997](#)), which humans have been exploiting for its initial crop productivity against acidic soils and its accessibility in low elevation ([Asio et al., 2006](#)). It is important to note that less pedological research (research on soils) has been conducted in Southeast Asia compared with geologically older regions, making the information presented here that much more relevant.

### 4.3.3 Classification Schemes

Natural system approaches to soil classification, such as the French Soil Reference System (Référentiel pédologique français) are based on presumed soil genesis. Systems have developed, such as USDA soil taxonomy and the World Reference Base for Soil Resources, which use taxonomic criteria involving soil morphology and laboratory tests to inform and refine hierarchical classes. Another approach is numerical classification, also called ordination, where soil individuals are grouped by multivariate statistical methods such as cluster analysis. This produces natural groupings without requiring any inference about soil genesis.

#### USDA versus FAO versus other Classification Schemes

Soil classification systems used by the United States of Agriculture (USDA) is the Soil Taxonomy system ([Staff, 2003](#)). The system is morphologically focused that uses quantitative and soil genesis to make soil groups ([Buol and Eswaran, 1999](#)). The classification system is hierarchical with six levels that is 1) Order, 2) Suborder, 3) Great Group, 4) Subgroup, 5) Family, and 6) Series. There are 12 soil orders in the soil systems and each have differing characteristics (Box X:XX).

#### 4.3.4 Box XX: USDA Soil Classification

Entisols are known for being the youngest formed soils in soil order. They normally include weak profile of soil layer development meaning horizon difference aren't as a differentiable. Entisols can be found in use in agricultural spaces (plow layer), steep slopes with severe erosion, and floodplains.

Inceptisols soil orders are characterized for being young and having little to no soil profile development at all. We find them mostly alongside rivers and streams due to this.

Both Entisols and Inceptisols have the potential at a later time to develop intricate soil horizons. The thing playing as a major influence in these soils is parental material unlike other soils likely influenced by climate and vegetation.

Gelisols are considered young soil orders in terms of geologic time and are found in colder climates. The condition they are found in are permafrost and cryoturbation in Canada and Alaska ([Staff, 2003](#)).

Mollisols are prairie soil mainly found in midwestern United States where they dominate landscapes. They are known to be characterized for their high organic content, dark colors, steep A horizons. The category to be met for the A horizon is that it must be 8 inches deep and must be 50% saturated. Alfisols can be found in midwestern America as well and are normally in deciduous forest habitats. Alfisols are found in humid landscapes globally and have E horizons. The base saturation for these soils must be at least 35%.

Spodosols originate from parent material that is acidic in nature and areas of loamy/sandy content. We normally see spodosols in forest vegetation like coniferous forest due to pine needles high acidity when decomposing. ([Brady and Weil, 2007](#)) We normally see the presence of a bright red horizon below a white E horizon.

While these classification of soils is effective. We must be mindful that the data was created by the United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) in the 1970s. The implications of it in a global context may not cohesively translate and the way locals in native Southeast Asian countries classify things could greatly vary. A part of understanding soil is understanding the way locals interpret the data and be able to communicate across these boundaries for a better and new outlook.

#### FOA Soil Types in SE Asia

Ferralsol, one of the 30 soil groups in the classification system of the Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO). Ferralsols are red and yellow weathered soils whose colors result from an accumulation of metal oxides, particularly iron and aluminum (from which the name of the soil group is derived). They are formed on geologically old parent materials in humid tropical climates, with rainforest vegetation growing in the natural state. In terms of soil types, Southeast Asia is an anomaly. While the Ferrasol group is the most common in the Amazon and Congo Basin, Southeast Asia is dominated by the Acrisols group ([Kyuma and Kawaguchi, 1966](#)) – the group covers 51% of Southeast Asia.

Acrisols can be found in a wide range of elevations, and they are generally confined to areas without a marked dry season. They formed on acidic to basic parent material, and in general they are relatively poor in nutrients and are susceptible to erosion. Ferrasols are also found in a wide range of elevations. They are fossil formations interacting with today's climate ranging from semi-hot equatorial to monsoon hot tropical.

A lot of information about soils, particularly in developing nations, was consolidated through a two-decade global survey conducted by the Food and Agricultural Organization of the United Nations (FAO), UNESCO, and the International Society of Soil Science ([Dudal, 2005](#)). Hence, most of the information presented here is extracted from the FAO-UNESCO Soil Map of the World Volume

**Table 4.1:** The data captures the characteristics of Acrisol subcategories, including properties relevant for agriculture. Information consolidated from the FAO-UNESCO Soil Map of the World Volume IX.

Acrisols			
Categories	Ferric	Gleyic	Humic
Tropical Forest Type	lowland evergreen rain forest	dry deciduous forest	montane rain forest — generally on non-volcanic mountain slopes
Acidity	Alkaline	Alkaline	Alkaline
Natural fertility level	Low	Low	Medium
Organic Matter Content	Low	Low	High
Water Drainage	Low	Low	High
Other Limiting Factors	iron concretions		
Agricultural Interference	requires heavy applications of phosphate, potassium and nitrogen fertilizers	requires irrigation system for continuous water input	soil management to reduce erosion
Suitable Crops	Rubber	rice	tea, upland rice, groundnuts, maize
Other Comments		dries quickly	slopes make erosion a hazard if deforested/exposed

IX on Southeast Asia. Tables 1 and 2 present data about some of the subcategories of Acrisols and Ferrasols. These subcategories are chosen with a focus on mainland southeast Asia in mind as can be seen in Figure 4.2.

**Exercise 24** Find the document from the FAO-UNESCO Soil Map of the World Volume IX on Southeast Asia and add a soil subcategory to the tables below.

## 4.4 Human Impacts on Soils

### 4.4.1 Contextualizing Soils in Southeast Asia

As mentioned, soil is fundamental to the survival of humans: from plant growth, to water purification, to decomposers in the nutrient cycles, and even to bacteria that have been used for developing antibiotics that treat human disease ([Asio et al., 2006](#)). Soil degradation caused by physical and chemical occurrences (like wind or loss of nutrients), are now widespread, putting tropical fauna and flora as well as humans who depend on agricultural productivity at risk.

The National Action Plan of the Philippines, for instance, has identified soil degradation as a major threat to soil productivity and water retention (The Updated Philippine National Action Plan to Combat Desertification, Land Degradation and Drought, 2010). Soil degradation was coined in 1888 to describe natural soil changes, but according to the Global Assessment of Soil Degradation

Ferralsols			
Categories	Humic	Rhodic	Xantic
Tropical Forest Type	natural montane evergreen rain forest - developed from volcanic deposits	evergreen rain forest - developed on ancient basalt (type of volcanic rock)	poor evergreen rain forest
Acidity	Neutral	Basic-Neutral	Neutral-Acidic
Natural fertility level	Low	Low	Low
Organic Matter Content	Med-High	Med	Low-Med
Water Drainage	High	High	High
Other Limiting Factors	often found with a layer of ironstone concretions within rooting zone		hard layer of iron concretions
Agricultural Interference	typically not used for agriculture	little phosphate and nitrogen fertilizer	typically not used for agriculture
Suitable Crops	none	rubber, coffee, fruit trees, tobacco, maize	
Other Comments	used for timber if anything	crumb top layer makes it resistant to erosion	should be reserved as natural forest

**Table 4.2:** Table 2. The data captures the characteristics of Ferrasol subcategories, including properties relevant for agriculture. Information consolidated from the FAO-UNESCO Soil Map of the World Volume IX.

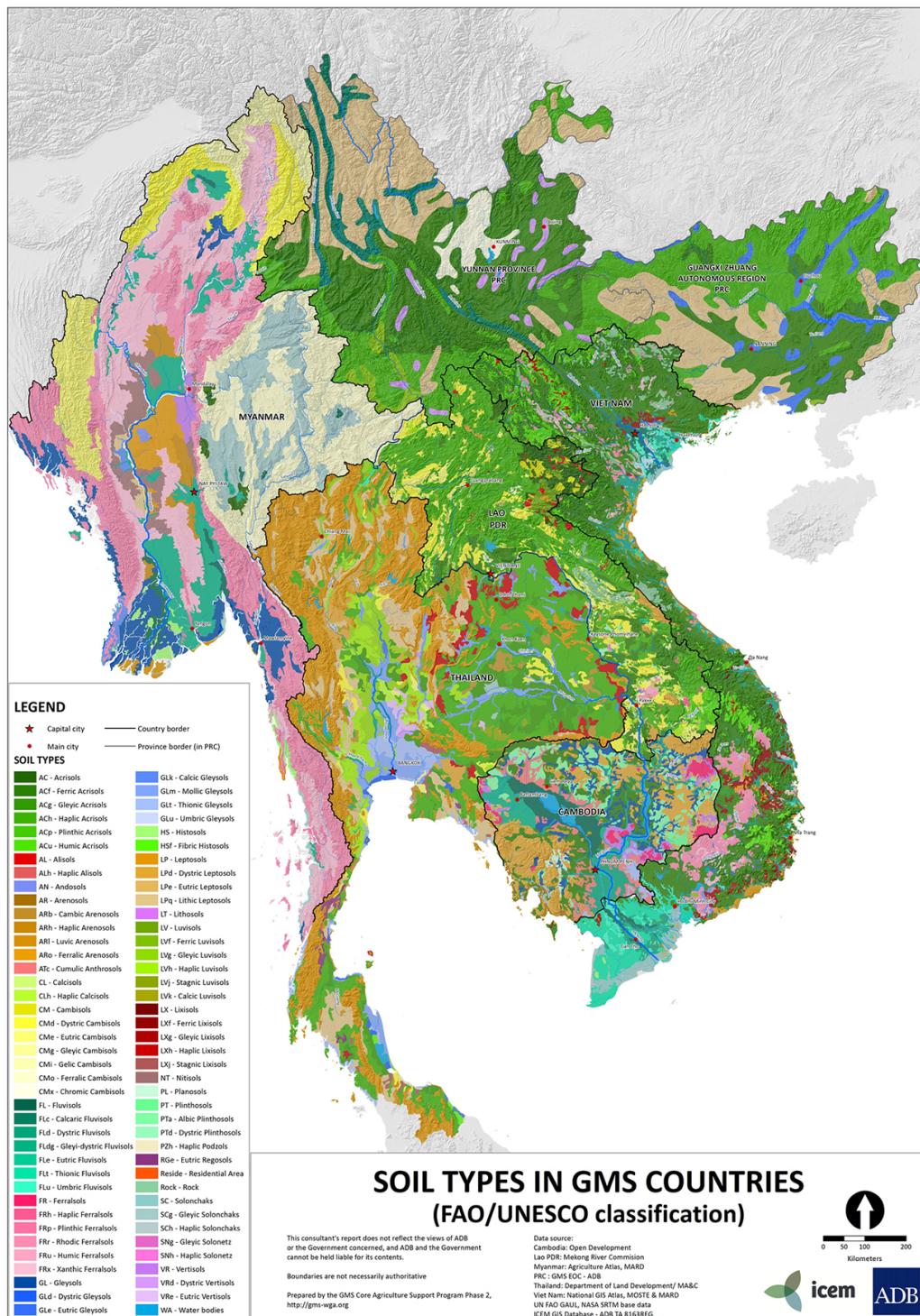


Figure 4.2: Soil Types in GMS Countries

has since come to define human-induced disruption because of the aforementioned urgent crises (UNEP, 1992). Let us dive into the scientific history of soils in Southeast Asia so that we can better illustrate the context with which are dealing.[as part of thesis: As we walk through this history, we will demonstrate the impact of water, as molded by natural and anthropogenic processes, on the soil.]

#### 4.4.2 A Resource in Peril

Tropical soils in Southeast Asia are some of the fastest deteriorating soils in the world. The deterioration is the result of anthropogenic disturbances, like the burning of vegetation, and its impact is ultimately determined by the existing development patterns-the pedogenesis- of the soil. Thus, as we determine ways to mitigate soil degradation, we must learn about both human-caused assaults and the given environmental backdrop of Southeast Asia. [Proposed thesis: In assessing these two factors, we learn that hydrology, the movement of water in relation to land, is arguably the most important force in shaping soils in Southeast Asia. The region is enveloped by both the Indian and Pacific Oceans, impacted by monsoonal seasons, and contains roaring rivers like the Mekong.]

Ever since the 1970s, the tropics overtook the temperate zones as the fastest cleared forests in the world, and since the 1990s have constituted almost all net forest clearance (Houghton, 1996). This is inextricably tied to carbon. Thanks to the aforementioned characteristics, tropical forests play a key role as a global carbon sink, meaning they can hold large stocks of carbon. In fact, they account for 37% of the world's terrestrial carbon pool. This is especially crucial in the face of rapid industrialization and carbon pollution in Southeast Asia. In the past two decades, carbon emissions in the region have risen the fastest at a rate of approximately 5% per year, and this has been accomplished with deforestation and consequent land use change (Dixon et al., 1994). In the next few sections, we will focus on building a knowledge bank on soils. We will then develop on the connections to carbon, and offer the reader new insights on Southeast Asia all along.

#### 4.4.3 Soil Erosion

##### Hydrology and Soil Erosion

Although Southeast Asia is one of the zones most vulnerable to climate change, not enough research has been conducted about its impact on soil erosion in the region. With climate change, rainfall can sporadically increase and turn more aggressive, leading to greater soil erosion (Chappell et al., 2007). There are a host of reasons that may be hypothesized: soil erosion can intensify as the canopy changes in response to variable moisture in the air and ground, as cover on the ground changes in response to variable decomposition rates, and as soil moisture changes in response to variable evapotranspiration rates (rates of evaporation from the soil to the atmosphere), and as land use changes in response to economic demands. In short, the implication of climate change exacerbate the impact of rainfall on soil erosion.

The effects of rainfall can be even worse in slopy areas. There has been special concern in watersheds shared between countries in Southeast Asia because these border zones generally require much-needed collaboration and data-sharing (Giang et al., 2017). In the aforementioned paper, Giang and colleagues assessed the interaction between rainfall and soil erosion in the Laos-Vietnam transnational Upper Ca River Watershed (UCRW). The UCRW is an important site for agricultural cultivation, and its hilly topography makes it especially sensitive to acute rainfall. Evidently, there is an economic incentive to implement conservation practices in the region. The study found that spatial and temporal factors should be considered. First it was observed that much of the hill-slope erosion is found in the upstream and middle stream areas. Understandably, it was also found that

sediment transport would occur mostly in the wet season when it is warmer and wetter. Therefore, to protect residents and cultivation, special attention should be paid in the months between August and October.

To slow soil erosion, both institutional and individual measures should be applied. At the administrative levels, it should be understood that ground cover other than farming and normal anthropogenic use is necessary. Rehabilitation of the land is possible with reforestation, afforestation (foresting land at which tree cover has been absent for longer), terrace farming (farming on sloped planes with a series of flat planes), as well as check dams. At the domestic level, and just as importantly for the less hilly areas (such as downstream of the UCRW), farmers can learn and practice crop rotation, cover cropping, and mulching.

### Agriculture and the Soil Erosion

As we have seen, agricultural soils can significantly alter the landscape. This can also be recognized in its impact on biodiversity. Southeast Asia is well-known for being a biodiversity hotspot, with many endemic species that rely on an established and robust food web system ([Tripathi et al., 2012](#)). We will use a study from Malaysia on the soil bacterial community, organisms which are much less researched and appreciated by the general public, as our kickstarter.

Research on microbial communities around the world has been concerned with comparing their activities in forests versus agricultural lands. We ask: How do the two environments structure the accompanying bacterial communities? What are the specific environmental factors that may explain these observable differences?

The Malaysia-based study found that, in general, the bacterial community composition was most influenced by the acidity of the soil, followed by total carbon and Carbon/Nitrogen ratio. It seems that pH level is the best predictor of bacterial diversity across all tested land types, including primary forest, logged forest, and crop and pasture land. All bacterial taxa tested showed that diversity peaked at neutral pH.

This explains why agricultural land hosted the most diversity. Farmers lime their land to offset the acidity, and they choose soils that have greater pH due to their greater crop productivity. This means that bacteria, which have intracellular neutral pH, are better suited for the agricultural soils. This is still somewhat surprising because it conflicts with the notion that some taxa are specialized to root zones of particular plants, meaning we would assume that greater plant diversity would accommodate these specializations. This may be a plausible hypothesis: bacteria that may have evolved to have traits which allow them to thrive in low or high pH are more likely to lose these specializations in the new anthropogenically-affected environment than they are to regain these adaptations to extreme conditions. We of course know that larger organisms are marginalized when forests are cleared, so instead of celebrating the more diverse bacterial community, we should interpret the ecosystem as introducing an imbalance in the food web system.

#### 4.4.4 Soil Erosion and Carbon Cycle

As a result of agricultural erosion, large amounts of SOC and sediments are transported laterally over the Earth. There are about three steps in soil erosion: mobilization, transportation, and deposition ([Quinton et al., 2010](#)). Eroded land exposes subsurface soil which eventually can be transported to cover what is known as topsoil. This is why research that is exclusively performed on the topsoil can bring up questionable interpretations.

Quantifying these aforementioned fluxes is not difficult, but climate change and land use are also dynamic processes, so relying on today's calculations may not help us predict future disturbances

(Heimann and Reichstein, 2008).

From a meta-analysis conducted on tropical landuse change, we find that conversion to cropland, specifically perennial crops, reduces SOC most, by about 25% to 30% (Don et al., 2011). Conversion to grassland is at 12% and secondary forest is 9%. If cropland is afforested, on average, it can gain 29% in SOC. Hence, agricultural cultivation can alter carbon cycling. Still, modeling such a large system can be difficult.

Interestingly, erosion over land which results in mineralization, a process by which nutrients are rendered accessible to plants, tends to be relatively unimportant because carbon inventory does not correlate well with mineralization—even though SOC transported to rivers tends to result in substantial mineralization (Cole et al., 2007).

Also, it should be noted that erosion can actually lead to both release and sequestration of carbon. When soil is disturbed, it may immediately release carbon (Berhe et al., 2007). Sometimes, erosion means that the subsoil mixes as the new topsoil, and if it binds organic matter then we may observe intake (Harden et al., 1999). The latter depends on lower rates of SOC decomposition.

#### 4.4.5 Swidden and Fallow Cultivation practices

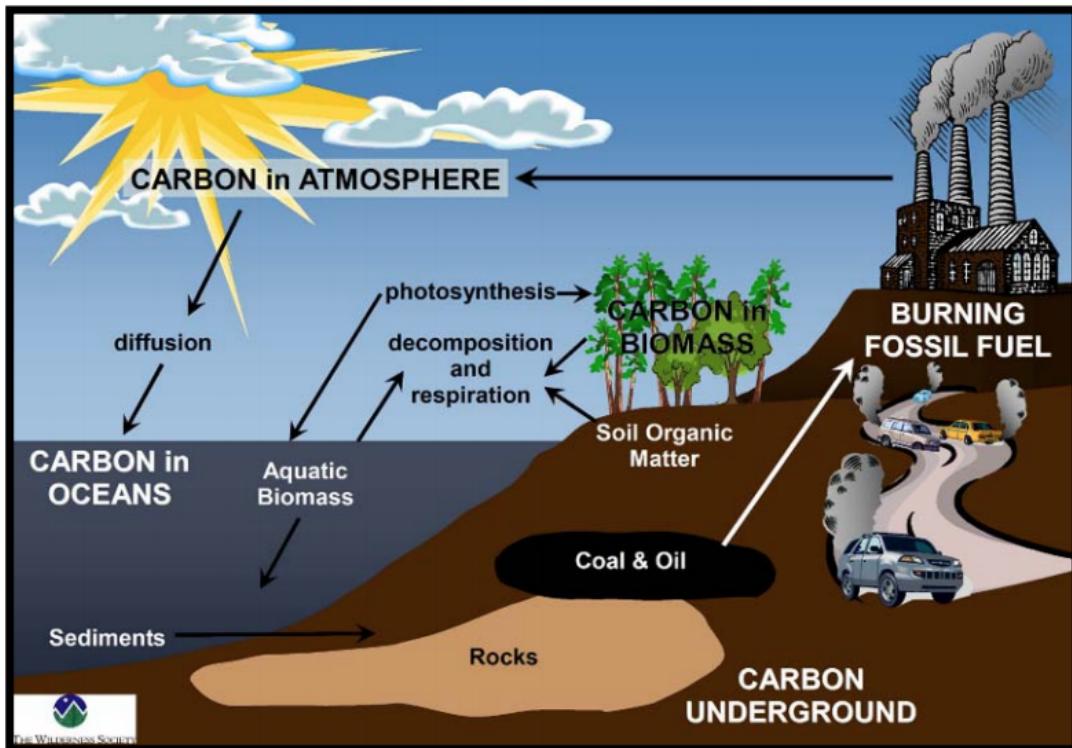
Swiddening, the slashing and burning of forest is an age old practice widespread in Southeast Asian countries for agricultural production. The practice is linked to many rising environmental issues in the region. The transformation that swiddening those to the land through deforestation and decomposition effects are not fully understood and need to be further researched. Going hand in hand with Swiddening is fallowing, leaving the land plowed and exposed unseeded for a few growing seasons, is steadily decreasing. The decrease in fallowing systems is leading to the system being replaced by perennial crops like rubber, fruit trees, oil palm, and timber (Schmidt-Vogt et al., 2009). Swiddening cultivation is a effective natural resource management that requires field rotation not crop rotation relying on the fallowing to sustain the crop production. Swiddening is found in sloping upland of the systems known for being environmentally destructive contributing to erosion, negative nutrient balances and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions (de Neergaard et al., 2008). Swiddening cultivation has also been seen beneficial in other studies towards providing hydrology, biodiversity, and carbon storage in soil and vegetation powell20153. The transformation consequence of swidden cultivation on carbon emission is its contribution to 20% of global human carbon emissions (Meehl et al., 2007).

Carbon emission begin to rise when the change of pool SOC in aboveground biomass due to land charge. The tropical lowland forest have some of the highest aboveground carbon stocks of any vegetation in the world. In Southeast Asia carbon stocks in forest have a range of 254 to 647 Mg C ha<sup>-1</sup>. SOC serves as nutrient pool, cation exchange pool and buffer against acidity and aluminium toxicity (Silver et al., 2000).

#### 4.4.6 Soils and Carbon Budget

Anthropogenic interference in the carbon cycle, for which you may find review in Figure 4.3), has mostly come in the form of fossil fuel exploitation and land use change. When undisturbed land converts to agricultural land, we observe reduced carbon inputs into the soil and accelerated decomposition of soil organic carbon (SOC) (Van Oost et al., 2007). SOC is removed by erosion and deposited in environments that become to be known as depositional areas. Carbon flux between the soil and the atmosphere can occur through three different mechanisms:

1. Replacement of SOC from plant input atat sites experiencing erosion and decline in SOC for decomposition

**Figure 1: The global carbon cycle****Figure 4.3: The Carbon Cycle**

2. Deep burial of carbon and thereafter hindered decomposition
3. Rise in the decomposition of SOC when the soil breaks down as it detaches or transports

#### 4.4.7 Carbon Emissions from Soils

#### 4.4.8 Mapping of Emissions through Southeast Asia

- Work for a later date -

#### Agriculture and Carbon Storage

A major contributor to the shift in carbon storage influxes in Southeast Asia continues to be the need for more agricultural land to provide to the growing population and economic growth. The countries in these region will suffer the worst soil degradation because of their tropical aspect ([Scherr, 1999](#)). The agricultural systems of Southeast Asia is one of the major causes of carbon fluxes imbalances. The most intensive agricultural system Southeast Asia is the lowland rice farming systems that cover 197 million hectares of land ([Dixon et al., 2001](#)). The rice systems are heavily irrigated systems that produce two to three times a year ([Cassman and Pingali, 1995](#)). The lowland rice paddies depend on N fertilizer for yield. The subsidiary corps from these systems can be seen to be oilseeds, maize, root crops, soybeans, sugarcane, cotton, vegetables and fruits in all areas.

##### *Carbon in Mangroves*

As mentioned earlier, Southeast Asia has some of the greatest potential to serve as a carbon sink in an industrializing world. This can be seen in one of the most prominent features of the region, mangrove forests. Mangrove forests grow in tropical and sub-tropical zones, residing at the intersections of freshwater, lands, and the ocean, usually found in brackish aquatic habitats ([Bravo et al., 2017](#)). Considering their distribution across Southeast Asia, which constitutes a third of global presence, mangroves have ecological and economic value that should not be underestimated. For example, they are exploited for fish and shrimp farming by indigenous communities in Vietnam as well as plain timber usage. Their immense biomass alone should kickstart a discussion on their carbon sequestration capabilities.

Mangroves can play a critical role in mitigating nutrient runoff to coastal regions, which is how they are usually framed in climate change discourse. We need to add their contribution to the carbon cycle in this context. The carbon cycle is present in terrestrial and oceanic spaces and in the transition between the two. Marine sediments and organic carbon found in mangroves can speak to the carbon sequestration potential of the ecosystem.

When mangroves shed dead material, this organic material does not thoroughly decompose, but instead the carbon can be converted to fossil fuel (compression of raw humus and creation of peat). Methane emissions from mangroves is of primary concern. It has been found that salinity and sulphate inhibit methane production by engaging sulphate-reducing bacteria which compete with methanogens. It has also been discovered that temperatures between 25 degrees celsius and 30 degrees celsius are optimal for methane emissions from the subsurface to the atmosphere.

Moving forward, land use changes must be rethought and redeveloped. Mangroves experience their harshest degradation from direct human activity. To maintain their capabilities and capacities in nutrient cycling, reforestation and sustainable management policies must go into effect. First, though, it is also important for scientists to capture data on carbon storage in mangroves more accurately.

#### 4.4.9 Box X.XX Borneo's Biomass

Let us dive into another case study in Borneo's forests, which are shared between two Southeast Asian nations, Indonesia and Malaysia. Borneo's forests are some of the most expansive in the region and are dominated by a single tree family known as Diptero-carpaceae (Qie et al., 2017). Unlike the Amazon and Congo Basin, Borneo's carbon-dense trees have not been treated with robust research on long-term biomass balance. Thus, it has been somewhat unclear in what ways Borneo's forests act as carbon sinks and sources. What is known is that Borneo's forests are also one of the most fragmented in the world. This introduces edge effects which hinder biomass accumulation – some studies have shown that the negative effects are even visible 400m deep from the edges. Another severe limiting factor for these forests in their ability to serve as sinks is extreme drought events, driven by El Nino for instance. As with rainfall, droughts are becoming more intense and frequent. The problem we face is that there has not been sufficient formal research conducted on the stress climate change causes, and this unequivocally raises the urgency to focus on Borneo. And, at first, the possibilities seem endless: could it be that CO<sub>2</sub> inflates the biomass of trees? Or could it be that droughts are killing trees? Does net carbon source reduce because of edge effects from fragmentation? These questions are globalized, but nuances appear in different regions. Even if all are true, how do they compete in determine the ultimate reduction or rise in carbon sequestration?

This particular study found that extreme drought events probably do not reverse long-term biomass accumulation because they are too short. The researchers estimated that a forest, on average, must maintain about 302 hectares to remain a carbon sink, depending on its shape and how penetrative edge effects are. Edges can decrease above-ground productivity and lead to biomass mortality. It seems that if edges are managed with healthy buffer zones, forests of almost any size can sustain themselves as carbon sinks because biomass along boundaries can survive. Still, large forest reserves are needed for preserving biodiversity.

## 4.5 Summary

[To fit with thesis: When it comes to pedogenesis and carbon, Southeast Asia is a unique, relevant, and intriguing region. While there are many subtopics within these fields, it seems like the interaction with water is one of the most important. As other chapters discuss sea level rise, dive deeper into mangroves, peatlands, and geologic hazards, we find that water interfaces is a recurring theme. Even before major anthropogenic expansion and interference in the soil, rainfall, rivers, and the formation of islands demonstrated the power of hydrology to transport and bury soils. As Southeast Asia capitalizes on farming, water continues to play a critical role. In this way we can observe that hydrology places man and nature in one scope, going against a prevailing grain that humans are separated from nature.]



# Chapter 5

## Peatlands

REBECCA CHUNG AND CHRISTINE CHAN<sup>1</sup>

### 5.1 Introduction

#### 5.1.1 Peatlands

Peatland are wetlands that are dominated by peat forming plants that originate from biological processes. Peatland make up 3% of the earth and are mostly found in East Asia, Southeast Asia, the Caribbean and Central America, South America and southern Africa ([Strack, 2008](#)). Peatland globally have a significant role in storage of soil carbon.

Forest tropical peatlands in Southeast Asia store 42,000 million metric tonnes (Mt) of soil carbon. The stability of this pool is at risk due to the recent decades of deforestation, drainage, and fire.

Peatland are vital when it comes to biological process because of the immense amount of carbon storage you can find in the systems, carbon dioxide sink, and atmospheric methane point. Peatland contribute small portion to the emission of CH<sub>4</sub> and N<sub>2</sub>O but the sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub> are far greater ([Strack, 2008](#)). The Greenhouse gases properties of peatland is a shifting role that depends on the peatlands ecology, hydrology, climate, and climate change. The CO<sub>2</sub> emission at times can be so great that the peatland can change from a sink to a source at times. Changing vegetation can contribute to shifts in carbon sequestration due to elevated water and production.

The major actors to disturbing Peatlands natural processes are agriculture, forestry, peat fuel extraction, and horticulture. Indonesia 3.7 million hectares of peatland are drained and being used for agriculture. This dramatically decrease C fixation capacity and threatened greenhouse gas emissions

Peatland can serve a very powerful asset to assuring carbon sequestration and mitigate emissions in the region.

Three components have been found to contribute in the change of carbon flux between soil and atmosphere

Southeast Asia is home to most of the world's tropical peat. In these humid conditions, peat is created and conserved in the ecosystems because peat relies on a consistent source of water year-round through rainfull or humidity. Peat, the accumulation of partly decomposed vegetable matter, makes up a peatland, which is characterized as a type of wetland with peat soil and a wetland habitat.

---

<sup>1</sup>Statement of Contributions:

Palm oil, an edible vegetable oil from the fruit of an oil palm plant, grows well year-round in the climate of Southeast Asia and on the region's peatlands. An intensified global demand for palm oil can be very harmful to public health and the climate (Xie, 2013). International corporations rely on palm oil for the creation of different cosmetics and processed foods. These corporations therefore place enormous pressure on local farmers to transition from subsistence mixed farming to growing exclusively palm oil. To create space for palm oil plantations, local farmers in Southeast Asia use an agricultural method called slash-and-burn, in which they burn the peatlands for large-scale palm oil plantations. Because these fires are unregulated and difficult to control, air pollution in the region has intensified. Many of the inhabitants in Southeast Asia are familiar with what is called the Southeast Asia Haze. The quality of air in Southeast Asia has deteriorated severely recently. Coinciding with a fall in air and water quality in the region is an exponential growth in demand for palm oil.



**Figure 5.1:** NPR captured a picture of the farmer Arif Subandi and the burnt peatlands near his home.

Beyond simply deforestation, the problem of using the slash-and-burn method on peatlands specifically is that the nature of peat makes it incredibly difficult to put out the prescribed fires. As a result, the fires burn for much longer and create much more smoke than if they were prescribed on different types of forest lands. These fires can quickly grow out of control and spread into protected forests. Fires on peatlands can then create environmental and health hazards for the local communities as well as have lasting impacts on global climate because of the magnitude of the carbon emissions. In this chapter, we will investigate the anthropogenic impacts on the environment

and global climate within the context of peatlands in Southeast Asia.

NPR covered the story of a farmer on one of Indonesia's major islands who illustrates the ecological importance and fragility of peatlands. Arif Subandi who lives in Borneo lost his family's farmland to fires on peatlands that were caused by local companies trying to use the land to create palm oil plantations (figure 5.1). In the past, a lack of legal enforcement of bans on peatland fires and deforestation in protected areas has forced out indigenous people who live and rely on peatland ecosystems to survive. The creation of palm oil plantations for global supply chains threaten the livelihoods of farmers like Arif Subandi. Arif faces physical threats from different corporations, whether motorcycle corporations or palm oil corporations, to move off the land despite having cultivated it for many generations.

In Indonesia, specifically, the lived experiences of people who live near peatlands illustrate how damaging certain agricultural techniques can be to the livelihoods of rural people and the natural environment. Because Indonesia produces much of the world's palm oil, it can be a useful case study in understanding peatlands and anthropogenic impacts to peatlands in the twenty-first century.

## 5.2 What is peat?

Peat is an organic fuel consisting of partially or completely decomposed organic matter. The organic matter is primarily different kinds of plants and is composed when this organic material has accumulated in a water-saturated environment. The plants that form peatlands tend to be more resistant to decay than ordinary plant litter and one example of a plant that commonly forms peatlands is the Sphagnum species ([Holden, 2005](#)). Sphagnum is a genus of about 380 species of mosses that are called peat mosses. Both living and dead Sphagnum mosses can hold enormous masses of water. Because these plants are more resistant to decay than plants in other ecosystems, the immersion of water combined with this slow rate of decay allows the accumulation of carbon. The ecosystem dynamics in the peatlands are complex. In warm climates, like Southeast Asia, the plant material can decompose more quickly.

[Bridgman et al. \(2008\)](#) puts the amount of carbon in perspective by saying that the global peatland soil-carbon pool is 75 times larger than annual anthropogenic carbon dioxide emissions. With this comparison, it becomes very clear that the need to keep carbon sequestered in the peatlands is extremely important in preventing the release of excess greenhouse gas emissions that could further exacerbate global warming. A peatland's carbon balance can change within the span of a few years. The transition of a peatland from a carbon sink, an ecological reservoir that can absorb and store carbon dioxide from the atmosphere, to a carbon source, which is one that now releases more carbon than it stores.

Some examples of peatlands across the globe include swamps, muskegs, bogs, fens and moors. In the United States, for example, the swamps and marshes in Florida are examples of peatlands. In Southeast Asia, the more common forms of peatlands are lowland tropical peatlands which are naturally vegetated with a mosaic of specialized closed canopy forests, which refers to a dense growth of trees in which the top branches and leaves form a canopy that light can penetrate very little of to reach the forest floor, linked to local hydrological and nutritional conditions ([Chokkalingam et al., 2005](#)).

See [Dennis et al. \(2005\)](#)?

In the wet season, peatlands are flooded by nearby lakes and rivers to depths of up to 3 meters. In the dry season, peatlands can dry out and their water levels drop greatly ([Chokkalingam et al., 2005](#)). Differences in the water supply create differences in what the peatland's soil chemistry, nutrient availability, carbon quality, and the appearance of the plant community composition Regardless of

the type of hydrology in a specific peatland, peatlands can best be categorized as soil-carbon pools.

### 5.3 How is peat formed?

Peat decompositions are mostly carried out by microrganisms that use soil organic compounds as energy substrates, and are found across northern North America, northern Europe, western Siberia, Indonesia, and Southeast Asia ([Rezanezhad et al., 2016](#)).

Conditions of near permanent waterlogging, that is, the absence of oxygen in soil, favors accumulation of partially decayed organic matter. This creates long-term ecosystem carbon storage, also known as carbon sinks. In the modern day, these processes are heavily damaged by human activity, such as monoculture farms and logging, and changes in land use, especially in Southeast Asia ([Page and Hooijer, 2016](#)).

#### 5.3.1 Characteristics of peat

Different peatlands will exhibit vertical movement, either daily or seasonal, based on the water availability at the time, as peat is highly compressible. Peatlands generally swell and shrink when there are changes in water storage, hydraulics, biogeochemistry, and thermal properties.

Here are some quick facts about peat:

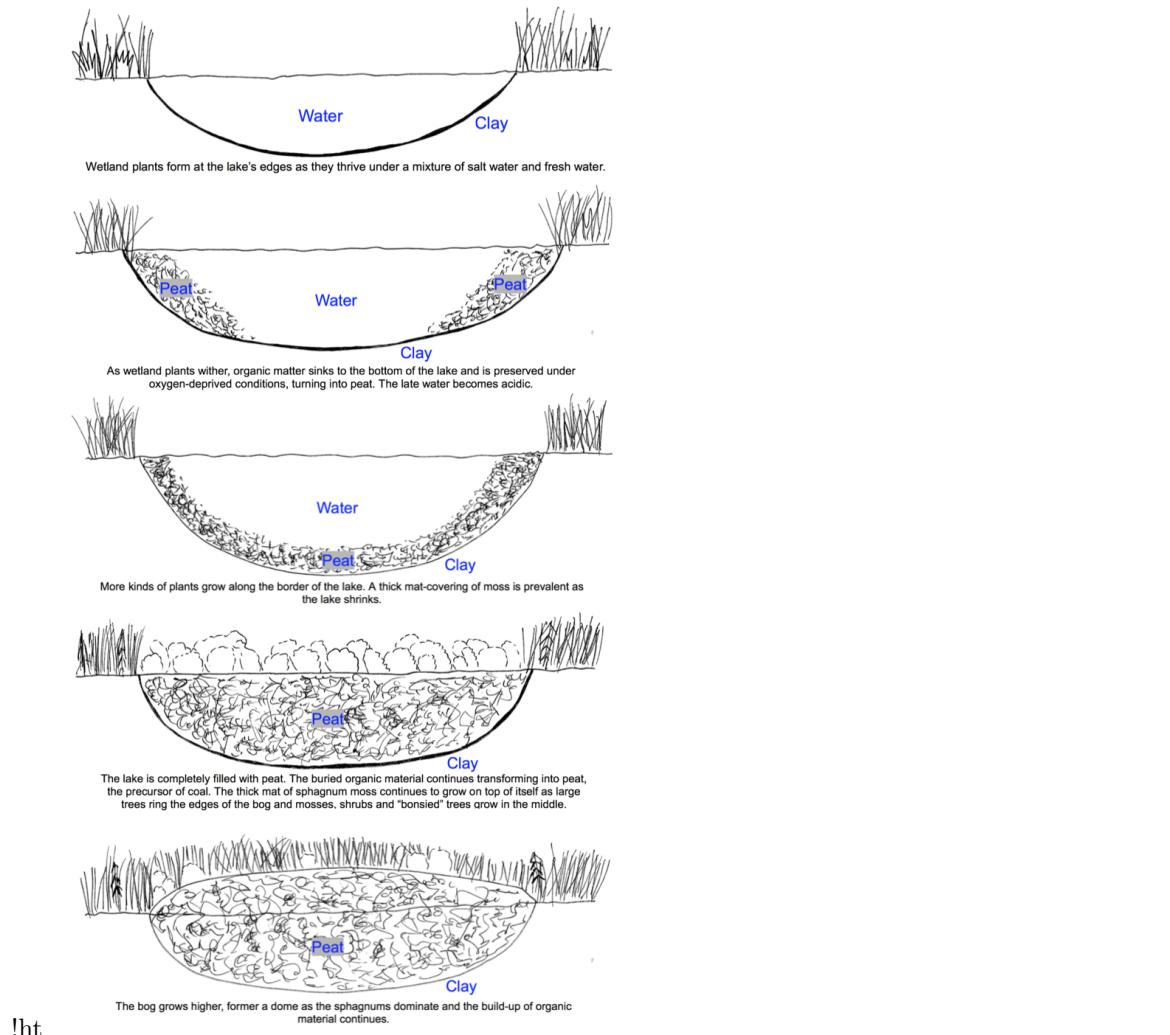
1. Peat's total porosity exceeds 80 percent! It is also dual-porosity in nature, which increases water flow and solute migration.
2. It is made up of 90 percent of water.
3. In its natural state, peat has a high degree of resistance towards fires, mainly due to a ground-water table within close proximity to the forest floor. However, rising temperatures and decrease in moisture content may reduce its effectiveness.
4. Compressibility of peat is controlled by its physical properties, including porosity and decomposition.

#### 5.3.2 What is carbon storage?

Tropical peatlands contain up to 90 gigatons of carbon. Most of the carbon that is stored in the peatlands is organic carbon from decomposed plants or plants that are still alive. A small amount of the carbon stored is in an inorganic form, such as in the form of calcium carbonate. Southeast Asia alone has a stock of approximately 69 gigatons ([Page and Hooijer, 2016](#)).

Peatlands are a carbon sink. They help regulate global temperatures. Over time, peatlands – under the right conditions, unencumbered by human activity, can also decrease the amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere. Another reason why peatlands are so efficient at creating long-term carbon stores is because heterotrophic respiration, which is a very common form of carbon loss, is largely reduced by anoxic conditions brought by high water levels ([Hirano et al., 2009](#)). Peatland development is dependent on a variety of factors coming together at the right time.

Due to increasing climate change in the past decades, soil moisture and soil temperatures on peatlands are subject to vast change. Rising temperatures and lowered water tables cause current peatlands, which are originally carbon dioxide sinks, to become net sources of carbon instead.

**Figure 5.2:** How is peat formed?

### 5.3.3 Soil Moisture

Soil moisture, which is evaluated by the soil water table, is a significant factor that shapes the composition of peatlands among the soil-air interface. For instance, methane fluxes and carbon dioxide production is affected by both the water table position and the gravimetric moisture content.

Soil moisture is mainly affected by two factors: water-holding capacity and the ability to impede upon evaporation. Water holding capacity is largely affected by the humus layer, as during dry periods, it absorbs a large amount of water, causing minimal moisture to be able to reach the tree roots. This entails a high water holding capacity and a high ability to impede upon evaporation. Thus, as burning diminishes the humus layer, charred humus has a much lower water-holding capacity as well as a lower ability to impede upon evaporation as compared to unburned humus. Higher temperatures commonly found at a burning site also lead to increased evaporation ([Kozlowski, 2012](#)).

On coarse soils, which have smaller surface areas, poor water-holding capacities lead to higher evaporation rates and a lack of water penetration. This in turn hinders growth. On finer soils, on the other hand, larger surface areas lead to higher evaporation rates and lack of water penetration. These come together to facilitate growth, particularly over the course of rainy summers.

### 5.3.4 Soil Temperature

Likewise, soil temperatures are also significant among the soil-air interface on peatlands. In June 1984, scientists from the University of Minnesota examined the rates of production of methane on Minnesota peat. In their study, they found that increased soil temperatures were associated with a rise in carbon dioxide and methane production on peatlands. This holds true except for data taken from the two deepest sampling points, where an increase in temperature did not induce an increase in methane production.(figure 5.3) ([Williams and Crawford, 1984](#)).

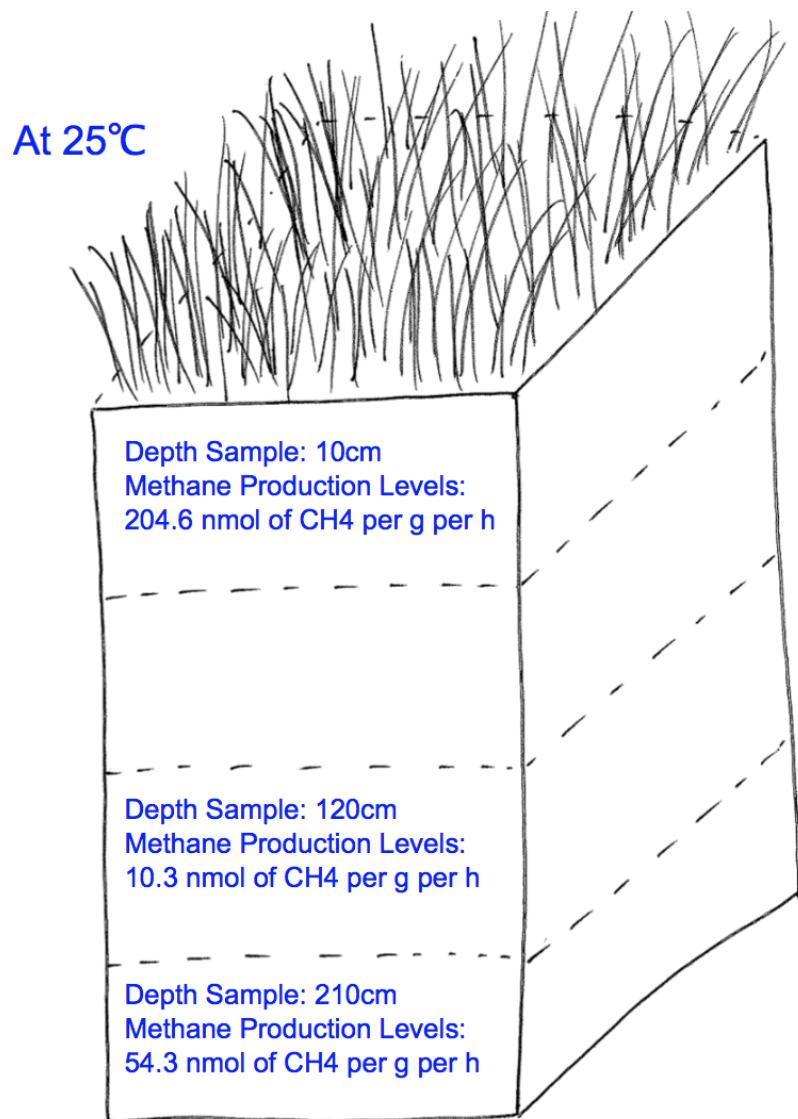
Soil temperature is dependent on two distinct factors –air temperature and artificial human input, such as as prescribed burning. An increase in soil temperature, which increases carbon dioxide levels in peat, has the effect of increasing the fertility of a site ([Kozlowski, 2012](#)).

In terms of heat retention, dry humus layers are better at insulation than moist humus layers. The humus layers of artificially burned sites are also more efficient at solar radiation absorbtion, as they are warmer during growth periods as compared to unburned sites ([Kozlowski, 2012](#)).

## 5.4 What are the human impacts on peatlands?

Thus commercialization of peatlands in Southeast Asia has become commonplace with the rise of powerful multinational agribusinesses. Peatlands, as will be discussed in this section, are vulnerable to human-induced fires, climate change, commercialized land use, and more ([Turetsky et al., 2015](#)).

Human impact has led to a multiplicity of current risks in and on peatlands. Firstly, peatlands have become increasingly vulnerable to human-caused burning, especially in tropical regions, as a result of plantation development, agriculture, and logging. Additionally, the rise in human activity has led to an increase in both unintentional and intentional fires, which has made tropical peat prone to excessive burning. This has, in turn, diminished carbon stock. In peatlands of comparatively low latitude, many fire-resistant areas have also become fire prone ([Turetsky et al., 2015](#)). The peatlands of low latitude are more likely to have moist microclimates and low-flammability soils. When a peatland is disturbed, however, there is more build-up of dry, flammable fuels and lower humidity because of a reduced tree canopy.



**Figure 5.3:** Effect of temperature on methane production from Cedar Creek peat samples, as published by Richard T. Williams and Ronald L. Crawford in 1984

More significantly, however, rising global temperatures and drainage systems as a result of human activity has led to increasing rates of mineralization. In particular, change in vegetation cover and the use of fertilizers has caused peat to oxidize in the upper peat profile, resulting in increased flux of dissolved organic carbon coupled with elevated levels of greenhouse gas emissions. This means that peatlands, which are originally a long term carbon sink, may actually become carbon emitters that temporarily benefit the economy at the long term detriment of the environment ([Turetsky et al., 2015](#)). Increasing greenhouse emission may lead to further rise in global temperatures, further increasing rates of mineralization, constituting a downward vicious spiral.

Unfortunately, in addition to many current risks, Peatlands around the world are also vulnerable to many future risks. Not only are health risks imminent, as a result of respiratory disease and human mortality that is associated with diminished air quality, the thawing of permafrost peatlands may also cause climate change to accelerate. Peat erosion (figure 16.2) in upland temperature peatlands and a decrease in biodiversity may also result ([Turetsky et al., 2015](#)).

### 5.4.1 Climate change

Anthropogenic climate change can be observed in the regional climate patterns of southeast Asia from the rise of global emissions of carbon dioxide. Climate change can impact seasonal precipitation patterns and there is the potential for peatlands to release stored carbon with the lowering of the water table. This would then create a positive feedback to anthropogenic increases in greenhouse gas emissions but came from drainage affects tree growth.

As more carbon is released into the atmosphere, the greenhouse effect intensifies. In Southeast Asia, the greenhouse effect and anthropogenic climate change further impacts regional temperature averages. The relationship between the water table and climate change is complex but in peatlands, the plant species suffer from reduced precipitation, one of many impacts of climate change. According to [Ahmad et al. \(2009\)](#), "elevated carbon dioxide is expected to decrease stomatal conductance in most species, resulting in less transpiration per unit leaf area."

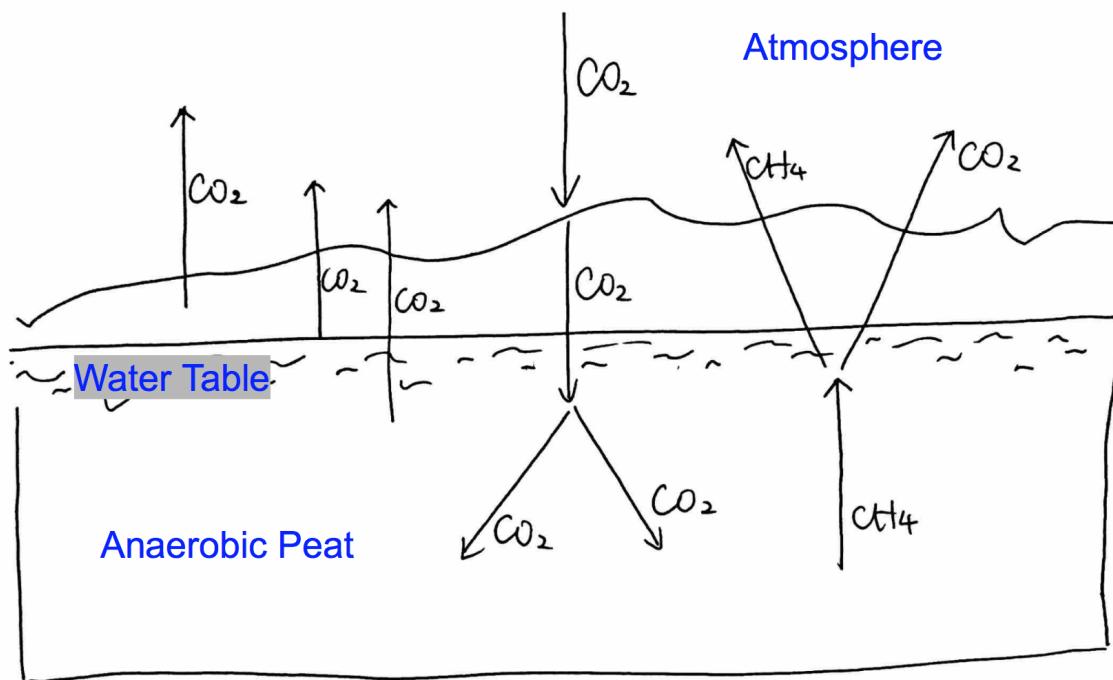
In response to rising temperatures, peatlands in the boreal region which are underlain by permafrost are highly unpredictable. In an analysis of peat cores in Canada, the underlying permafrost caused the surface to collapse nearly to the level of the water table ([Dise, 2009](#)). This has profound impacts on the ability of the permafrost to naturally restore itself.

[Holden \(2005\)](#) estimated "over the past 10,000 years the atmospheric carbon stored in peats has served to reduce global temperatures by about 1.5-2 degrees Celcius." 10,000 years on a planetary timescale is a minuscule amount of time. The past hundred years is an even smaller amount of time. Yet, human activity has reversed 10,000 years of carbon sequestration in a few decades. The transformation of peatlands from carbon stores to carbon sources has played a huge role in amplifying anthropogenic climate change.

Climate change directly impacts plant productivity and the rate of decomposition of organic matter, which is a crucial part of the creation and sustenance of peatlands. Climate change impacts plant productivity in Southeast Asia, which already has warm temperatures, by causing reduced yields and biodiversity. It also impacts the ability of farmers to plan day-to-day operations because the predictability of weather has gone down. Climate change also has indirect effects on peatlands, including changes in hydrology, water balance, and vegetation composition ([Bonn et al., 2016](#)).

### 5.4.2 Mineralization

The greenhouse gas budget of a peatland includes the direct release of carbon dioxide and methane as well as the mineralization of fluvial carbon from dissolved organic carbon and nitrous oxide.



**Figure 5.4:** The vertical interface between peat and the atmosphere: carbon dioxide goes in both directions.

Fluvial carbon refers to carbon that is found in rivers. Fluvial carbon has an important role in peatlands in Southeast Asia because the geography of the peatlands is mostly at low altitudes and extend large distances along and between rivers. There are also non-carbon greenhouse gases in the greenhouse gas budget of a peatland that can have varying effects on rising global temperatures, such as nitrous oxide and methane. Carbon, however, is the most common greenhouse gas produced by human activities and the most relevant to peatlands in the region.

#### 5.4.3 Fires

A large majority of fires in the present day are caused by farmers who want to clear the land and by private corporations that want to create oil palm and pulp wood plantations. Peatlands are particularly vulnerable to fire damage when the forests are cleared and the water table is low after drainage. As a result, fires in peatlands transition from flaming combustion to smouldering combustion. The surface fire burns the vegetation and the smouldering fire burns under the ground, consuming the peat (Page and Hooijer, 2016). The smouldering fires burn for very long periods of time and can reignite, even after a short rainy period, depending on changing soil moisture and different levels of peat depth. Below the ground, the low temperature process is under conditions of reduced oxygen availability. This leads to incomplete combustion and intense emissions of direct carbon dioxide and methane as well as the release of toxic compounds like benzene and hydrogen cyanide.

The number of large-scale fires on peatlands in Southeast Asia has increased greatly over the

past couple of decades. Once these peatlands are burned and altered, there is a feedback loop of intensive commercial use, more fires, and the transformation of peatlands into remote swamps. Peatlands that have already been burned once and are either recovering or were only partially burned are then vulnerable to recurrent burning. This repeated burning turns these peatlands into open floodplains with the loss of peat and tree cover. These peatlands are vulnerable to further human activity because the long-term impacts of the fires on health and water quality are difficult to perceive for local communities (Chokkalingam et al., 2005). The international corporations that contribute to the burning have little incentive to consider the impact on local communities in their commercial process and are not subject to strict regulations that could potentially preserve parts of the peatland or improve ecological health in the region. Because developing economies rely on the profits of billion dollar companies and are much more difficult to regulate, the governments of developing nations struggle to rein in the ecological damage caused by large corporations.

Fire is a tool on industrial plantations because it is much cheaper and quicker to prepare the land this way than by using mechanical technology. Farmers and corporations have little incentive from the state to change methods that are convenient to methods that are better for the environment. In the poor Indonesia Province of Nusa Tenggara Timur (NTT), because fire was an integral part of traditional agricultural practices and because of lack of development in the province, local people have little to zero understanding of modern burning practices and more sustainable fire management problems (Russell-Smith et al., 2007). Problems caused by uncontrolled prescribed burns have deep roots in socioeconomic and cultural differences between developed and undeveloped areas in Southeast Asia. The complexity of these issues and addressing burning practices in a region like Nusa Tenggara Timur, therefore, will require an interdisciplinary approach bringing environmental science, forestry, and anthropology together.

#### 5.4.4 Land Conversion

Peatlands are drained to create space for plantations. The drainage happens on land often without regard for the rights of indigenous people who live and rely on the land for survival. The drainage combined with a change in vegetation cover and an intense use of fertilizers leads to peat oxidation in the upper peat profile and increased flux of dissolved organic carbon and increased emissions other greenhouse gases like N<sub>2</sub>O (Larmola et al., 2013). There are high rates of mineralization, which is the decomposition of chemical compounds in organic matter. Thus, this carbon sink which is built over hundreds of years creates intense short-term carbon emissions.

Drainage of peatland leads to a large loss of the peat profile and the carbon because aerobic decomposition occurs (Page et al., 2009). Peatland drainage leads to peat oxidation and subsidence, which cause the peatland surface to drop to levels that enable the water table to reach and rise above the new surface quicker with high rainfall. This can cause major flooding and expose underlying mineral substrates.

The global demand for palm oil, which is used in many products, has led to the draining and deforestation of peatland (Figure 5.6). The story of Arif Subandi, who was forced off his land to make space for oil palm plantations, in the introduction is not uncommon in the region. Palm oil is colloquially referred to as “green gold” because Malaysia and Indonesia are the world’s largest producers of the agro-industrial commodity (Othman, 2003). Beyond the impacts that draining and deforestation have on peatlands, there are separate negative impacts of monoculture oil palm plantations which include biodiversity loss, agrochemical runoffs from fertilizers and insecticides, land erosion, and toxic haze, which will be discussed in the next subsection.

Peatlands are also subject to the construction of drainage channel and the construction of dams (Suyanto et al., 2004). The dams are constructed for a variety of reasons, such as extracting illegal



**Figure 5.5:** On the left is a pulp wood plantation in Southeast Asia. On the right is what the peatland looked like before being burned and cleared for deforestation. The cultivation of pulp wood on peatlands resembles that of oil palm, especially during this process of preparing the land for monoculture agriculture.

timber. Another form of direct damage is mining that is done on the peatlands for horticulture and fuel because peat can be an early stage in coal formation, thus making it a significant resource for a nation.

## 5.5 Indonesian Peatlands Borneo

Indonesia allows for a concrete examination of peatlands, contributing around 10 to 12 percent of all global peatland resources. In particular, Borneo contains subcoastal peatlands that began to accumulate 22,000 to 23,000 years ago, although, sadly, recent anthropogenic activities have destroyed many of such resources. An example of such would be the burning of peatlands, induced by farmers, in order to establish pulpwood and palm oil plantations, which, though significant to the Indonesian economy, release toxic gases such as aerosols, carbon dioxide, and noxious gases, making Indonesia one of the world's largest greenhouse gas emitters. As of now, extensive deforested and drained peatlands in the region mean vast areas are not only at high risk of accidental ignition, but also cannot be used as farmland ([Ballhorn et al., 2009](#)).



**Figure 5.6:** An oil palm plantation created on deforested peatland

## 5.6 Conclusion

The preservation and restoration of peatlands in southeast Asia requires that governments place ecological health over profit from commercialization. There are many global and regional policies that could preserve these vital carbon stocks and thus play an important role in mitigation and adaptation to anthropogenic climate change. As policymakers proceed forward to improve the ecological health of peatlands in Southeast Asia, it is important to keep in mind the need to help local people maintain their livelihoods. Preservation of peatlands will also provide an opportunity for reparations for the injustice done to indigenous peoples.

The creation of practical programs that can support Southeast Asian countries in preventing fires during El Nino years and drought periods could provide an alternative to the common story of prescribed fires that burn out of control. Peatland restoration has the potential to boost greenhouse gas storage in the soil. Re-wetting the peat manually could play an important role in restoring vegetation and protecting the peat carbon stocks that remain after human alteration. Hydrological restoration could reduce fire risk, though its impact on reducing greenhouse gas emissions is still being studied (Page et al., 2009). When thinking about restoration, however, Holden (2005) reminds us that we have to ask what we are restoring the peatlands to. Because the climate and environmental conditions today are so different from those that formed peatlands thousands of years ago, ecological restoration for a peatland could look completely different from what we might imagine as "normal." Therefore, we have to continually reexamine what ecological restoration will look like and what a healthy ecosystem looks like in the Anthropocene.



!ht

**Figure 5.7:** A protest by Rainforest Action Network activists demanding that international corporations preserve peatlands and rainforests.

The Katingan Peatland Restoration and Conservation Project is an Borneo-based NGO that is working to help solve the problem by incorporating a business model that offers local people sustainable sources of income. In the Katingan district on the island of Borneo, there is a peat swamp forest that is bigger than Singapore. It is one of the largest remaining intact peat swamp forests left in Indonesia. The project is financed by the sequestration of carbon dioxide and is managed by an Indonesian company, PT. Rimba Makmur Utama. The project is guided by the basic principle that access to the forest will remain open to forest-dependent communities that have traditionally relied on the forest.

An international NGO that is working with local communities in Southeast Asia to preserve peatlands is the Rainforest Action Network, which is California-based (figure 5.7). Where Katingan Peatland Restoration and Conservation Project is focused on providing on-the-ground solutions, the Rainforest Action Network works with the large international corporations that own the largest plantations in Southeast Asia for oil palm and wood pulp. Their aim is to encourage economic, social, and environmental sustainability within the supply chains of corporations like PepsiCo and General Mills.

Another potential solution to peatland restoration, and thus greater planetary health, is in biomimicry. Biomimicry is the design of materials, structures, and systems that are inspired by biological processes. Biomimicry is a relatively new framework of thinking but it could be used to facilitate the creation of peatlands, which usually takes thousands and thousands of years. A

question to be explored is how biomimicry can be used to improve soil quality and soil temperature. In this way, we can maintain human activity sustainably and ecological health. The two are not mutually exclusive.

Finally, though peatlands like all other natural lands are threatened by human activity, [Dise \(2009\)](#) says that peatlands are complex adaptive systems that are "resilient to change at some level of perturbation but shifting to new states at higher levels of disturbance." We must not ignore the valuable signals from the anthropogenic changes in peatlands that we are seeing now but we must also remember that peatlands, like the planet, are resilient.

# Chapter 6

## Water - Benthic Interface

ALISON HONG AND SAMI MURPHY<sup>1</sup>

### 6.1 Introduction

The lowest layer of a body of water, the benthic layer, is a fascinating and highly productive ecological region that interacts with nearby sediments, chemical elements, and organisms. In coastal waters, the benthic zone facilitates nutrient and biogeochemical processes that sustain a significant amount of biodiversity. Without this water layer, lakes, rivers, and oceans, among many other types of bodies of water, would not be able to support benthic aquatic life.

In this bottom-most layer of water, biotic (living) and abiotic (non-living) members of the benthic community facilitate vertical processes. The benthic zone is vital to aquatic ecosystems by providing an interface for sediment exchanges and oxygenation (dissolved oxygen in water). Basic roles like nutrient cycling and contaminant filtration need to be maintained, or natural catastrophes like sea level rise, coral reef degradation, and coastal village collapse can occur. In this chapter, we will explore the interactions that take place in benthic regions, focusing on the relationships between soil, water, land, and aquatic life. To understand the productivity and importance of the rhizosphere (the region of soil directly influenced by root secretion and microorganisms) and benthos, we will use Southeast Asian mangroves as a model. Mangrove efficiency outputs are vital to the viability and sustainability of aquatic ecosystems.

### 6.2 Benthos: A Critical Ecological Value

As the lowest layer of a body of water, the benthic layer serves as a foundation for many ecosystems. Located directly above the sediment in a river, lake, or sea, it is the site for nutrient exchanges and metabolic processes. The organisms that reside on the benthic layer are called benthos. Benthos are abundant in shallow waters off the coast, which makes Southeast Asia an ideal environment for benthos to reside. Benthos in Southeast Asia are found in estuaries, mangrove farms, and rivers.

---

<sup>1</sup>Statement of Contributions: Samantha Murphy wrote the sections on mangrove forests... Alison wrote the other sections...



**Figure 6.1:** Mangrove Forest in Thailand

### 6.2.1 Oxygen in the Atmosphere

Oxygen is abundant in earth, making up about 21% of the atmosphere. During the Great Oxygenation Event 2.4 billion years ago, many anaerobic organisms became extinct due to the high amount of free oxygen in earth's atmosphere. Today, aerobic species and organisms are able to thrive with earth's large supply of free atmospheric oxygen. Oxygen is the most abundant chemical element in the earth's biosphere and serves as the foundation for many biological pathways and processes. It is produced during photosynthesis and used in mitochondria to drive the production of ATP. Oxygen is not only present in the atmosphere, but also available in water, as dissolved oxygen (DO).

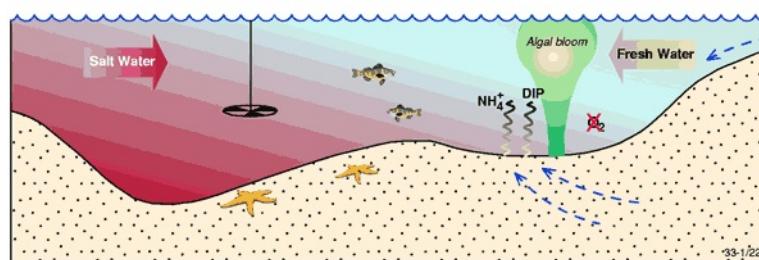
#### Reduced Availability of Oxygen in Water

When oxygen enters water, a diffusion barrier exists between the air and the water. Because water does not have the ability to hold as much oxygen as the atmosphere due to its crystalline structure, there is a much lower concentration of oxygen in water compared to in the air. Compared to the 21% of oxygen in the atmosphere, it makes up less than 1% of the ocean's composition. When the two surfaces meet, oxygen in the air dissolves into the water. As natural forces move the water, such as wind and current, oxygen dissolves at a higher rate. Dissolved oxygen rates depend on the temperature and salinity of water. Cold waters contain more dissolved oxygen than warm waters and fresh waters can hold more than salt waters. Thus, cold fresh waters are the bodies of water that contain the most DO.

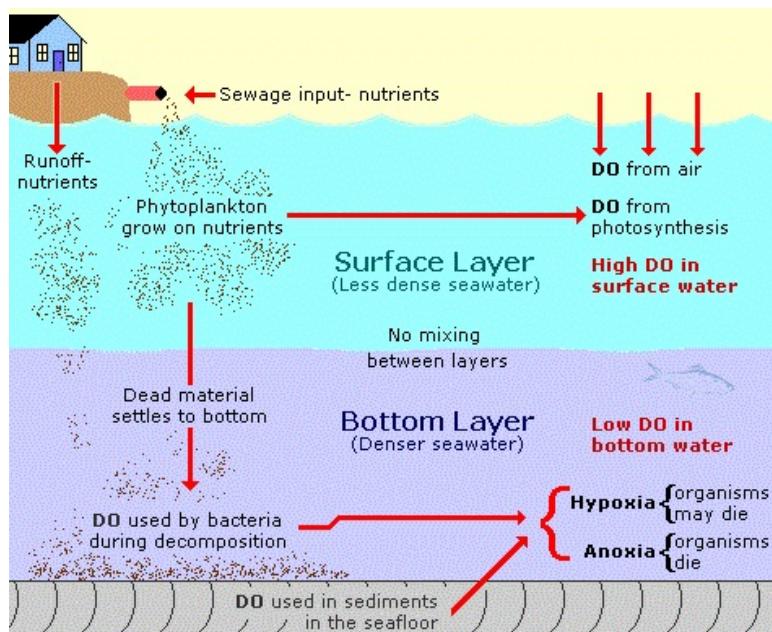
#### Dissolved Oxygen and Decomposition

Oxygen plays a major role in the breakdown of organic matter. When organic matter falls to the benthic layer of a body of water, it is decomposed by bacteria that uses oxygen during aerobic decomposition processes. However, when the bacteria consumes all the DO available in the water, aerobic decomposition processes begin to occur at a much lower rate, because of the lack of DO. As a result, water become stratified because the DO from the top layer does not dissolve with other

water layers and an imbalance of DO results. This phenomenon is called density stratification. Density stratification occurs in coastal systems dominated by waves and results from low levels of tidal mixing when freshwater with low salinity flows over denser marine waters with higher salinity levels. The barriers created by the disproportion of DO levels disallow nutrients to flow within the different water layers and photosynthetic processes can be limited. The bottom water layer becomes anoxic, meaning there is a lack of oxygen. Thermal stratification can also occur in waters. In a thermally stratified lake, the densest layer, the hypolimnic layer, remains cold during the summers and warm during winters. During summer, when the surface water is warmed by the sun, cooler water separate and two layers that differ in density are formed. Additionally, hypolimnetic DO in eutrophic lakes declines in the summer because there is no source of oxygen; however, the benthic organisms continue to consume oxygen (eutrophy refers to the most productive stage of a lake's life). As a result of the continued demand for oxygen but lack thereof, benthic organisms are not able to resume their aerobic processes.



**Figure 6.2:** Saline stratification in marine waters



**Figure 6.3:** Dissolved Oxygen Levels in Water

### How do benthic animals respond in anerobic environments?

Since anoxia is a seasonal process, benthic animals have anticipated responses to low oxygen rates. When an absence of oxygen exists in the benthic level, benthos respond by surfacing out of their habitats within the benthic sediment. The organismal beds that result further deplete the available oxygen level in the benthic layer ([Jørgensen, 1980](#)). The layer becomes stagnant as a result from the oxygen deficiency and sparks anaerobic metabolic processes. As a result, the product of sulfate reduction, hydrogen sulfide, accumulates from the anaerobic processes. Sulfate reduction will further be discussed in an upcoming section.

**Exercise 25** *Discuss with a friend other ways you think animals respond to a lack of available oxygen.*

## 6.3 Biogeochemistry

### 6.3.1 Sediment-Water Interface

The sediment-water interface includes interactions between the benthic water layer and upper region of the sediment bed. Benthic cycling of nutrients and metals occurs at this interface. This layer can include detrital material (weathered rock fragments) that contain aggregates that have deposited from higher water levels ([Turley, 2000](#)). This sediment is involved with oxidation and reduction processes facilitated by bacteria. Approximately 75% of bacterial biomass in waters is found in the top 10 cm of sediments. Additionally, bacteria in oceanic and coastal sediments make up 76% of the Earth's bacteria ([Turley, 2000](#)).

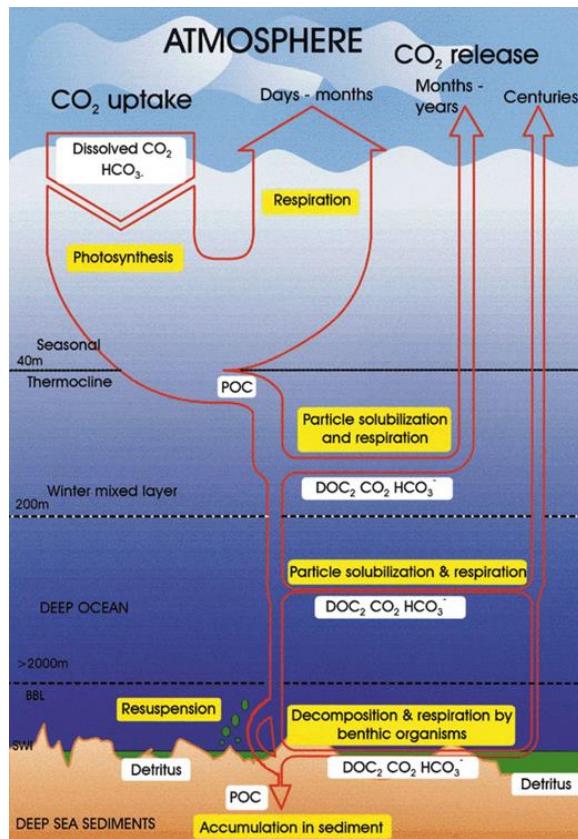
### 6.3.2 Nutrient Cycling

The abundance of certain minerals varies seasonally due to the availability of oxygen and organic material ([Friedrich et al., 2002](#)). Oxygen concentrations change considerably throughout the year and can vary in and off shore. In near-shore ecosystems, the primary site of mineralization occurs within sediment. Depending on how organic matter settles on sediments and if they are impacted by bioturbation (the reworking of sediments and soils by organisms), organic matter will be classified into either oxic or anoxic zones. In these zones, bacteria processes mineralize the matter ([Spooner and Maher, 2009](#)). The water is then able to provide elements such as oxygen, calcium, and sodium to benthic organisms.

### 6.3.3 Benthic Metabolism

Both organic and inorganic compounds travel through the vertical interface between the benthic and rhizospheric zones. Abiotic factors within the benthic layer, such as water temperatures, DO, light, and sediments, help process nutrients in the benthic water layer. Sulfate reduction and carbon cycling are examples of cycles and processes that help break down nutrients on the benthic level that provide sustenance for various ecosystems. In Thai mangroves, benthic metabolism influences the soil and nutrient-richness of the benthic-soil interface.

**Exercise 26** *What are some examples of biotic factor that help facilitate metabolic processes?*



**Figure 6.4:** Chemical Transfers in Sediment-Water Interface

### Sulfate Reduction and Oxidation

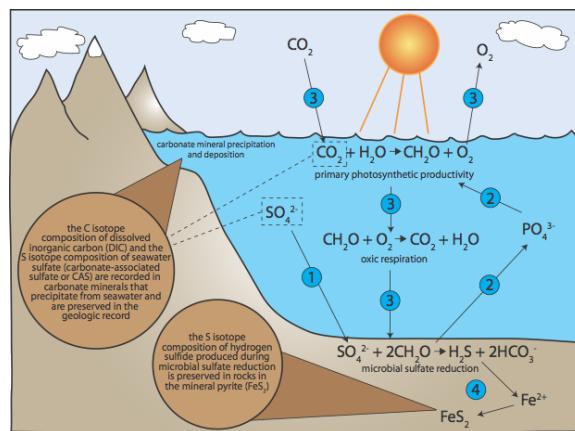
Sulfate reduction is an anaerobic respiration process that occurs in waters and sediments. It is facilitated by sulfate-reducing bacteria and archaea that aid in degradation (break-down) processes of organic materials. During the sulfate reduction process, sulfate acts as a terminal electron acceptor and is reduced to hydrogen sulfide. The resulting smaller compounds are further oxidized by methanogens, methane-producing microorganisms in anoxic conditions. Although hydrogen sulfide is a harmful substance to humans that can contaminate drinking water, it is environmentally beneficial and is used to convert contaminants such as uranium, chromium, and technetium from soluble to insoluble forms.

Sulfate reduction is influenced by many factors, such as season, benthic community activity and physical transport conditions. It is vital to benthic water ecosystems and has been found to be responsible for up to all of the total benthic metabolism in highly productive and undisturbed coastal environments. It is responsible for 20-30% of total carbon oxidation (Kristensen et al., 2000). This process is prevalent and vital to mangrove metabolism and chemical cycling.

### Sulfate Reduction in Mangroves

Mangrove swamps constantly degrade and recycle sediments into adjacent areas. The sulfate-reducing bacteria present in mangroves acts as a reducing agent during anaerobic respiration. Since organic matter is oxidized in the benthic sediment layer, sulfate-reducing bacteria is important in the mineralization of organic carbon.

Organic detritus produced in mangrove swamps degrade and recycle sediments or export them into adjacent areas. Vertical translocation of metabolizable organic substrates, due to either subsurface root growth or due to downward transport of newly deposited organic matter by bioturbation are responsible for high subsurface activity. There are similar mechanisms observed in salt marshes (Kristensen et al., 1991).



**Figure 6.5:** Sulfate Reduction Cycling

### Carbon Cycling

Carbon cycling is prevalent in coastal waters, as the shallow waters allow primary producers to graze the bottom of the waters. Additionally, because light is able to reach the bottom waters, it is able to catalyze many chemical reactions. Typically, there is a higher percent of sediment organic carbon content in freshwater compared to ocean water. In the deep ocean, the benthic level occupies two thirds of the earth and provides a great deal of the carbon sequestration and regeneration of nutrients. When carbon dioxide enters the ocean surface during carbon dioxide exchanges with the atmosphere, it reacts with water to form the dissolved inorganic carbons, bicarbonate and carbonate ions. This inorganic carbon remains in ocean waters and can either be transformed into dissolved organic carbon or can be taken up by phytoplankton during photosynthesis. Carbon is cycled through different levels of the foodweb and from different layers of a body of water.

## 6.4 Mangroves

### 6.4.1 What are mangroves?

Mangroves are estuarine trees that thrive along the coasts of tropical regions. Their salt tolerant, sturdy roots both protrude from the tree and are nestled deep within the ground. These roots,

which are numerous and intertwined, are a defining physical characteristic of this species. In fact, *Rhizophoraceae Rhizophora*, known as the “true mangrove” and most commonly found throughout Southeast Asia, is translated as roots (“rhiz”) above ground (“phora”). Growing up to 25 meters tall, mangroves are thin and long in shape with dense leaves near their heads.

Because these forests are often cluttered with overlapping trees, they are substantial barriers between oceanic waves and coastal communities. As they block external turbulence from the ocean from degrading the coastline, mangroves simultaneously protect the sea from inland pollutant runoff and heavy organic matter deposition. As ecological filtration systems, they are vital to estuarine environments by mitigating toxic leakage from agrarian pesticides and fertilizers. In this chapter, the nutrient cycling and sequestration that takes place within mangroves will demonstrate the importance of benthos as foundations of wetland environments.

#### 6.4.2 Reproduction

Proper tidal currents, insects, and nutrient conditions must be met for mangrove reproduction to occur. If an environment hosts a good balance of these qualities, then seedling production and pollination may be facilitated. In fact, without wind and insects, mangrove reproduction success rates may be as low as 11.48%.

Viviparous and crypto-viviparous species of mangrove are both self-pollinating and cross-pollinating, and their seeds are very large [Ge and Sun \(1999\)](#). Viviparous species produce offspring that begin growth while still attached to the parent plant. Starting as a flower bud, it takes about four months to reach seedling size, yet this varies amongst mangrove species. Similar to fetuses during pregnancy, mangrove seedlings depend on their parent for nutrients and a safe environment to evolve in its initial stages of life. While in this primary phase, the seedling “develops chlorophyll and actively photosynthesizes” as “the parent tree supplies the water and necessary nutrients” ([Selvam and Karunagaran, 2004](#)). Toward the end of this process, “the seedling hangs downward and detaches from the residual fruit at the collar end (base of branch where it connects to the trunk), leaving behind its cotyledons (embryonic leaves), and falls from the maternal parent”, after about four to six months of maturation and begins growth as an independent organism .

The process from seedling to towering canopy begins when the fully developed seedling implants itself into the mud either directly after detachment or after dispersal from oceanic tides ([Aluri et al., 2017](#)). However, unruly tidal currents can make it difficult for seedlings to implant, animals such as crabs and monkeys may destroy vulnerable seedlings, and climate change can alter flowering patterns and schedules ([Aluri et al., 2017](#)).

It is important to understand the reproductive processes of mangroves as the vitality of entire ecosystems depends on the success of this regeneration.

#### 6.4.3 Tannin Value

While the roots of mangroves are important for nutrient cycling and soil anchoring, their trunks hold economic value in their bark. Fishermen find value in the tannin that gives the bark a reddish-brown color (figure 6.8). With up to 68 to 78% tannin concentrations, this bark contains reddish liquid that can be extracted and used to protect cotton fishing nets from decay for a longer period([Aluri et al., 2017](#)).

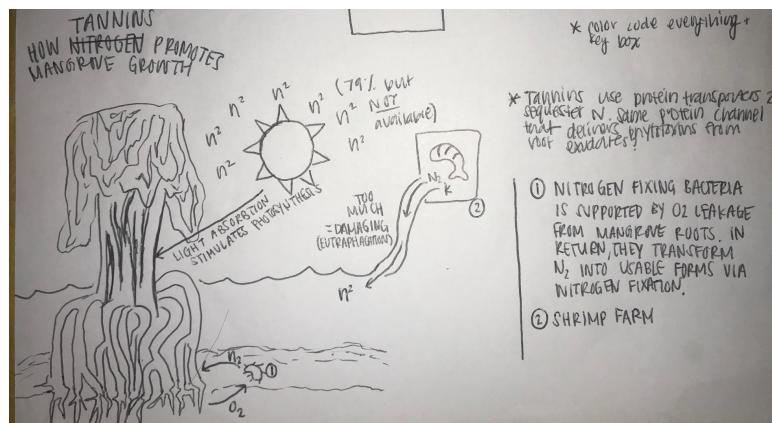
Beyond this, tannins affect estuarine efficiency in mangroves, particularly because of their relationship to nitrogen. They are also suppliers of DOM (dissolved organic matter) and “strong absorbers of light” due to their dark hue, which “facilitates photochemical reactivity” ([Maie et al.,](#)



**Figure 6.6:** Stage 4: Growth from Seedling to a Tree

2008). The most important role of tannins in estuarine environments however, lies within their ability to create “stable tannin-protein complexes” that sequester nitrogen. In other words, they keeps nitrogen trapped within the benthic zone (figure 6.7). Nitrogen, a component of amino acids, is vital for the construction of proteins and thus, the formation of life. Without soil rich in nitrogen, biotic growth would not be possible. To simplify, the sequestration of DON (dissolved organic nitrogen) means the sequestration of proteins, which are the foundation of all living things.

**Exercise 27** From what you have read thus far, how are mangroves unique from other forest ecosystems?



**Figure 6.7:** Tannins processes in mangroves

#### 6.4.4 The Ecological and Economic Importance of Mangroves

##### Environmental Benefits of Mangroves

Mangroves indirectly impact a variety of economic and ecological variables. Although degradation of mangroves cause many immediate problems to their specific estuarine environments, it can have



**Figure 6.8:** Mangrove tannins: the reddish insides of mangrove bark are tannins.

damaging effects on external processes and ecosystems. Without these important coastal barriers, a variety of oceanic ecologies would suffer. Without the presence of mangroves to collect inland organic matter for example, sediments would otherwise release into the ocean and deposit in biodiversity hotspots such as coral reefs. This as well as high BOD particulates and chemicals are introduced to these marine metropolises that hundreds if not thousands of species inhabit. Because 10% of the world's global consumption of fish are captured from coral reefs, this could have devastating effects to the commercial fishing industry ([Naylor et al., 2000](#)).

Mangroves fulfill the role of sediment and contaminant reservoirs. Without them, algae blooms due to eutrophication and biomagnification of toxins may occur. These combined factors have the potential to produce a deadly, synergistic effect to coral reefs. Much like fires that fuel the spread of more fire, this process can be demonstrated as a negative feedback loop; less mangroves increase cycles of oceanic degradation that catalyst further degradation ([Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999](#)). And with “35% of the area of mangrove forests lost in the past two decades,” the global market for seafood is likely to suffer from declining quantities and qualities of marine life ([Valiela et al., 2001](#)). Other socioeconomic impacts like this will be explored in the upcoming paragraphs.

### Community Impact

Covering 25% of the world's subtropical and tropical coastlines, the presence of mangroves are crucial to the many communities who depend on their erosion prevention capabilities. Without these barriers, farmers face the threat of land salinization, fishers are daunted with diminishing seafood yields, and both are plagued with heavily polluted water. At the local level, families that refer to mangroves as “supermarkets” for their diversity of resources may also be endangered by their absence. The disappearance of mangrove forests makes coastal communities increasingly vulnerable to natural disasters, such as cyclone surges and tsunamis ([Aluri et al., 2017](#)). These threats, coupled with exponentially rising sea levels, causes extreme flooding known as inundation. As a result, agriculture becomes unproductive, villages are devastated, and residencies are pushed inland. As a result, many villagers must then look for alternative sources of income, and often migrate to a city with hopes of finding work. The disconcerting reality for many however, involves susceptibility to human trafficking. Left helpless and exposed to danger by their lack of financial support, many are forced into illegal sex trafficking. Overall, the presence or lack thereof of mangroves can have overwhelming socioeconomic implications.

Although planting hoards of mangroves may seem the simple solution to fixing areas afflicted by oceanic flooding and erosion, the process is not so easy. In Indonesia, flooding has escalated

past the point of remediation and mangroves cannot be planted. Although these trees would serve as great protective barriers from the ocean, the tides have grown much too high for seedlings to implant successfully, and they only wash away with the current. As a result, villages cannot grow food, maintain their shrimp ponds, or even navigate around their village due to intense inundation. Locals are forced with the decision to either move away from their villages to a city or draft a viable environmentally sustainable solution.

#### 6.4.5 Biotic Life in Mangroves

#### 6.4.6 Fauna

##### Mudskippers

Mangroves are home to a variety of animals and biotic microorganisms that make them one of the most productive ecosystems in the world ([Kristensen et al., 1991](#)). One of the most unique organisms that inhabit this ecosystem is the mudskipper (*Gobiidae: Oxudercinae*). These amphibious fish are both marine and land-faring organisms. They have evolved to maneuver through muddy landscapes using their pectoral fins for support (figure 6.9). For this reason, they thrive in shallow, estuarine environments such as mangrove forests that offer a balance between intertidal and muddy zones.

These small creatures are also good indicators of ecological health. They provide insight on anthropologically induced threats to estuarine quality, as factors like chemical runoff and extreme sediment deposition dwindle this environment's ability to support life and make it uninhabitable for mudskippers ([Polgar, 2009](#)).



**Figure 6.9:** Mangroves are home to a variety of animals, such as the mudskipper

##### Crabs

Similar to mudskippers, the Grapsid crab (*Crustacea: Decapoda: Grapsidae*) thrives in benthos and above water. These 4 to 6 inch shore crabs are key to recycling organic matter within the mangrove ecosystem, as they deconstruct mangrove leaves and displace sediment (this action is known as bioturbation), reducing the toxicity of organic matter and shaping the topography of the ground. Their specific niche determines the productivity of the entire forest by influencing food chains at the final trophic level: that of decomposers. As Grapsid crabs transform organic material into digestible particulates for detritivores, they speed up the process of decomposition that cycles organic substances. Because higher levels of organic matter increase an ecosystem's BOD, this process of organic cycling balances the constantly replenished BOD levels that can be a limiting

factor for environments. Grapsid crabs not only regulate nutrients, but aid in the filtration of pollutants by breaking down toxins, as mentioned earlier ([Lee, 1998](#)).

### Dugong

Dugongs, or Phayun (pay-oon) in Thailand, are another species whose survival depends on mangrove forests. Inhabiting bay waters on the outskirts of mangrove forests, Dugong feed on seagrass and interact closely with benthos. Like bioturbulant crabs, they play a significant role in shaping the sea floor as they feed on seagrass. This sister species to the manatee (known as “sea-cows” in western settings), is valued culturally in thai communities, who have told folk legends of this mermaid-esque mammal for generations upon generations (ref- story). However, humans continue to threaten their survival, whether it be by destroying their food supply, accidental capture while fishing, or active hunting for the black market. For these reasons, the ecologically important Dugong has garnered an endangered status.

A common precursor of species vulnerability is the drastic depletion of food sources. In the case of Dugong, farmers are responsible for diminishing seagrass levels due to toxic fertilizer runoff. This both kills epifaunal organisms and threatens a vital source of sustenance for the herbivorous Dugong. As for fishing, many Dugong are killed from bycatch and entanglement. Because many rural fishers lack the means to apply technologically advanced and ecologically conscious practices, they often resort to traditional, yet illegal practices. Their unintentional capture typically takes one of three forms: via gill nets, stake traps, or push nets, which scoop and trap organisms as it is scraped against the seafloor. These low tech, high capture mechanisms tend to disrupt entire ecosystems by trapping a host of organisms other than their target species /citephines2005community.

Even though many locals acknowledge the faults within their fishing approaches, they may be conflicted with economic barriers. For residents of “no land village” in Bang Chan, Thailand, alternative fishing is preferable yet they lack the resources or financial stability to do so. The reality that human survival comes at the expense of environmental degradation highlights the age old conflict between prioritizing environmental versus anthropological needs. Undoubtedly, this is a complex and difficult problem to address. For now, the solution seems to be synthesising scientific and traditional ecological knowledge (TEK) specific to locals who know their communities best

Overall, dugong are very closely tied to mangroves as they exist and depend on many of the same ecological elements, hold a similar cultural value, and are threatened by human impact.



**Figure 6.10:** Endangered species: dugongs can be trapped by large gill nets and drowned.

As rural communities begin to modernize, they are finding new ways to supplement income and positively impact their environments. For Chao Mai village in Trang province, Thailand, the

conservation of Dugong has spurred development and flourished their economy. Utilizing Dugong conservation as a market to attract tourists, this village has initiated the construction of roads, a port, and a hotel to accommodate visitors.

Reading Activity: Look up other mangrove fauna and pick one that interests you and tell a friend about it!

## Flora

Mangrove forests are filled with a diverse range of plants including trees, underwater seagrass, and shrubs. Mangroves are commonly lined with *Rhizophora apiculatas*, or red mangrove trees, that grow in sheltered areas. Another mangrove, the *Excoecaria agallocha*, of the Euphorbiaceae family, is considered one of the most economically profitable trees because of its soft wood. Additionally, mangrove forests are complimented with beds of sea grass that keep the intertidal zones rich in nutrients for the many animals living within the area. Sea grass too, has filtration properties and can mitigate coastal erosion in much the same way as mangrove trees ([Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999](#)).



**Figure 6.11:** Seagrass flourishes in shallow benthic zones, and are often key organisms of mangrove ecologies.

### 6.4.7 Abiotic Factors

#### Nutrients

While nitrogen and phosphorus are vital for Mangrove survival, mangroves rely most heavily on ammonium, a form of nitrogen within the soil.

Mangroves tend to have low levels of dissolved nutrients in the sediment and water. In result, they possess a high capacity for retaining and recycling nutrients by several mechanisms that reduce loss. Mangrove sediments are unique and have low concentrations of inorganic nitrogen, low release to the tidal water, and low rates of net transformation, and efficient microbial assimilation ([Kristensen et al., 2000](#)). Mangroves are highly efficient ecosystems that utilize and recycle their nutrients and provide a rich environment for flora and fauna to flourish.

### 6.4.8 Rizospheric Bacteria in Mangroves

#### Bacterial Oxygen Distribution

As mentioned previously, mangrove forests are carbon rich due to their ability to store large amounts of organic matter. In order for this ecosystem to function properly however, the organic matter must be decomposed by aerobic bacteria in the benthic zone and rhizosphere. But because they are aerobic, these bacteria place heavy biological oxygen demands (BOD) on the environment. To mitigate this, mangroves act as oxygen highways that transport O<sub>2</sub> down to their roots, where it then leaks and supplies surrounding bacteria. These roots can have almost atmospheric levels of O<sub>2</sub>, at impressive concentrations of 14 to 19% ([Scholander et al., 1955](#)). This process is much faster than the percolation alternative, in which O<sub>2</sub> would otherwise dissolve vertically from atmospheric to rhizospheric levels. As you can imagine, this would not only be a long journey, but would diminish the oxygen concentration with each respective layer. With already limited oxygen availability in the water, even smaller amounts are able to diffuse through mud.

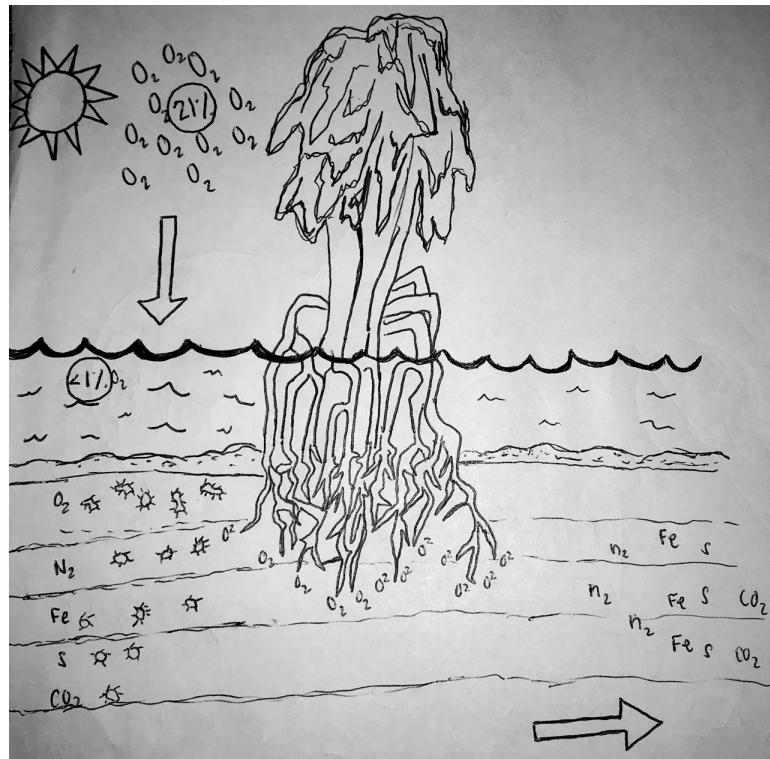
Eventually these insufficient stores of O<sub>2</sub> run out, at which point bacteria will switch to nitrogen as its main fuel. After available nitrogen levels are depleted, bacteria will begin to consume iron, sulfur, and eventually carbon dioxide. At this final level of succession in which bacteria are reliant on CO<sub>2</sub>, methane will be produced through a series of reactions, creating swamp gas.

To understand this process, refer to figure [6.12](#). In this diagram, the efficiency of bacteria decreases with soil depth. Because oxygen diffuses at a slow rate, it is used by organisms nearest to the soil surface, while deeper bacteria are accustomed to other ions for their survival. The same can be said horizontally, in reference to root proximity. Bacteria nearest mangrove roots typically rely on O<sub>2</sub> and are most efficient, whereas those farthest away are more likely to use nitrogen or other less productive means. As a result, natural selection dictates that organisms relying on inefficient metabolic pathways will be outcompeted, and their ability to oxidize organic carbon to CO<sub>2</sub> and release energy will be inhibited ([Dodds, 2002](#)). This is influential in mangrove health as oxygen deficient bacteria are weak and inefficient at breaking down organic matter, which produces a dissolved oxygen (DO) strain on other ecological organisms, like fish and shrimp.

#### Root Exudates and “Good Bacteria”

Microbial inoculants are microorganisms that boost plant health and nutrient uptake by warding off harmful pathogens. Serving as barriers from disease, these inoculants can be referred to as good microbes and usually take one of three forms: bacteria, fungi, or trichoderma. Existing in the rhizosphere, these helpful microbes have symbiotic, or mutually benefitting, relationships with plant roots. In particular, they work closely with root exudates, which provide them sustenance in the form of sugars, amino acids, peptides, enzymes, vitamins, organic acids, nucleotides, fungal stimulators, inhibitors and attractants, oxygen, and more ([Shukla et al., 2011](#)). The ability for inoculants to successfully blockade harmful contaminants, let alone survive, is reliant on a constant supply of these specific chemical compounds and macronutrients. In addition, microbes are tasked with breaking down organic matter into usable nutrients like phosphorus and nitrogen that allow for tree growth.

Root exudates also function as signaling mechanisms that alert the rest of the tree to potentially dangerous bacteria. Typically, root exudate intervention is categorized in either positive or negative terms. An example of positive root secretion would entail chemical signaling to attract ‘good bacteria’, such as plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR). Conversely, negative secretion involves the release of harmful toxins to drive out competing plant species and repel detrimental microorganisms ([Shukla et al., 2011](#)). In doing so, root exudates inject plant-based poisons known



**Figure 6.12:** Available oxygen is lost down the vertical gradient as well as further from mangrove roots.

as phytotoxins downward into the Rhizosphere ([Shukla et al., 2011](#)). Pathogen fighting “chemical weapons”, these are delivered to the soil-root substrate with the help of unique protein transporters ([Baetz and Martinoia, 2014](#)).

Interestingly, this process is thought to be fueled by sulfur rather than oxygen. In much the same way as sulfate reducing bacteria, root exudates are anoxic and anaerobically transform sulfate ( $\text{SO}_4^{2-}$ ) into hydrogen sulfide ( $\text{H}_2\text{S}$ ) as they power other processes like defense transport ([Van Straaten, 2002](#)). These areas included vegetated zones, presumably with higher levels of tree density and biodiversity, rather than unvegetated mudflat (UN) areas.

### Heavy Metals

Besides deflecting pathogens, tree roots demobilize heavy metals from toxifying their surrounding environments. This process of preventing root absorption and soil dispersion of heavy metals is called phytostabilization. To accomplish this, roots establish a quarantine zone of sorts, that keeps contaminants spatially confined. It is important to note that phytostabilization does not absorb pollutants into plant tissue, but sequesters pollutants in soil near the roots, becoming less bioavailable and reducing exposure to humans, livestock, and wildlife ([de Bashana et al., 2012](#)). On the other hand, phytoextraction entails the direct uptake of toxins so long as the metabolism of the plant is resistant to its toxicity, and can still maintain its functionality ([McCutcheon and Schnoor, 2003](#)). While only certain toxins may qualify for phytoextraction, this is a unique biological adaptation

nonetheless. Phytostabilization and phytoextraction are not mutually exclusive, and plants depend on both for their vitality. Without these processes, dangerous concentrations of heavy metals such as lead or manganese that run off from shrimp aquaculture would likely bioaccumulate in mangrove food chains. Heavy metals are especially a threat in dry seasons, where larger amounts of toxins are sediment, runoff, and organic matter deposit these toxins ([Handayani and Kumalasari, Missing Year](#)).

Overall, root exudates are a vital component not only to their respective plants, but to their surrounding environments as a whole. With the help of microbial inoculants, they are capable of bioremediation in the form of pollution decontamination and plant regeneration. As a team, these two strengthen forest productivity, density, and as a result, biodiversity. This is such an effective relationship, that studies inoculating seedlings with plant-growth-promoting bacteria have proven to be successful in facilitating reforestation ([Bashan et al., 2008](#)). Recently, these ecologically restorative properties have given rise to increasing rizospheric research, in which many are beginning to investigate natural biogeochemical processes as a solution to environmental degradation ([Shukla et al., 2011](#)).

## 6.5 Shrimp Farming and Aquaculture

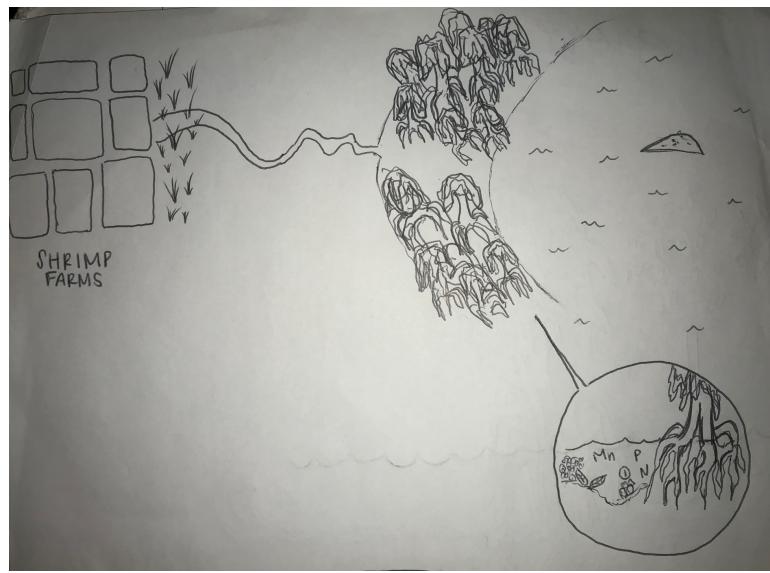
### 6.5.1 Shrimp and Mangrove Losses in Thailand

From 1961 to 1966, the mangrove land coverage in Thailand was reduced by half of its original area ([Naito and Traesupap, 2014](#)). As mangroves areas flooded with brackish water, the land became an ideal location for shrimp aquaculture. As a result of the increase of shrimp farming, 16-32% of mangroves have been destroyed ([Chambers and Ferdig, 2011](#)). Thailand produces 550,000 tons of shrimp annually and disperses its crops around the globe. In 2005, it was discovered that shrimp farming has contributed approximately \$1.2 billion to the Thai economy. Because of the large impact and role shrimp farming plays in progressing the Thai economy, the Thai government has been accused of valuing shrimp aquaculture's economic benefits over environmental issues ([Trisurat, 2006](#)).

### 6.5.2 Shrimp Aquaculture

Intensive shrimp aquaculture requires artificial feed, pesticides, antibiotics and harmful chemical compounds. The components that are found in the discharge include solid matter (eroded pond soils), organic matter (rotting shrimp feed, dead shrimp, and shrimp feces), and dissolved metabolites (ammonia, urea, and carbon dioxide). Some materials, such as chemical compounds and antibiotics, are quite toxic.

However, there is a lack of literature that exists proving these environmental hazards because of the strict governmental control over shrimp farming. Most shrimp farms dispose of the polluted water and waste products into surrounding areas and nearby waterways. Although shrimp farms are typically formed on lands that were previously mangrove ecosystems, mangroves still surround the areas in close proximity to today's shrimp farms ([Aksornkoae et al., 2004](#)). A study conducted in the mangroves in Pak Phanang province, Thailand, found that excess sediments discharged from nearby shrimp farms flows into the nearby mangroves. The waste affected mangroves by reducing growth rates and increasing mortality rates ([Vaiphasa et al., 2007](#)). The survival of mangroves and its biodiversity is threatened by the growing shrimp farming industry in Thailand. More environmentally-cautious procedures need to be adopted by shrimp farmers in order to sustain mangrove ecosystems.



**Figure 6.13:** Chemical and nutrient runoff from shrimp farms are trapped in mangrove forests, minimizing the amount of manganese, phosphorous, nitrogen, organic material, sediment, and other phytoxins deposited in the ocean.

## 6.6 Conclusion

The benthic water zone is a quite remarkable foundational interface that facilitates metabolic chemical processes. At the sediment-water interface, benthos facilitate sulfate reduction which results in hydrogen sulfide. Although hydrogen sulfide is toxic when present in drinking water, its ability to reduce the risk of groundwater contamination by transforming metals is environmentally useful. Benthos and benthic wayer layers in the mangroves are especially productive and diverse, supporting a large amount of biodiversity. Mangroves have a significant ecological importance and hold value in the environmentally beneficial flora and fauna. Although conservation efforts for mangrove forests have been initiated, many forests continue to be destoryed for commerical shrimp farming. The advancement and development of the shrimp farming industry in Southeast Asia has threatened the exisitence of mangrove forests and have caused environmental hazards such as pollution runoff and deforestation. Action should be taken to plan for a more sustainable future where both humans and natural organsims are able to benefit from the productivity of mangrove forests.

# Chapter 7

# Sea Level and Coastal Elevations

LUYI HUANG AND BETEL SOLOMON TESFAMARIAM<sup>1</sup>

## 7.1 Introduction

### 7.1.1 Coastal Implications to Climate Change

Since 1988, the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC), set up by the World Meteorological Organization (WMO) and the United Nations Environmental Program, has been collating scientific research on the factors and impacts of climate change to design response strategies to be included in international conventions on climate.

One of the consequences of climate change is sea-level rise, and recent research calls attention to the instability of the Greenland and West Antarctic ice sheets as a factor that may result in a 1m increase in sea-levels in the 21st century ([Nicholls and Cazenave, 2010](#)). [Nicholls and Cazenave \(2010\)](#) examine the impact of sea-level rise in a the present-day global context whereby there is no mitigation policy and the global mean near-surface temperature could possibly reach 4 °C by 2100.

### 7.1.2 Geologic Records of Sea Level Changes

Sea level rise is commonly known as a global climate change event which has taken place for thousand of years as a result of changes in tectonics and consequent subsidence and uplift of land. The relative height changes between sea and coastal lands will continue for centuries. However, certain locations will experience more or less sea level change due to the combined stratigraphic activities, resulting in local residents being impacted to different extents. Coastal and island residences are considerably being put in risk of coastal erosion, salt water intrusion, flooding and potential loss of habitats. Some questions we raise in this chapter include what contributes to global as well as local sea level rise? Yet looking a local perspective, what are the effects brought to local farmers in Southeast Asia?

### 7.1.3 Sea level and SE Asia

Countries in Southeast Asia are especially vulnerable to global climate change because of (i) their long coastlines, (ii) high concentration of human and economic activities in coastal areas, (iii) large

---

<sup>1</sup>Statement of Contributions:

and growing populations, and (iv) the importance of agriculture as a source of employment and income [textcolorred[(ADB 2009)?]].

Southeast Asia is at risk of being negatively impacted by climate change over the next 20 years due to the region's large and growing population, long coastlines, abundant low-lying areas, reliance on the agricultural sector, and dependence upon natural resources. In order to understand how current sea levels around the world are changing it is useful to consider the historical context of sea level rise.

### 7.1.4 Chapter Preview

This chapter will begin by providing an overview of how national governments and international organizations have responded to the reality of sea level rise and the challenges it poses for people living in coastal zones. Following this, a discussion of how sea level rise has impacted and continues to impact Southeast Asia will be offered, providing an introduction to the specific impacts of sea level rise in the Vietnamese Mekong Delta.

The role that CO<sub>2</sub> plays in causing sea level rise will also be discussed in order to present how natural occurrences can be exacerbated by anthropogenic activity. This chapter will also present how the geological formation of Southeast Asia has historically affected sea level rise, which will lead into a discussion of the impact of isostasy on sea level rise, another mechanism that is influenced by human activities.

The case study of the Vietnamese Mekong Delta (VMD) is presented towards the end of the chapter to illustrate how the geographical and geological characteristics of the VMD inform our understanding of why this region is vulnerable to sea level rise.

This will be followed by a discussion of the processes that lead to delta formation. Natural spaces and processes are however influenced by the political decisions of humans and therefore the socio-economic and political context of the VMD will be discussed. Groundwater extraction in the VMD and dam construction in the Mekong River, two anthropogenic activities that influence how sea-level rise impacts the VMD, will be discussed in depth to reveal the ways in which transnational politics, and subsidence determine the threats posed by sea level rise and how they will be mitigated.

Small islands in and around Africa, Southeast, and east Asia are identified as being the most vulnerable regions to rising sea level. Coastal adaptation is a systemic process but the increased exposure to sea level rise in these regions is not being countered by a high adaptive capacity. The violent conditions of the transactional interactions between the global north and the global south result in manifestations of slow violence such as a disproportionate impact of climate change in the global south, which include the most vulnerable regions which are identified by [Nicholls and Cazenave \(2010\)](#).

## 7.2 Sea Level Rise in Southeast Asia

### 7.2.1 SE Asia Geography as a Colonial Project

Maps have proven to be an important analytic as well as informative source for environmental and climate research. While can be interpreted as objective knowledge, they can “dissocialize” the territory they represent ([Harley, 2009](#)). Boundaries can differ depend on a wide range of factors related to social, political and economic characteristics of the regions being studied. Especially under colonial influence, [\[the connections between maps, power and knowledge are enhancing in political geography.\]](#) not sure what this means. The practical actions undertaken with maps: warfare,



**Figure 7.1:** Map of Southeast Asia region

boundary making, propaganda, or the preservation of law and order, are documented throughout the history of maps (Harley, 2009).

Therefore while we use the physical maps of Southeast Asia to describe coast-sea level interactions, it's important that we acknowledge process and implication of map making as a social process with political and social values.

The geographical region of Southeast Asia is commonly described as a corner of the Asian continent consisting of regions east of the Indian and south of China. Geographically, the region is categorized into two subregions: Indochina (the mainland Southeast Asia) and Malay Archipelago (Maritime Southeast Asia) between Pacific Ocean and Indian Ocean.

Generally nations fall under Southeast Asia include but not restrain: Cambodia, Lao, Burma, Malaysia, Thailand, Vietnam, Indonesia, Philippines, Singapore, and Burnei (Figure 7.1). The region is located near the intersection of geological plates, with frequent tectonic and volcanic activities. The outer boundary of Southeast Asia is an arc formed by the islands of Indonesia and the Philippines, and area of active subduction that manifests itself in frequent earthquakes, occasional tsunamis and periodic volcanic eruptions. The inner mainland part of the region was shaped by tectonic movements associated with the collision of India with the Eurasian landmass, which has raised in Himalaya mountains over millions of years (Hirsch, 2016).

## 7.2.2 Tectonic History of SE Asia

The physical geography of Southeast Asia has been formed largely by the convergence of three major tectonic crustal plates: the Eurasian, Indian-Australian and Pacific plates (Figure 7.2). Overtime, Southeast Asia has experienced an extensive amount of geologic activities such as faulting, folding, uplifting and volcanic activity. The region includes areas with the highest global rates of plate

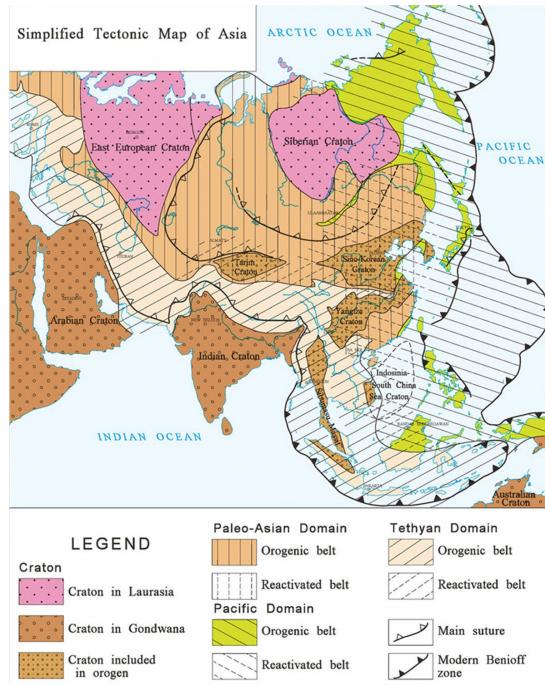


Figure 7.2: Geology of Southeast Asia.

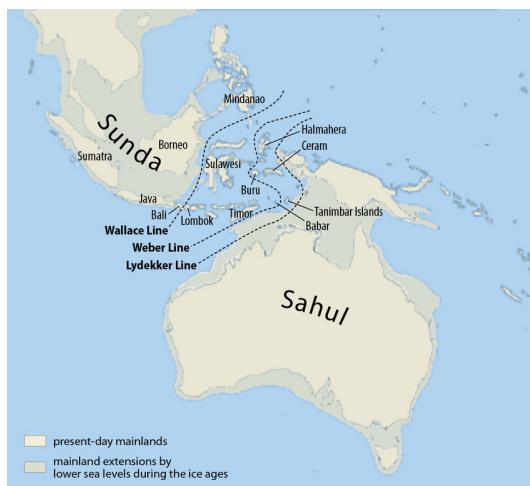
convergence and separation. The mountains of the Alpine-Himalayan belt turn southwards into Indochina and terminate in a region of continental archipelagos, island arcs and small ocean basins. To the south, west and east the region is surrounded by island arcs where lithosphere of the Indian and Pacific oceans is being subducted at high rates, accompanied by intense seismicity and spectacular volcanic activity.

Sea level rise is a natural phenomenon that has been taking place for thousands of years. [Woodroffe (1993) considers a series of unpublished studies on coastal and lowland river plains in Southeast Asia and northern Australia that were a product of the International Geological Correlation Programme Project 274 Coastal Evolution in the Quaternary meeting in Ipoh, Malaysia, which took place in 1989.] citation not useful, need more recent studies]

The evolution of the continental shelves during the Quaternary, 2.6 million years from before present, in the Cenozoic era. The extensive low-gradient continental shelves are exposed as the Sunda platform and Sahul shelf during periods of low sea level (Figure 7.3). The studies show how evolution in the Quaternary was as a result sea-level change in the region as well as environmental changes, which influenced sediment supply and alluviation.

### 7.2.3 Sea Level Change

Since the last glaciation, sea levels have generally increased particularly after the industrialization. Ocean temperature increases as well which leads to ocean expansion. Globally averaged trend toward rising sea levels makes greater complexities. Regional effects cause sea levels to increase on some parts of the planet, decrease on others, and even to remain relatively flat in a few places, including, in recent decades, on the California coast.



**Figure 7.3:** The Sunda platform and Sahul shelf, which were exposed during glacial periods in the Cenozoic era.

Thermal expansion of seawater can be the product of regional phenomena, such as El Nino, the periodic warming of the eastern tropical Pacific. Temperatures are increasing, leading to ocean expansion.

Although sea levels have always fluctuated with changes in global temperature, sea level in Southeast Asia has changed rapidly over the course of 250,000 years (Voris, 2000). A study estimates and indicates that the areas of exposed land in the Indo-Australian region during periods of the Pleistocene, when sea levels were below present levels, by producing a series of maps. The sea level changes are associated with glaciation that has taken place over the past 250,000 years BP. In this 250,000 year time frame there has been a 120 m sea level change.

#### 7.2.4 Isostasy

The volumes of oceans increased with melting glaciers and declined with increasing glaciation. The rate of glacial melting slowed dramatically around 6000 years ago. However, there are ongoing isostatic adjustments that are a result of changes in ice load (glacio-isostasy) and changes in the load of water (hydro-isostasy), two different factors.

Isostasy is a naturally occurring process that restores equilibrium between the Earth's crust and the mantle it floats on (Figure 7.4). The mantle is composed of layers with varying densities, two of which are the lithosphere (crust and upper mantle) and the asthenosphere (below lithosphere and flows like asphalt). The process of isostasy demonstrates how subsidence and sea level rise are related. Subsidence occurs when the Earth's surface sinks due to either a geological or human-induced cause. Isostatic sea level change takes place as a result of a load (i.e. ice or water) changes on Earth's crust.

The change in load alters the shape of the asthenosphere because it is the weaker layer that is easier to deform. Isostatic sea level change occurs locally, for example when glaciers sit on the Earth's crust, a gravitational force pulls the glaciers downwards, causing the lithosphere to dip in response to the force in that particular area. The dipping or bulging of the asthenosphere is the subsidence. Since the asthenosphere is viscous, or has a high resistance to flow, the force being applied to the lithosphere by glaciers of water for example, causes it to change its form. The adjustment of the

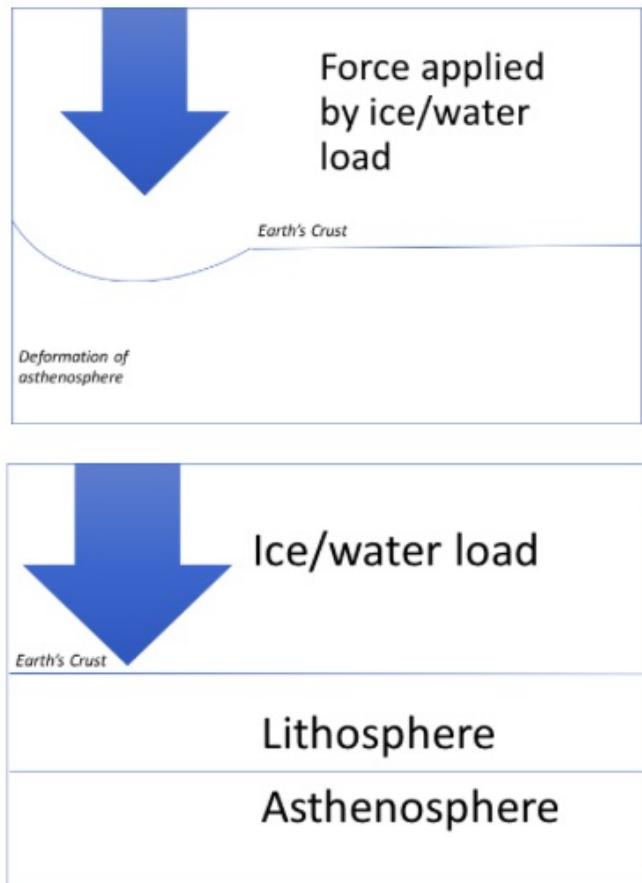


Figure 3. Diagram showing isostasy process

Figure 7.4: Diagram showing Isostasy Process

lithosphere in response to the stress being applied is the isostatic adjustment and is possible due to the flowing layer under the lithosphere. The Earth's crust attempts to reach an equilibrium with the mantle it is floating on. Since the area of the Earth's surface sinks when subsidence occurs, the sea level increases.

## 7.3 Groundwater Extraction

### 7.3.1 What is Groundwater?

Groundwater exists in the multitude of small spaces found within permeable layers of rock and sediment called aquifers. Many aquifers are porous rock covered by soil. Because water can easily flow in and out of such aquifers, they are called unconfined aquifers. In contrast, some aquifers are surrounded by a layer of impermeable rock or clay. These aquifers are called confined aquifers because the impermeable, or confining layer impedes water flow to or from the aquifer. The uppermost level at which the water in a given area fully saturates the rock or soil is called the water table. The water table is therefore the surface of the groundwater in an area.

Challenges posed by groundwater as a resource to humans are connected to both natural events and in Southeast Asia can be caused by natural events and anthropogenic activities. The main problems caused by natural causes affect the quality of groundwater in the arid and semi-arid areas, especially in the central part of Asia. Global climate change made the diversified hydrogeological conditions in both inland and coastal areas of Asia. Problems caused by human action are groundwater overexploitation and related land subsidence, seawater intrusion and groundwater contamination. Those problems have increased rapidly over the last 20 years.

Water from precipitation can percolate through the soil and work its way into an aquifer. This input process is known as groundwater recharge. If water falls on land that contains a confined aquifer, however, it cannot penetrate the impermeable layer of rock. Therefore, a confined aquifer cannot be recharged unless the impermeable layer has an opening at the land's surface that can serve as a recharge area.

[Erban et al. \(2014\)??](#)

## 7.4 Mekong Delta: Sea Level Rise and Vulnerable Peoples

### 7.4.1 Deltas in South Asia and Agriculture

The most extensive coastal lowland is the lower Mekong basin, which encompasses most of the Cambodia and Southern Vietnam. Mainland SE Asia is drained by five major river systems, which from west to east are the Irrawaddy, Salween, Chao Phraya, Mekong and Red rivers. The Irrawaddy, Salween and Mekong rivers are the three largest systems and their all originated from the plateau of Tibet.

These river deltas provide some of the most important food sources for Asian populations...

### 7.4.2 Geographical Context of Mekong Delta

The origin of the Mekong river lies 5,000 meters above sea level, situated high on the Tibetan plateau. From there the river runs through China's Qinghai and Yunnan provinces, where it is called the Lancang River. The name changes to "Mekong" when it gets to the other SE Asia nation: Myanmar, Lao, Thailand, Cambodia and eventually settled at the Mekong Delta in Vietnam. Under natural

conditions, delta subsidence is offset by deposition of fluvial sediment, particularly during flood overspill of river banks. Sediment reaching the coastal environment can accumulate in a seaward progradation of the shoreline and/or delta front. [1] The Mekong Delta region displays a variety of physical landscapes, but is dominated by flat floodplains in the south, with a few hills in the north and west. The diversity of terrain was largely the product of tectonic uplift and folding brought about by the collision of the Indian and Eurasian tectonic plates about 50 million years ago. The soil of the lower Delta consist mainly of sediment from the Mekong and its tributaries, deposited over thousand of years as the river changed its course.

### 7.4.3 Geologic Origins

Stratigraphy is a terminology referring to the study of strata (rock layers) and stratification (the formation of strata in rock). In this case, the stratigraphic formation looks at sedimentary and layered volcanic rocks of the Mekong river delta, which helps to understand its geologic evolution as well as the rapid coastal changes. The Mekong Delta region displays a variety of physical landscapes, but is dominated by flat floodplains in the south, with a few hills in the north and west. The diversity of terrain was largely the product of tectonic uplift and folding brought about by the collision of the Indian and Eurasian tectonic plates about 50 million years ago. The soil of the lower Delta consist mainly of sediment from the Mekong and its tributaries, deposited over thousand of years as the river changed its course. Under natural conditions, delta subsidence is offset by deposition of fluvial sediment, particularly during flood overspill of river banks. Sediment reaching the coastal environment can accumulate [a growth of river delta further out into the sea over time and] form a seaward progradation of the shoreline. This happens when the mass amount of sediment is carried from the river into the ocean (and disposed at the estuary) and the rate of such sediment piling up is greater than the volume of the delta that is lost. Subsidence, sea-level rise and coastal erosion can all potentially contribute to the loss of the delta. The difference between delta and normal landscape.. And its implication and legacy on the differences.

### 7.4.4 Holocene Sea Level Patterns

The modern Mekong Delta was initiated during the local sea level still-stand about 7,500 years ago (Bird et al., 2010; Hanebuth et al., 2012). Since the middle Holocene (around 7,500 years ago), the delta has prograded more than 220 km from Cambodia eastward into the East Sea at a long-term mean rate of a 30 m yr<sup>-1</sup>. This progradation has buried earlier phases of the delta beneath later subaerial deltaic deposits, thus becoming the foundation for delta development. Research indicates that the current coastal zone on the shelf was formed only in the past 1,000 years. The characteristic of this delta evolution model is different from those of other large river delta systems on the East Asian Margins as as the Yangtze, the Pearl, as well as the Red Rivers. Due to it young age, the deposit of Mekong delta is relatively unstable and constantly creating new shoreline and moving steward. Whereas the paths of along-shelf transport and locations of distal accumulations for the other deltas have been relatively unchanged for the past 7,000 years (J.P Liu et al, 2009, in press).<sup>2</sup>

### 7.4.5 Sea Level Rise in the Mekong

Scientific research conducted on sea level rise in the Mekong Delta demonstrate that increased sea level rise will negatively impact rice production. Over the past three decades, the delta has

---

<sup>2</sup>fix citation, use Xue et al. (2011)? or ??



**Figure 7.5:** Map showing relative locations of the Vietnamese Mekong Delta, the Mekong River, the South China Sea and the Gulf of Thailand.

undergone various changes to its hydrology (i.e. canals and sluices) in order to improve agricultural production, specifically rice production. In 2000, 78% of the land in the delta was being used for rice production and since 1997, rice production in the delta has accounted for 50% of rice production in Vietnam. As is characteristic of most deltas, most of the land of the Mekong Delta is only slightly above sea level. The major flood of September/October 2000 is one example of the devastating impact of flooding in the Mekong Delta caused by the Mekong River as it lead to large losses in the agricultural sector. [Wassmann et al. (2004)] missing citation focus on the flooding period of the Mekong Delta between the months August and November. They use a hydraulic model, “Vietnam River Systems and Plains” to evaluate future changes in the Mekong Delta. In general, the water levels in the Mekong Delta are influenced by water discharge of the Mekong River, tidal variations in the South China Sea and the Gulf of Thailand.

[Impacts to increase vulnerability?]

#### 7.4.6 River Hydrograph

High upstream discharge and heavy rainfall in September and October increase the likelihood of flooding in the Mekong Delta and high tidal levels are recorded in January. In terms of the impact of flooding, the upper part of the Mekong Delta is characterized as a deeply flooded area, mostly affected by river discharge, and the lower part of it is characterized as a shallow flooded area, which is largely as a result of tide. The scenarios presented by Wassmann et al. (2004) correspond to the medium-term (year 2030) and long-term projections of the original Business-as-Usual scenario provided by the Intergovernmental Panel of Climate Change (IPCC, 1990). The researchers project a 20cm sea level rise in as early as 2040 and latest by 2100. The construction of water control systems such as hydro-dams or an increase in water withdrawal could possibly exacerbate the conditions in the Mekong Delta when sea level rises, which will be discussed later in this chapter.

Understanding the geologic history of the upper Mekong basin is crucial for examining the effects of dam construction. Most of the Vietnam Mekong Delta is only slightly above the mean sea level and both tidal flooding from the Mekong River and saltwater intrusion negatively affect on the

agricultural sector (Wassmann et al., 2004).

#### 7.4.7 Shoreline and Coastal Erosion

Throughout the past 7,500 years, the Mekong River mouth has expanded seaward over 220 km and built a 61,000 km<sup>2</sup> delta in total. Based on the size and age of the Mekong Delta, the long-term average shoreline growth has been 30 meters per year. However, the delta has been experiencing large-scale shoreline erosion and land loss in the past decade.

Due to gradually increasing ground water extraction over the past 25 years, on average the Mekong Delta has subsided roughly about 18 cm, with some areas sinking more than 30 cm ([Erban et al., 2014](#); ?). Additionally, the total coverage of mangrove forests on the Mekong delta coastal zone decreased by 50% between 1965 and 2001, with most of these forests destroyed after 1995 (?).

#### 7.4.8 Socio-economic Considerations

Over the past few decades, water resource development literature has presented the inevitability of a global water crisis. These projections stem from the increasing concern over the limited fresh water resources available to humans. The strategies that have been proposed by various actors such as the global water industry, the United Nations, government representatives, policy makers and scientific experts have focused on “cooperation” in the ‘international community.’ ? illuminate how these negotiations obscure the extent to which states, nonstate actors and river basins construct “transnational” river basins through institutional and material processes.

? offer an analysis of how transboundary river basins, like the Mekong River, that encompass various sovereign states, are managed through institutional arrangements, pointing to the limitations of constructing natural resources through legal arrangements or geopolitical framings. With a focus on the Mekong, they offer a critical geopolitics that brings together political and human-environmental geography to reveal how geopolitical constructions simplify connections and hide environmental conflicts.

In 1957, the Committee for the Coordination of Investigations in the Lower Mekong Basin was created under the support of the United Nations Development Program (UNDP). Over the subsequent 15 years the Committee collected hydrologic data necessary for the construction of large scale mainstream hydroelectric dams and oversaw tributary projects in the national territories of the Lower Basin states (Laos, Thailand, Cambodia, and Vietnam).

During the armed struggle between Vietnam and the United States between mid-1960s to early 1970s, the Mekong served as a symbol of cooperation in Cold War geopolitics. The symbol of peace was to be achieved through cooperation of the four nation states that are traversed by the Mekong. ? explain that the United States led cooperative development of the Mekong following the creation of the Mekong Delta through the work of United States Reclamation and Army Corps of Engineers. However, they emphasize that the United States was using its involvement in the Mekong to further a geopolitical strategy to provide aid to economic development projects in the region (i.e. Thailand) as material and ideological counterpoints to socialism. The aid-driven relationship between Thailand and the United States resulted in the relegation of disproportionate decision-making power to the Thai government when it came to Mekong matters.

Although the United States continued to support Thailand financially and militarily throughout the 1960s and 1970s, when the US Forces were withdrawn from Vietnam in the mid-1970s, there was a complimentary abandonment of the Mekong as a geopolitical strategy. Three years after the ascension of the Khmer Rouge regime in Cambodia, in 1978, the Mekong Committee became the Interim Mekong Committee (IMC). Following the civil war in Cambodia in 1991, the government

began to view the Mekong as a driving force for rapid economic development because of its hydroelectric power and water storage capacity for irrigation schemes. It is clear how government and trans-national approaches to the management of water resources in the Mekong were clearly state-centrist.

## 7.5 Anthropogenic Environmental Challenges

### 7.5.1 Hydromodification

In the past decades, hydroelectric dam developments has been growing steadily in Asia. Although hydroelectricity is considered as a renewable energy, there are numerous negative impacts associated with large dam construction. Researches have revealed some common effects of dams which include:

- Flow Regime Changes: The modification of flow regimes both upstream and downstream (Williams and Wolman, 1984; Knighton, 1988; Iba'n ?ez et al., 1996; Batalla et al., 2004)<sup>3</sup>
- Sediment Transport Changes: The trapping of sediment in reservoirs and disruption of sediment transport downstream (Phillips, 2001, 2003, 2004; Vo ?ro ?smarty et al., 2003; Walling and Fang, 2003)<sup>4</sup>.
- Loss of Biodiversity: The reduction of biodiversity due to the flooding of habitat, isolation of animal populations and blocking of migration routes (?).
- Changes in Riparian Vegetation and Salinity: In estuarial areas, changes in downstream riparian vegetation and salt wedge dynamics

### 7.5.2 The Mekong Cascade

The Mekong River delta, similarly, is undergoing some of the geologic and environmental challenges. Given the fact that Mekong river started in Himalayas and goes through six countries, different nations are developing different parts of the river individually. Oftentimes, concerns have been raised regarding the mismanagement of the upper stream which could potentially lead to loss of lands as well as livelihood for lower Mekong basin residents.

For example, China has been developing a series of eight large scale dams in upper stream of Mekong. Whereas sediment supplies are critically crucial for river deltas to maintain the shorelines and balance annual subsidence lost to the ocean. This series of dams, termed as the Mekong Cascade, will be constructed over a 750k length in the upper basin of the Mekong River in Yunnan, over a total gradient change of 800m (?).

### 7.5.3 Shoreline Protection and Mitigation Strategy

Kench et al. (2015)<sup>5</sup> conducted research on low-lying coral reef islands, such as the Maldives in the Indian Ocean, to demonstrate how coral reefs adapt to sea level rise. A combination of various factors, such as low elevation, small area, sensitivity to variations in boundary

---

<sup>3</sup>find citations!

<sup>4</sup>fix citation

<sup>5</sup>? is this it?

conditions, cause the stability of these areas to be of special global concern. The researchers focus on the morphological responses of islands to recent sea level rise by analyzing a centennial-scale record of physical changes in the islands of Funafuti Atoll, Tuvalu, located in the central Pacific Ocean.

For the past 60 years, the researchers found that the majority of islands increased in area in response to sea level rise instead of experiencing widespread erosion. An explanation they offer for why these islands increased is the island accretion through generation of new gravel during cyclonic events that have transported to the island shoreline. Their results present that island can persist on reefs when the rate of sea level rise is 5 mm/yr, however as sea level is projected to rise by 1.2 meters by 2100, it will be uncertain whether or not islands will be able to continue to maintain this dynamic adjustment.

The challenge posed by these higher rates of change is the development of flexible adaptation strategies that recognize the urgent circumstances of island margins. Their research provides a platform for a discussion on how governments can implement adaptive strategies that use biomimicry. The accretion of gravel and sand in low-lying coral reef islands is a natural process. However, humans can also add gravel to reef islands that are experiencing erosion or submergence as a result of sea level rise.

The challenges being posed by sea level rise in the Mekong Delta can be tackled through this approach. To be more specific, conducting research on how accretion of soil, or other natural substances occurs in deltas, can be useful for scientists and researchers who may be able to propose ways humans can replicate these processes.

#### 7.5.4 Conclusion

???

Introduction to powers of exclusion: land dilemmas in Southeast Asia D Hall, P Hirsch, TM Li National University of Singapore Press and University of Hawaii Press 457 2011 Development dilemmas in rural Thailand. P Hirsch Development dilemmas in rural Thailand. 203 1990 The politics of environment in Southeast Asia: resources and resistance P Hirsch, C Warren Psychology Press 150 1998 River basin closure: Processes, implications and responses F Molle, P Wester, P Hirsch Agricultural Water Management 97 (4), 569-577 130 2010 National interests and transboundary water governance in the Mekong P Hirsch, KM Jensen, B Boer, N Carrard, S FitzGerald, R Lyster Australian Mekong Resource Centre, in collaboration with Danish ... 128 2006 Contemporary politics of environment in Thailand P Hirsch, L Lohmann Asian Survey 29 (4), 439-451 112 1989 Resources, nations and indigenous peoples R Howitt, J Connell, P Hirsch Oxford University Press, Melbourne 111 1996 Seeing forests for trees P Hirsch Environment and Environmentalism in Thailand 107 1997 Globalisation, regionalisation and local voices: The Asian Development Bank and rescaled politics of environment in the Mekong region P Hirsch Singapore Journal of Tropical Geography 22 (3), 237-251 104 2001 Forests, forest reserve, and forest land in Thailand P Hirsch Geographical Journal, 166-174 101 1990 Negotiating local livelihoods: scales of conflict in the Se San River Basin P Hirsch, A Wyatt Asia Pacific Viewpoint 45 (1), 51-68 92 2004 Political economy of environment in Thailand P Hirsch Journal of Contemporary Asia Publishers 88 1993 Resources, nations, and indigenous peoples: case studies from Australasia, Melanesia, and Southeast Asia R Howitt, J Connell, P Hirsch Oxford University Press, USA 83 1996 Deforestation and development in Thailand P Hirsch Singapore Journal of Tropical Geography 8 (2), 129-138 82 1988 The changing political

dynamics of dam building on the Mekong P Hirsch Water Alternatives 3 (2), 312 79 2010 Water governance reform and catchment management in the Mekong region P Hirsch The Journal of Environment & Development 15 (2), 184-201 70 2006 Can SIA empower communities? C Gagnon, P Hirsch, R Howitt Environmental Impact Assessment Review 13 (4), 229-253 68 1993 Thailand and the new geopolitics of Southeast Asia: Resource and environmental issues P Hirsch Counting the costs: Economic growth and environmental change in Thailand ... 62 1995 Natural Resource Management in the Mekong River Basin: Perspectives for Australian Development Cooperation. Final overview report to AusAID. The P Hirsch, G Cheong, R Gartrell, P Hinton, NV Thinh, F Miller 56 1996 The state in the village: interpreting rural development in Thailand P Hirsch Development and Change 20 (1), 35-56



# Chapter 8

## Tectonic Hazards: Earthquakes, Tsumis, and Volcanoes

TBD<sup>1</sup>

### 8.1 section

some text...

The Earth's core and mantel are active agents in the definition and processes that influence tectonic and landforms – but also frame how, where, and when natural disasters occur.

#### 8.1.1 subsection

some text

##### subsubsection

Some text...

---

<sup>1</sup>Statement of Contributions:



# Chapter 9

## Ores and the Miseries of Modernity

MARC LOS HUERTOS, ALISON HONG, AND ??<sup>1</sup>

### 9.1 Mining Metals

#### 9.1.1 Aluminum, Copper, and Rare Earth Metals

#### 9.1.2 Gold in the Philippines

The Philippines had the second largest gold reserve in world and employs approximately 200,000-300,000 people, most of who work in small scale mining operations, making approximately \$5/day (Pri)[??]

Many family miners, independent miners who make up the 70-80% from small mining operations in the country.

Large scale: \$70 billion 2014 (HWR)

90% smuggled illegally

2015: Gov simplified process of gaining license

But the Phillipines on just one region that has been subjected to the demand of gold and the re-occurring environmental and human tolls from the economic demand for gold. It drove some of the worst human behaviors from massacres, poisoning and destruction of whole groups of people via slavery and colonization. Although one could argue that the conditions today in the Phillipines is much better than the mines in the Andes or Brazil in the 1800s, but we would still be confronted with a terribly injustice system. To make a difference, we need to better appreciate why are these ores found unevenly and what are the processes to extract them and finally, how are the refined products used.

---

<sup>1</sup>Statement of Contributions: Alison Hong started a provocative description of the issues with gold mining in the Philippines. Later, Los Huertos decided to put these mining activities in a geologic context and revised the fossil fuel chapter that links to development of a population dependent on high density of energy.

### 9.1.3 Geology and Gold

#### Mining and Processing Gold

### 9.1.4 Mining Methods and Ecological Impacts

#### Large Scale Processing

#### Small Scale Operations

[Drasch et al. \(2001\)](#) ...

Working small scale in families... (Figure 9.1).



**Figure 9.1:** Insert Caption Here: ... (With Permission ??).

[\(De la Torre et al., 2016\)](#)

De la Torre, JB, Claveria RJ, Perez RE, Perez TR, Doronilla Al. 2016. Copper uptake by Pteris melanocaulon Fee from a Copper-Gold mine in Surigao del Norte Philippines. CRC Press LLC.

Saludes, Mark. September 29, 2015. Hazardous Child Labor in Small-Scale Gold Mining in the Philippines. Human Rights Watch; [September 29, 2015; February 6, 2018].

**Santos (1974)**

Santos G. 1974. Mineral Distribution and Geological Features of the Philippines. In: Pe-trascheck W.E. (eds) Metallogenetische und Geochemische Provinzen / Metallogenic and Geochemical Provinces. /:Osterreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften Schriftenreihe der Erdwissenschaftlichen Kommission, vol 1. Springer, Vienna

Wernick, Adam. June 3, 2014. In the Philippines, underwater gold mining comes with small payoffs and big risk. PRI; [June 3, 2014; February 6, 2018].

**Drasch et al. (2001)**

## 9.2 Asia's Appetite for Sand

Larson, Christina. "Asia's hunger for sand takes toll on ecology." (2018): 964-965.



# Chapter 10

## Fossil Fuels: Energy Resources in the Lithosphere

ELIANA GOEHRING AND MARC LOS HUERTOS<sup>1</sup>

### 10.1 Energy: Industry, Food, and Population

#### 10.1.1 Malthus and New Limits

In the XXXX, Malthus argued that human population growth was exponential while resource growth was linear — and a point had been reached where human populations would outstrip the capacity to get their basic needs met and misery would (or already had) fallen on the poor who would live destitute. He had some rather unsavory solutions to this conclusion — stop feeding the poor with charity because they will just have more babies that would produce even more misery.

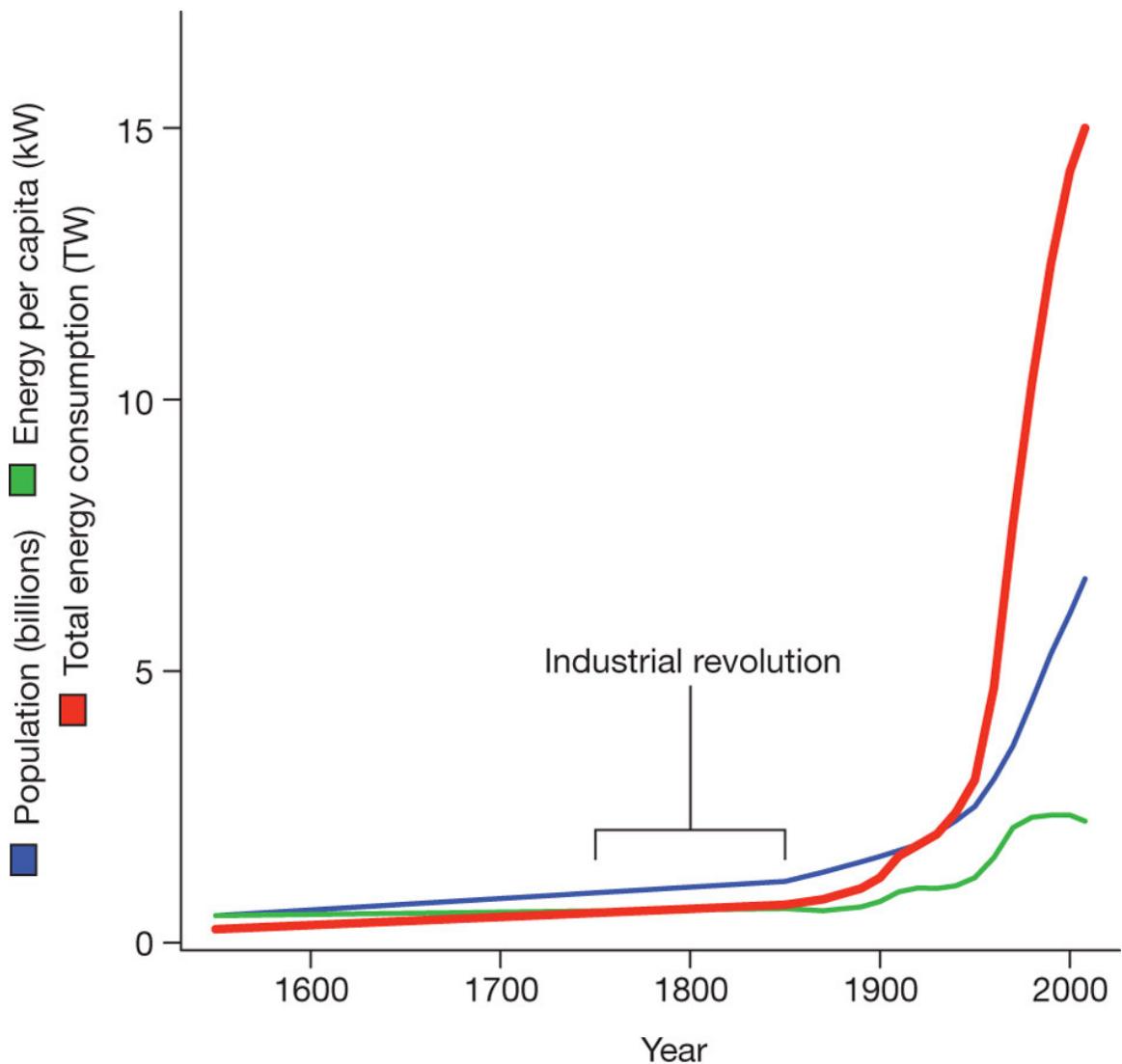
In some ways, Malthus' observations remain and undercurrent in environmental views — that humans will outstrip the resources of the Earth and even undermine the Earth's capacity to support non-human populations or even more poignant to many our own population.

However, in the late 1800s the predictions that humans would face a shortage of fire wood stimulated the US to take an active role in forest management to maintain a sustainable supply. However, with the use of coal and other fossil fuels humans were released from a carrying capacity on the Earth. In a strange way, then as discussed in the previous chapter, it is not the short supply of **Fossil fuels** that might limit the development of human populations, but the waste product of this resource in the form of CO<sub>2</sub> that will undermine our success as a species.

With the initiation of the industrial revolution, we have increasingly relied on high density power. Of these, oil and coal fields are among the most dense (Figure 10.2). In terms of the

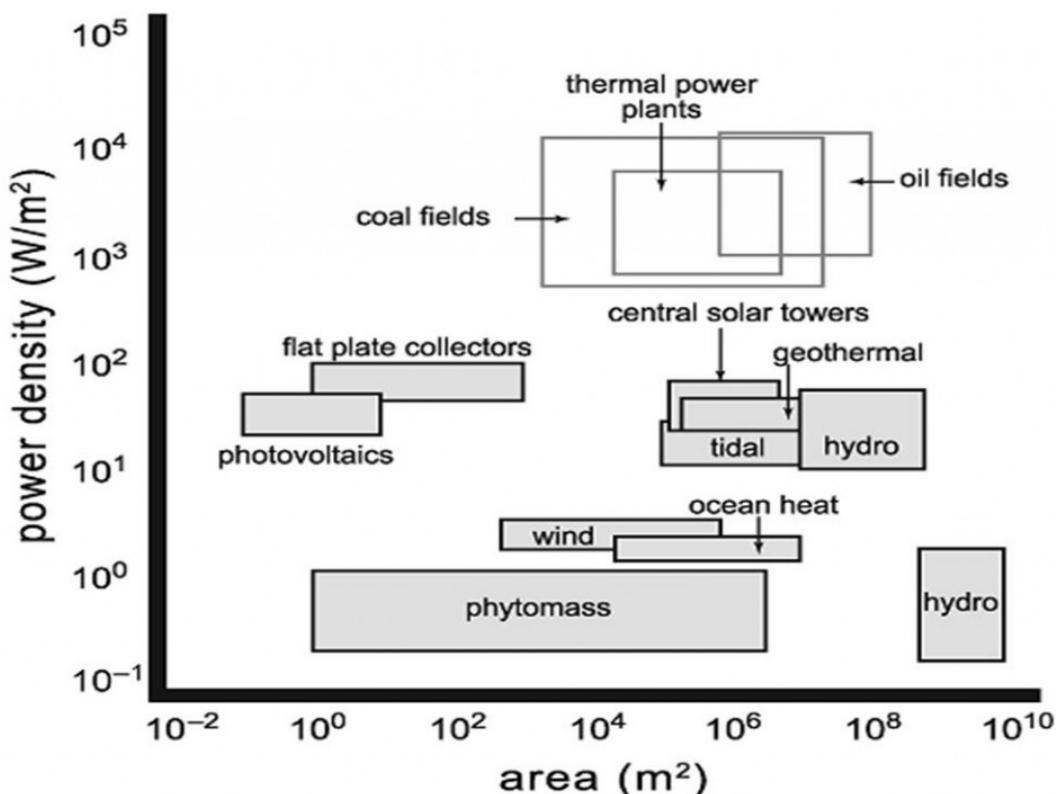
---

<sup>1</sup>Statement of Contributions: Eliana Goehring wrote the sections on the geologic formations and methods of extraction of coal, oil and gas. Later, Los Huertos decided to put these activities in a geologic context and revised the fossil fuel chapter that links to development of a population dependent on high density of energy.



**Figure 10.1:** energy and population, demonstrating the changes – although we need to be careful to not make assumptions to about causation — correlation does not necessarily mean causation!

impact on the world, we have...the “density of power” demonstrates the value of fossil fuels (Figure /reffig:Power-Densities), in spite of their areal needs, they remain a compelling source of energy. So, let’s talk about fossil fuels and their geologic formations, mining, and processing.



**Figure 10.2:** Characterizing sources of energy based on the area needed versus the density of the power ( $\text{W}/\text{m}^2$ ) demonstrates how unique fossil fuels are.

## 10.2 Coal, Natural Gas, and Crude Oil

### 10.2.1 Fossil Fuels and the Environment

Typically when fossil fuels are studied within the realm of environmental science, we focus on how relying on them for energy contributes to greenhouse gases. In this section, we are going to delve into other ways in which fossil fuels affect the environment. By focusing on the extraction processes of different types of fuels, we will discover the ways in which surrounding ecosystems are directly affected by mining through land subsidence and ground water pollution. We will focus on China, as this is the largest fossil fuel producer and user in all of Asia.

For example, coal deposits throughout China are burning underground, releasing huge amounts of greenhouse gases, fundamentally changing landscapes, and having serious economic impacts. An estimated 15–20 million tons of coal are burning annually in northern China through these inadvertent fires (Kuenzer et al., 2007).

## 10.3 Geologic Processes and Fossil Fuel Production

### 10.3.1 What are fossil fuels?

**Fossil fuels** are hydrocarbons, meaning they are composed of hydrogen and carbon. This term typically includes coal, crude oil, and natural gas which all started to form millions of years ago from plant and animal remains. A combination of extremely high temperatures, high pressures, and millions of years allowed these organisms to be transformed into fossil fuels.

### 10.3.2 Coal Formations

The first trees evolved around 360 million years ago at the beginning of the Carboniferous period. These ancient trees are the basis for our coal. Coal formation begins with thousands of years of plant accumulation. This process starts with plants in wetland environments dying and beginning to decompose. This plant matter is then buried beneath new layers of plants which later die and add to the layers of organic matter beneath them. The resulting partially decomposed plant matter is known as **Peat**. In tropical climates, the rate of peat accumulation is estimated to be about 2 meters every century.

Fossil fuel formations are created in sedimentary basins. For example, the most significant coal formations originated from the detritus of trees, ferns, and other plants that were growing during the Carboniferous “coal-bearing” Period 290–360 million years ago. A combination of environmental factors, such as the evolution of large woody trees, allowed for coal deposits to begin to form during this time period. Lesser formations of coal continued through the Permian and Mesozoic Eras, 290–250 and 250–65 million years ago, respectively. Coal deposits that are less than 65 million years in age typically yield low quality coal, as they have not have enough time to fully transform into high-grade coal.

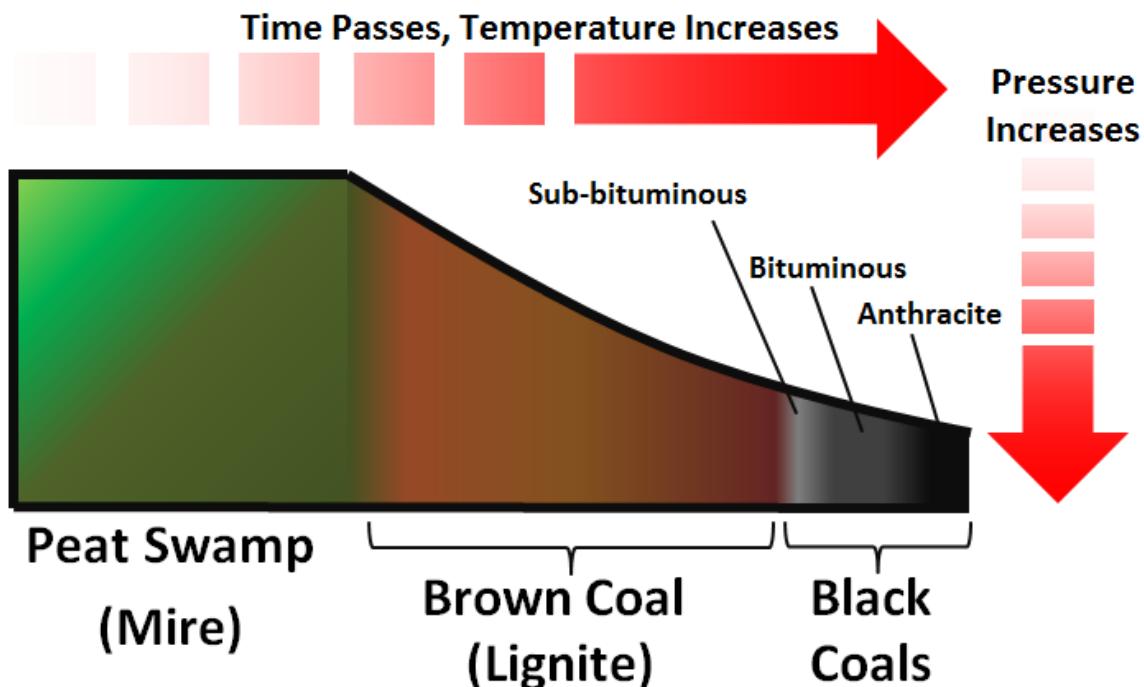
As peat transforms to coal (Figure 10.3), it is further compacted to be about one-tenth of its original depth. As peat is increasingly buried, the resulting pressure transforms it into **lignite** which is low quality coal. When comparing the appearance of peat and lignite, we would find peat to contain some undecomposed plant material which lignite lacks. Additionally, lignite forms distinct geological layers (Xie, 2015).

The pressure and temperature continue to increase, allowing the low quality coal to progress to an intermediary sub-bituminous coal and then **bituminous coal**, the most widely spread type of coal.

Finally, with increasing pressure and a few more million years the high-grade coal, known as **anthracite**, is formed. The different types of coal contain varying concentrations of carbon: anthracite has the highest concentration which ranges from 86–98% carbon, while lignite contains about 65–70% carbon (Xie, 2015).

### 10.3.3 Petroleum and Natural Gas Formation

In a comparable manner to coal, petroleum and natural gas are formed over long periods of time as organic materials are compressed and heated. We previously saw that coal is formed from decaying terrestrial plants; in contrast, petroleum and natural gas originate primarily from marine plankton.



**Figure 10.3:** Coal formation processes: imagine a nifty graphic probably with a flow-chart vibe, showing the different levels in the coal formation process and the corresponding increasing carbon concentrations

As the phytoplankton died, they sank to the seafloor and accumulated in the oxygen-free environment as sediment deposited on top of them. Similar to the decay process in wetlands, we often speak of diagenesis in the marine systems that begin the breakdown process of organic matter on the marine floor. Over time, they became buried over time and like coal were transformed by heat and pressure.

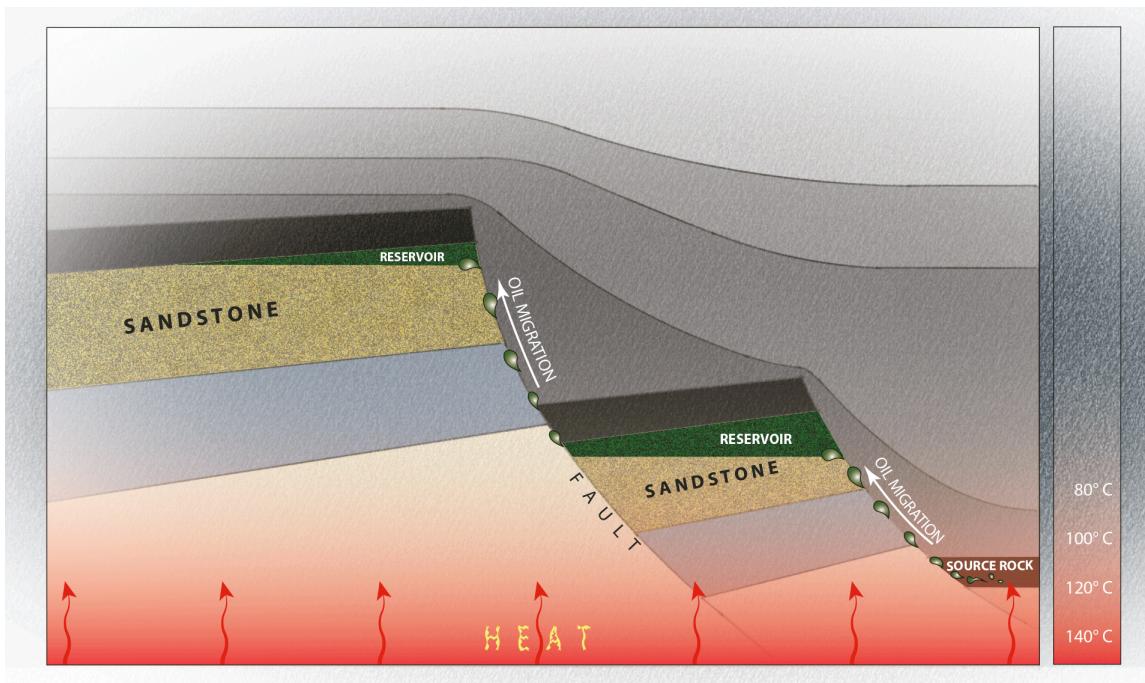
## 10.4 Extracting Fossil Fuels: Coal Mining

The first step in coal mining is, of course, is to find the stuff! Some countries have massive reserves, e.g. the US and China have the most extensive reserves.

Coal reserves are found throughout China, with recoverable reserves estimated at 324.1 billion tons. Figure 10.5 shows where these coal reserves are located throughout the country. The vast majority of this coal is not accessible via surface mining; in fact, only about 5–7 percent can be secured with this method. As of 2010, China was producing coal at a rate of 2.24 billion tons per year, of which surface mining accounted for about 9%.

### Surface Coal Mining

There are three distinct surface mining methods that are presently employed in China: open pit mining, area type mining, and contour mining.



**Figure 10.4:** Formation of oil and gas reservoirs. Source: The Norwegian Petroleum Directorate

Openpit mining...

Area type mining is commonly employed in surface coal mines established after 1980 in China.

In China, area type mining is characterized by the removal of coal seams ranging in thickness from 6 to 30 meters, with some being over 100 meters in thickness.

Contour mining...

(Ji, 2012)

### Underground Coal Mining

#### 10.4.1 Environmental Effects of Coal Mining

##### Fires in China

Underground coal fires are not a new phenomena. Lightning strikes, grass and forest fires, and spontaneous combustion have all been contributing to coal fires for the past few million years (Cey et al., 1900). It is the frequency of these fires that has significantly increased due to human activity over the past century as more coal deposits are exposed for mining.

As coal deposits are consumed by fires below ground, **subsidence** often becomes apparent above ground. Land subsidence refers to the gradual settling or sudden sinking of the Earth's surface.



**Figure 10.5:** Map of China’s technically recoverable coal reserves by province.

The landscape changes in areas surrounding subsurface coal fires are not subtle. Cracks induced by subsidence can measure up to a few meters wide, hundreds of meters deep, and can continue onward for several kilometers in length (Stracher, 2007).

These cracks, which often occur on a slightly smaller scale, are part of a positive feedback loop (See Section 1.3.4). As coal deposits burn below ground, they create cracks in the ground above them. This gives the fire greater access to oxygen thereby promoting combustion. Consequently the coal continues to burn, causes more subsidence, more burning, and so on. Figure 10.7 shows how the underground coal fires cause the ground above them to subside and greater air flow increases the fire’s capabilities.

Coal mining does simply occur in uninhabited areas. The effects of subsidence are apparent in Da Antou, located in Shanxi province about 650 kilometers southwest of Beijing. This small village sits atop a mountain that is littered with underground coal mines. In 2007 the majority of the 200 houses in Da Antou were cracked, and more than a dozen have been declared unfit to be inhabited since 2005. Chen Xiao'e, a former resident of Da Antou, describes how her windows started to shatter before cracks appeared, several centimeters in width, in the walls of her three-year-old brick home. Finally the floor buckled and the house became entirely unsafe to live in.



**Figure 10.6:** An open-pit coal mine, located in Fushun, in northeast China's Liaoning province.  
Source: Image from Yan Bo of Zuma Press.

## 10.5 Oil and Natural Gas Drilling

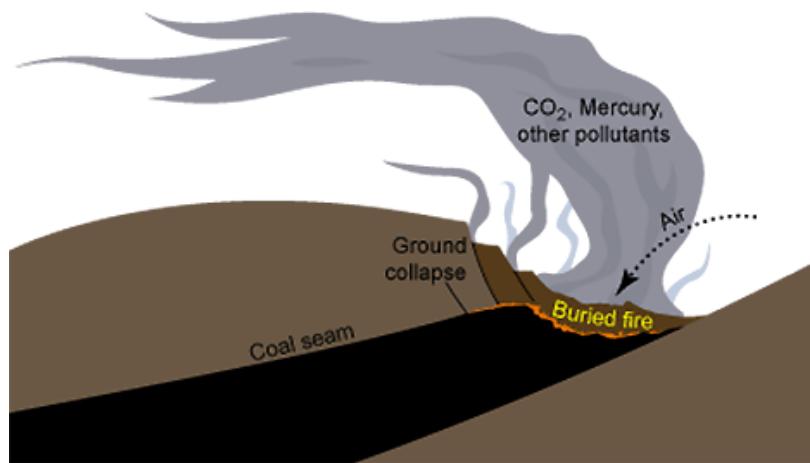
### 10.5.1 Early Oil Drilling [NEEDS REVISING]

An oil well is a boring in the Earth that is designed to bring petroleum oil hydrocarbons to the surface. Usually some natural gas is released along with the oil. A well that is designed to produce mainly or only gas may be termed a gas well.

The earliest known oil wells were drilled in China in 347 CE. These wells had depths of up to about 240 metres (790 ft) and were drilled using bits attached to bamboo poles.[1] The oil was burned to evaporate brine and produce salt. By the 10th century, extensive bamboo pipelines connected oil wells with salt springs. The ancient records of China and Japan are said to contain many allusions to the use of natural gas for lighting and heating. Petroleum was known as Burning water in Japan in the 7th century.

According to Kasem Ajram, petroleum was distilled by the Persian alchemist Muhammad ibn Zakar?ya R?zi (Rhazes) in the 9th century, producing chemicals such as kerosene in the alembic (al-ambiq), [verification needed] and which was mainly used for kerosene lamps. Arab and Persian chemists also distilled crude oil in order to produce flammable products for military purposes. Through Islamic Spain, distillation became available in Western Europe by the 12th century.

Some sources claim that from the 9th century, oil fields were exploited in the area around modern Baku, Azerbaijan, to produce naphtha for the petroleum industry. These places were described by Marco Polo in the 13th century, who described the output of those oil wells as



**Figure 10.7:** Underground coal fire. Schematic showing subsidence and pollution that occurs with underground coal fires (Source: TBD).

hundreds of shiploads. When Marco Polo in 1264 visited Baku, on the shores of the Caspian Sea, he saw oil being collected from seeps. He wrote that "on the confines toward Geirgine there is a fountain from which oil springs in great abundance, in as much as a hundred shiploads might be taken from it at one time." [citation needed]

### Modern Drilling

In 1846, Baku (settlement Bibi-Heybat) the first ever well was drilled with percussion tools to a depth of 21 meters for oil exploration. In 1848, the first modern oil well was drilled on the Absheron Peninsula north-east of Baku, by Russian engineer F.N. Semyenov.

Ignacy Łukasiewicz, a Polish pharmacist and petroleum industry pioneer built one of the world's first modern oil wells in 1854 in Polish village Bóbrka, Krosno Co who in 1856 built one of the world's first oil refineries.

In North America, the first commercial oil well entered operation in Oil Springs, Ontario in 1858, while the first offshore oil well was drilled in 1896 at the Summerland Oil Field on the California Coast.

The earliest oil wells in modern times were drilled percussively, by repeatedly raising and dropping a cable tool into the earth. In the 20th century, cable tools were largely replaced with rotary drilling, which could drill boreholes to much greater depths and in less time. The record-depth Kola Borehole used non-rotary mud motor drilling to achieve a depth of over 12,000 metres

### Impacts of Drilling

#### 10.5.2 Predictions of Peak Oil

The prediction that we might run out of oil has been a re-occurring theme for several generations. Peak oil is the theorized point in time when the maximum rate of extraction of

petroleum is reached, after which it is expected to enter terminal decline. Peak oil theory is based on the observed rise, peak, fall, and depletion of aggregate production rate in oil fields over time. It is often confused with oil depletion; however, whereas depletion refers to a period of falling reserves and supply, peak oil refers to peak, before terminal depletion occurs. The concept of peak oil is often credited to geologist M. King Hubbert whose 1956 paper first presented a formal theory.

Peak oil estimates are based on aggregated production of various fields. Oil production forecasts on which predictions of peak oil are based are sometimes made within a range which includes optimistic (higher production) and pessimistic (lower production) scenarios. A 2013 study concluded that peak oil “appears probable before 2030,” and that there was a “significant risk” that it would occur before 2020, and assumed that major investments in alternatives will occur before a crisis, without requiring major changes in the lifestyle of heavily oil-consuming nations. Pessimistic predictions of future oil production made after 2007 state either that the peak has already occurred, that oil production is on the cusp of the peak, or that it will occur soon.

Hubbert’s original prediction that US peak oil would occur in about 1970 appeared accurate for a time, as US average annual production peaked in 1970 at 9.6 million barrels per day and mostly declined for more than 3 decades after. However, the use of hydraulic fracturing caused US production to rebound during the 2000s, challenging the inevitability of post-peak decline for the US oil production (Figure 10.8). Thus, we need to address recent changes in the technology to extract oil reserves.

### 10.5.3 Hydraulic fracturing (fracking)

Hydraulic fracturing, known more commonly as **fracking**, is an extraction method used to remove gas and oil from within impermeable shale rock. But the technology relies on several other changes to oil exploration and drilling.

Until the 1970s, most oil wells were vertical, although lithological and mechanical imperfections cause most wells to deviate at least slightly from true vertical. However, modern directional drilling technologies allow for strongly deviated wells which can, given sufficient depth and with the proper tools, actually become horizontal. This is of great value as the reservoir rocks which contain hydrocarbons are usually horizontal or nearly horizontal; a horizontal wellbore placed in a production zone has more surface area in the production zone than a vertical well, resulting in a higher production rate. The use of deviated and horizontal drilling has also made it possible to reach reservoirs several kilometers or miles away from the drilling location (extended reach drilling), allowing for the production of hydrocarbons located below locations that are either difficult to place a drilling rig on, environmentally sensitive, or populated.

Hydraulic fracturing requires vertically drilling downward for about 2 km before turning to drill horizontally for as far as 3 km. The fracking process itself is based in expelling fracking fluid, known as **slickwater**, at high pressures through small perforations in the horizontal pipe. The slickwater, composed of water, sand, and an assortment of additives, is forced out of the horizontal pipe at pressures above 600 atm creating microfractures for up to 50 m in the surrounding rock.

Thus, Hubbert’s original predictions for world peak oil production proved premature. Nevertheless, the rate of discovery of new petroleum deposits peaked worldwide during the 1960s and has never approached these levels since.

#### 10.5.4 Environmental Concerns with Oil Drilling

There are a number of environmental concerns surrounding fracking.

- Water usage

The fracking process requires extremely large volumes of water. INSERT NUMBER. Sourcing this much water can put a stress on surrounding surface and ground water reserves, particularly in desert regions such as INSERT LOCATION.

- Water contamination

The flowback liquid from fracking contains the original additives and may also contain heavy metals, radioactive material, and other toxins. Poorly constructed wells or other means of spilling this liquid could contaminate surrounding surface and ground water sources.

- Subsidence

As with other forms of fossil fuel extraction, removing and altering material from below ground tends to cause subsidence.

- Methane

### 10.6 A Fossil Fuel Addiction

#### 10.6.1 Supply and Demand

*The goal of this section is to show that while there are serious environmental/health effects associated with fossil fuels, we can't simply stop using them. I'll show that China, while incredibly dependent on coal, is actually one of the most efficient countries at processing coal.*

Let's now take a step back and briefly examine the economic and political reasons why countries like China are so dependent on fossil fuels and in particular, coal.

#### 10.6.2 Fossil Fuels and Asia

While China is incredibly dependent on coal, its coal-fired power plants are significantly more efficient than those in the United States. In this context, efficiency refers to the amount of coal consumed per unit of power produced, and is thus related to gas emissions.

Rapid growth, etc, etc, etc, relatively cheap option, reserves, etc

#### 10.6.3 Development and Greenhouse Gas Emissions

#### 10.6.4 Does Development Depend on Burning Fossil Fuels?

Some observers, such as petroleum industry experts Kenneth S. Deffeyes and Matthew Simmons, predicted there would be negative global economy effects after a post-peak production decline and subsequent oil price increase because of the continued dependence of most modern industrial transport, agricultural, and industrial systems on the low cost and high availability of oil. Predictions vary greatly as to what exactly these negative effects would be. While the

notion that petroleum production must peak at some point is not controversial, the assertion that this must coincide with a serious economic decline, or even that the decline in production will necessarily be caused by an exhaustion of available reserves, is not universally accepted.

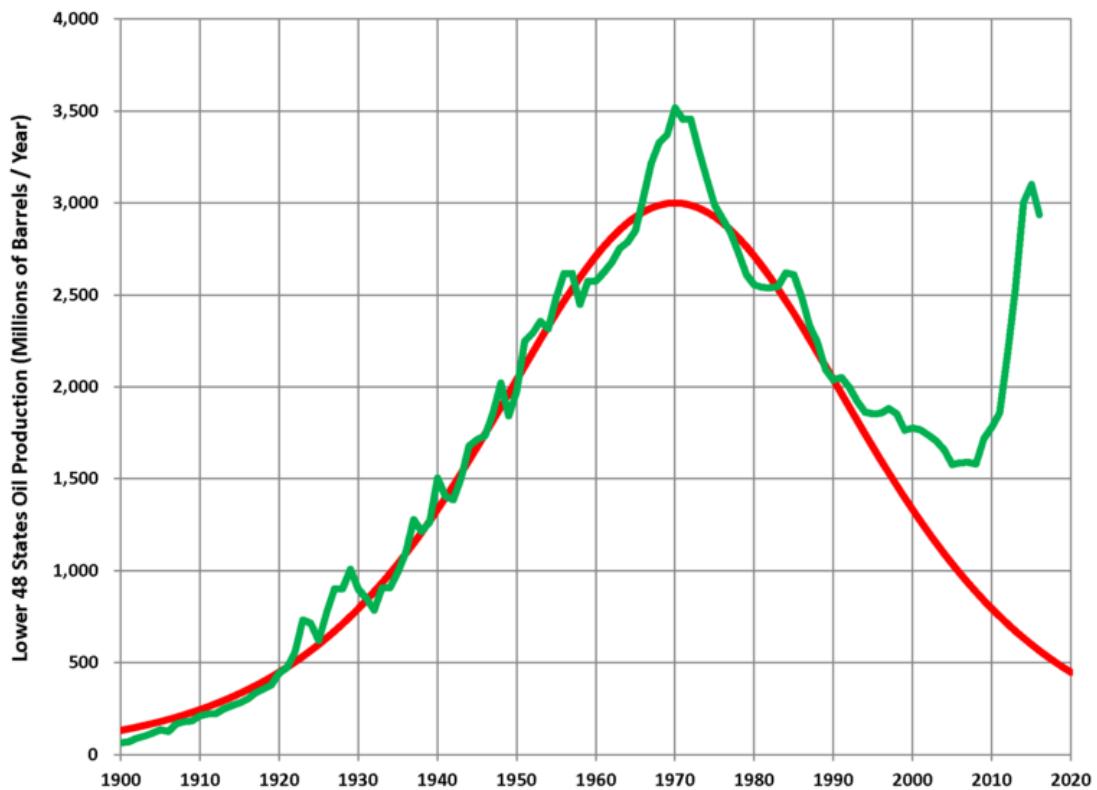
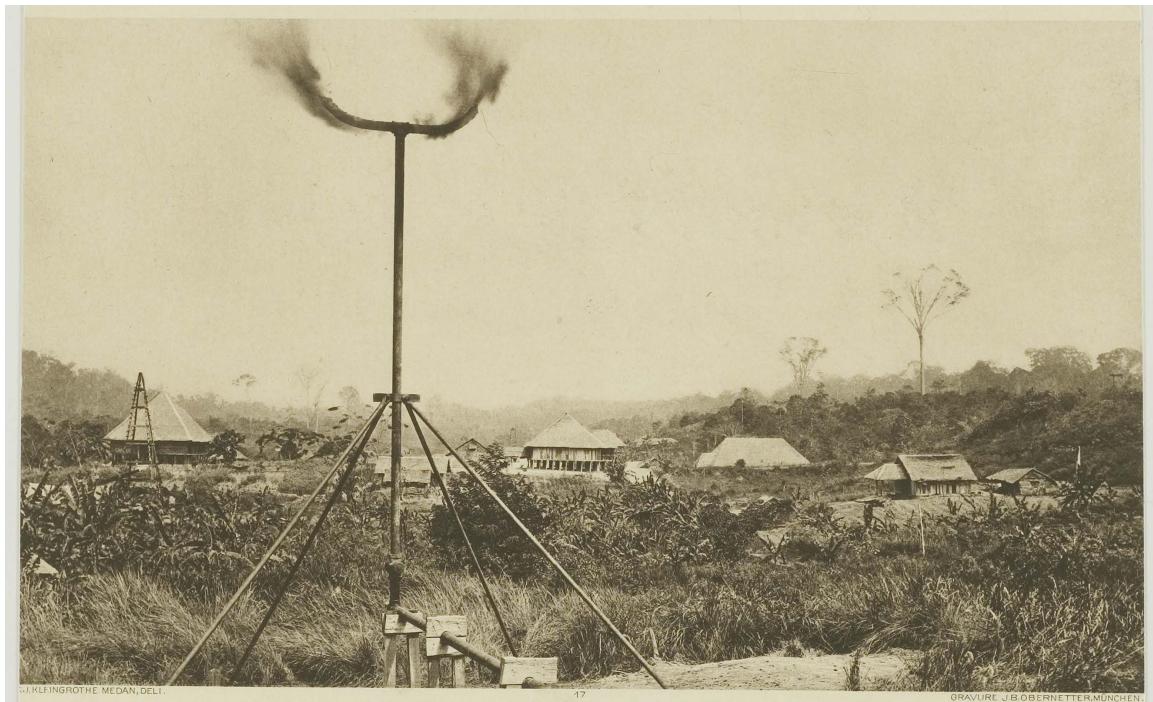


Figure 10.8: peak oil



**Figure 10.9:** Burning of natural gases at an oil drilling site, presumably at Pangkalan Brandan, East Coast of Sumatra - circa 1905

## **Chapter 11**

# **Nuclear and Geothermal Sources of Energy**

TBD<sup>1</sup>

### **11.1 Geothermal**

### **11.2 Nuclear**

**11.2.1 What is nuclear fission?**

**11.2.2 Mix Safety Records**

**11.2.3 Types of Reactors**

**11.2.4 Fuel Sources and Processing**

**11.2.5 Waste and Storage**

---

<sup>1</sup>Statement of Contributions:



## Part II

# Lateral Transport



## Chapter 12

# Weather and Climate in East Asia

MUDIT MURARKA AND BEBE PHORNPRAPHA<sup>1</sup>

### 12.1 Introduction

In 2011, Thailand was hit by its deadliest floods in over 50 years. 815 people were killed, and the Thai economy lost over USD 30 billion. These floods occurred as a result of record rainfall over northern and central Thailand in early 2011. At the time, the Thai government may have thought of the flooding as a disaster which was to be met by relief efforts in the short term ([TCCS, 2013](#)). However, it is now becoming clear that the flooding in 2011 may not have been an isolated incident.

Research suggests that the floods have a return period of about 10-20 years, i.e. a similar flood event is likely to occur within the next two decades([Gale and Saunders, 2013a](#)). This occurrence may have been exacerbated by climate change; anthropogenic greenhouse gas emissions in Thailand have been tied to increased rainfall over the country, and, as these emissions increase, the potential for catastrophic flooding events will increase as well ([Promchote et al., 2016](#)).

Before we learn more about the dynamic nature of the climate system, we will need to better appreciate how weather systems work, in general, and in East Asia in particular. At the foundation, is the fact that weather is driven by the incoming energy from the sun. By heating the surface of the earth and the atmosphere, water is driven into the atmosphere and creates storm fronts, monsoons, and precipitation patterns – which are then influenced by ocean currents and land masses.

#### 12.1.1 What is meteorology and what are meteorological factors? What is their history?

Meteorology can be defined as the field of study relating to the atmosphere, atmospheric phenomenon, and the effects of the atmosphere on our weather ([National Geographic Society,](#)

---

<sup>1</sup>Statement of Contributions:



**Figure 12.1:** A US Navy helicopter observes the impact of the 2011 floods in the Bangkok area (Source: Unknown).

(2012). It is an ancient field of study, dating back to at least the time of the Greeks. Aristotle is often called the father of meteorology. He wrote a volume titled Meteorology in 350 BCE that examined, among other things, the atmosphere, geology, geography and hydrology (Aristotle and Barnes, 1984). His successor, Theophrastus, also produced important work on meteorology, and contemporary ancient civilizations in Babylon and China also had an awareness of the discipline (Teague and Gallicchio, 2017).

But the scholars in the Mediterranean were not the only ones thinking about the weather in systematic ways.<sup>2</sup>

Technological innovations have brought the discipline a long way since then. For example, in the US, the US Army capitalized on the telegraph to better to make some predictions about weather for the war effort of the Civil War (TBD, 2018). In the United States, the history of weather observation networks operated by National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) and its predecessor organizations goes all the way back to 1644 (US Department of Commerce and Administration, 2006).

The discipline was especially transformed in the aftermath of the Second World War, when it became rooted in mathematics and physics, rather than the more qualitative field it was before (Harper, 2012). Today, most of the world depends on weather observation networks consisting of a combination of ground observers, who function largely as they did in ancient times, along with weather stations, satellites, radar, balloon borne sounding equipment and numerical weather prediction models (Cahir, 2018). These networks produce daily weather forecasts, which are a staple of modern life.

However, not all weather observation networks are as effective as NOAA's. For instance, there is a lack of spatiotemporally dense meteorological observations in Southeast Asia, outside of the interior of Thailand (Koh and Teo, 2009).

### 12.1.2 The relationship between weather and climate

According to the National Snow and Ice Data Center in the United States, the definition of weather is the day-to-day state of the atmosphere, and its short-term variation in minutes to weeks. The definition of climate is the weather of a place averaged over a period of time, often 30 years. So, by continuously monitoring the weather, we can receive an indication of the state of our climate. Conversely, climate can tell us about statistical weather information, which can in turn tell us about the average weather, along with the range of weather extremes, for a location. By analyzing climate, we can then understand long term climate changes. This will help us figure out how to protect people from climate change (Snow and Ice Data Center, 2018).

Additionally, to predict the weather in the future, weather models can be used. Models take observations from weather observation networks and incorporate observations such as air pressure, temperature, humidity, and winds to produce the best estimate of current and future conditions in the atmosphere. So, models output the most likely scenario, which gives us short term weather forecasts, which can last up to a week. For long term weather forecasts, statistical relationships between large scale climate signals and precipitation and temperature generate predictions of what the weather will be like in one month to six months. Climate predictions can be made by using global climate models. However, climate models cannot use

---

<sup>2</sup>We need to acknowledge other groups who have thought about the weather in their rituals, and other ways of knowing, Tibet? India? China? Mayan? etc?

observations, as there are no observations from the future yet; thus climate models tend to be less reliable than weather models ([Goddard Institute for Space Studies, 2018](#)).

## 12.2 Weather and Climate in East Asia

### Climate in South East Asia

The climate of South East Asia itself might be contributing to climate patterns and variability. The weather in South East Asia is controlled by two dominant factors: the wet and the dry season (also called monsoon season).

However, countries that are situated near the equator, such as Indonesia, Malaysia, southern Philippines, and Singapore have a tropical equatorial climate, and are consistently humid and wet throughout the year. These countries do not experience variability in climate, and so they mostly do not experience typhoons, nor do they experience cool dry periods either.

### Monsoons

#### What is a Monsoon?

A Monsoon is the seasonal change in the direction and pressure of the prevailing winds that can lead to precipitation in a region. They are also the cause of wet and dry seasons in South East Asia. ([author?, 2008](#))

#### How do Monsoons form?

Monsoons always blow from cold areas, where there is high pressure, to warm areas, where there is low pressure. The summer Monsoon and the winter Monsoon determine the climate for most of India and Southeast Asia. ([author?, 2008](#))

#### Summer Monsoon/Southwest Monsoon

In Summer, between the months of April and September, the Asian landmass is warmer than the ocean, and so the density and the pressure of the air over the ocean is higher than the land. This causes a large amount of wet oceanic air to blow into inland Asia from the ocean, generating continuous precipitation and a humid climate. In the summer months, the Asian inland is heated up by the sun, causing temperatures to rise quickly. This creates an extensive low pressure region, leading the air to intensly flow from the Indian Ocean towards the land, leading to torrential rainfall in countries such as Vietnam, Thailand, and Myanmar. ([author?, 2008](#))

#### Winter Monsoon/North East Monsoon

In winter, the Asian landmass is colder than the ocean, and so the density and the pressure of the air over the land is higher than the ocean. This causes a large amount of cold dry air to blow over the land until it reaches the ocean. Thus, the winter monsoon is called the

dry season, as the air that is travelling across the land to the ocean does not receive any moisture until it reaches the ocean. When the cold front edge arrives at the sea area near Taiwan via the East China Sea, along with it comes the Northeast Monsoon with substantially strong winds. The Winter Monsoon normally lasts from October to April and starts to blow from the northeast. These winds start in the air above Mongolia and northwestern China. However, Winter Monsoons are less powerful than Summer Monsoons in Southeast Asia, in part because the Himalaya Mountains prevent much of the wind and moisture of the monsoons from reaching the coast. (author?, 2008)



**Figure 12.2:** The cycle of summer and winter monsoons in Asia. In the figure, the arrows represent moisture-laden winds.

### Impacts of Monsoons

Billions of people around the globe depend on Monsoon rains for their yearly rainfall. For example, farmers in Myanmar's Rakhine state need the rainfall from the Wet Monsoon season to cultivate paddy rice, especially since the Summer Monsoon brings in 80% of the subcontinent's rainfall. As agriculture contributes to 37.8% of Myanmar's economy, the arrival of the Monsoon season is crucial to the livelihoods of many citizens of Myanmar (Greatbatch et al., 2013).

However, intense rainfall in these regions can cause massive flooding and mudslides, destruction of crops, and kill hundreds of people in floods. For example, during extreme Monsoon weather in Myanmar in 2015, more than 1.4 million acres of farmland was flooded. Twelve out of the country's 14 provinces were affected, with northern and western regions suffering the hardest blows. 385,000 households have been displaced by the floods, and landslides have destroyed thousands of homes (Greatbatch et al., 2013).

### Monsoons in the future

According to the IPCC, all models and all scenarios project an increase in both the mean and extreme precipitation in the Summer Monsoon. This could lead to major flooding events, especially in Southeast Asia. ([Kitoh, ???](#))

### Effect of Monsoons on typhoons

Typhoons normally occur during the same time as the Summer Monsoons, as they are strongest between the months of June through November in Southeast Asia. Wind pulls moisture from the warm oceans, and as the moisture floats upwards it is converted into warm air and heat. The heat causes more air to flow to the center of the storm, causing evaporation. Finally, all of the heat and air flow towards the eye, creating a typhoon. Due to warming seas, the destructive power of the typhoons that wreak havoc across Indonesia and the Philippines has intensified by 50% in the past 40 years. Researchers warn that global warming will lead giant storms to become even stronger in the future, threatening the large and growing coastal populations of those nations. Typhoons can have devastating impacts in east Asia. In 2013, typhoon Haiyan hit the Philippines, killing at least 6,300 people and affecting 11 million ([UNISDR, 2012](#)).

### Chapter Exercise: Monsoons

Now that you know something about Monsoons, try drawing a diagram to demonstrate the difference between the Summer and the Winter Monsoon. Print out a map of South East Asia and add arrows to the map to show the different directions that the wind will move in!

### El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO) cycle

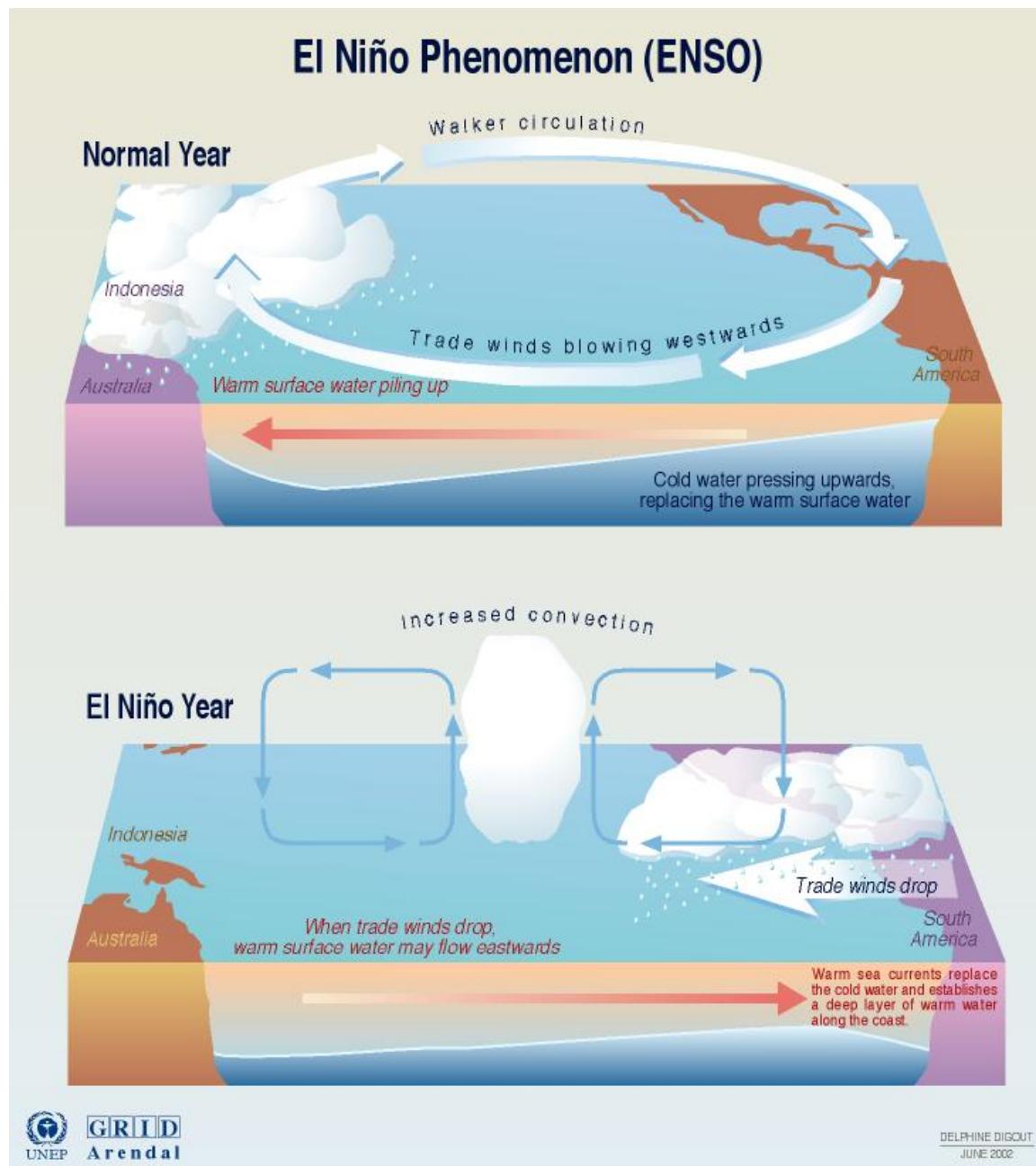
The ENSO cycle is a scientific term that describes the fluctuations in temperature between the ocean and atmosphere in the east-central Equatorial Pacific area. The cycle is a natural phenomenon and includes El Niño and La Niña, with both processes occurring from December to February ([??, ???](#)).

### What is El Niño

El Niño occurs every three to five years and begins when warm water in the western tropical Pacific Ocean shifts eastward along the equator toward the coast of South America. Normally, this warm water pools near Indonesia and the Philippines. However, during an El Niño, the Pacific's warmest surface waters sit offshore of northwestern South America. This leads to Southeast Asia's hot and dry climate, which usually occurs around the month of April, as the moisture is shifted towards South America ([??, ???](#)).

### Effects of El Niño

One of the strongest El Niño events in Southeast Asia happened in 1997. Then, fires, fueled by a drier rainy season in many parts of Indonesia, burned an estimated 5 million hectares, creating a haze that affected most of the region. The dry weather also caused massive food shortages in



Indonesia, causing the government to import 5.8 million tons of rice due to drought and fire-related crop failures. Looking at the model predictions for the next 50 years, the researchers

found that the impact of climate change could amplify the effects of each El Niño, leading to temperature records being broken more often. However, researchers also mentioned that preparedness could allow societies in this region to cope with climate change. Since El Niño can potentially be predicted a few months in advance, this could help societies prepare for extreme drought ([Jenner, 2016](#)).

### What is La Niña

La Niña is the cooling of sea surface temperatures in the eastern and central Pacific. In general, this triggers wetter weather in South-East Asia and parts of Australia. Unusually strong, eastward-moving trade winds and ocean currents bring cold water to the surface east of the pacific ocean, a process known as upwelling. This leads to high air pressure in the east pacific, leading the air to flow to the western pacific, where the air pressure is lower and the temperatures are higher. These low-pressure zones contribute to increased rainfall in Southeast Asia ([??](#), [???](#)).



**Figure 12.4:** Flooding in Jakarta, Indonesia

### Effects of La Niña

Persistent heavy rains from La Niña led to flooding and landslides throughout Indonesia in late December 2007 and early January 2008, resulting in numerous fatalities and crop losses. The most heavily populated island in the chain, Java, was the hardest hit, and at least 112 people died on the island from flooding or landslides. ([Jenner, 2016](#)).

### 12.2.1 Is the weather a boring topic?

Oscar Wilde wrote.... there is nothing so boring as the weather... Is this true?

As in the case of flooding in Thailand, good meteorological data has the potential to save lives. Since 1980, the number of natural disasters in the world and the number of people affected has risen. However, thanks to effective forecasting, the number of people killed has not risen. Today, an increasing number of people are situated in regions of high risk for weather hazards. Developing countries are going to be exposed to more extreme weather events due to climate change. The world's population is exploding, city populations are exploding and weather/climate related diseases are now killing a million people every year. Most of the people killed are children under the age of 5 in developing countries. Weather and climate forecasting is essential to combat all these problems ([Rogers and Tsirkunov, 2013](#)). For instance, weather forecasting was used to predict Typhoon Bopha in the Philippines in 2012, which helped mitigate a climate disaster. Through forecasting, Filipino citizens had information to wind speed, location of incoming weather disturbances, and possible amounts of precipitation. By predicting the Typhoon, the early warning Typhoon systems helped evacuate 167,000 people to shelters. Forecasting will continue to be incredibly important for this region in the future, as the IPCC predicts that that climate change is likely to cause tropical cyclones to become more severe with greater wind speeds and more intense precipitation. ([UNISDR, 2012](#))

In addition to the fact that effective meteorological systems can help save lives through effective hazard forecasting, they also have considerable economic benefits. These benefits result from the improved economic decisions that stakeholders can make with the knowledge that comes from meteorology. For instance, sound climatological meteorological information can help farmers make decisions about what crops to grow and when to grow them. It can help the energy industry in optimizing the generation, transmission and distribution of power. All in all, hydrometeorological information has significant impacts in the management of road traffic, railway traffic, the maritime industry, aviation, construction, energy, air quality and agriculture. A Swiss study found that the cost-to-benefit ratio of meteorological services is likely between 1:4 and 1:6 ([Frei, 2009](#)). A Chinese study found that the value of the benefit of the Chinese Public Weather Service was at least 46 billion Chinese Yuan in 2006 ([Yuan et al., 2015](#)).

### 12.2.2 The Dynamic Climate System

According to the IPCC, mean annual temperature is likely to have increased over the past century over most of the Asian region. Furthermore, it is likely that the numbers of cold days and nights have decreased and the numbers of warm days and nights have increased across most of Asia since about 1950 ([Hijioka et al., 2014](#)). For this section, we will be analyzing trends in increasing rainfall and temperature in two countries in Asia: Thailand and Singapore. This was achieved by downloading the climate data from NOAA, and using the data to evaluate to evaluate long term climate patterns for these two countries.

Singapore is affected by increasing temperatures, as from 1972 to 2014, the annual mean temperature has increased from 26.6°C to 27.7 °C. As Singapore is an island, data was downloaded from the only weather station with data on temperature and precipitation ([National Climate Change Secretariat, 2018](#)).

Thailand is also affected by rising temperatures, and Average annual temperatures have significantly risen by about 0.95°C between 1955 and 2009. Thailand has 53 weather stations, and

so five stations were picked in different areas of the country for an overall climate assessment of the country. For both Thailand and Singapore, data was first collected from 1950 until the present day.

### Why were Singapore and Thailand chosen?

Singapore and Thailand were chosen because both countries differ geographically and economically, yet are in close proximity to each other. Thailand is much larger than Singapore, and has a size of 513,120 km<sup>2</sup>, compared to Singapore's 719.9 km<sup>2</sup>. Due to Thailand's large size, it is split up into 76 provinces, with most of the development and economic resources concentrated in the capital, Bangkok. However, Singapore is a island, and so the development and economic resources are mostly tantamount for the entire country. Both countries are found near the equator and are 945 km away from each other, and so the climate for Singapore and Thailand, especially Southern Thailand, should be similar to each other. By analyzing these two countries, climate and rainfall can be compared between a small developed and a large developing country.

### Which areas were chosen within each country?

As Singapore is a small island with one weather station, that station was chosen.

However, five geographically different locations with different degrees of development in Thailand were chosen in order to get an accurate representation of weather in the country. Bangkok (a urban area in the center), Chiang Rai (a urban-rural area in the North West), Sakon Nakhon (a rural area in the North East), Phuket (a urban area in the South West), and Nakon Si Thammarat (a urban-rural area in the South East) were chosen. These stations are illustrated in Figure 12.5

### What months were picked?

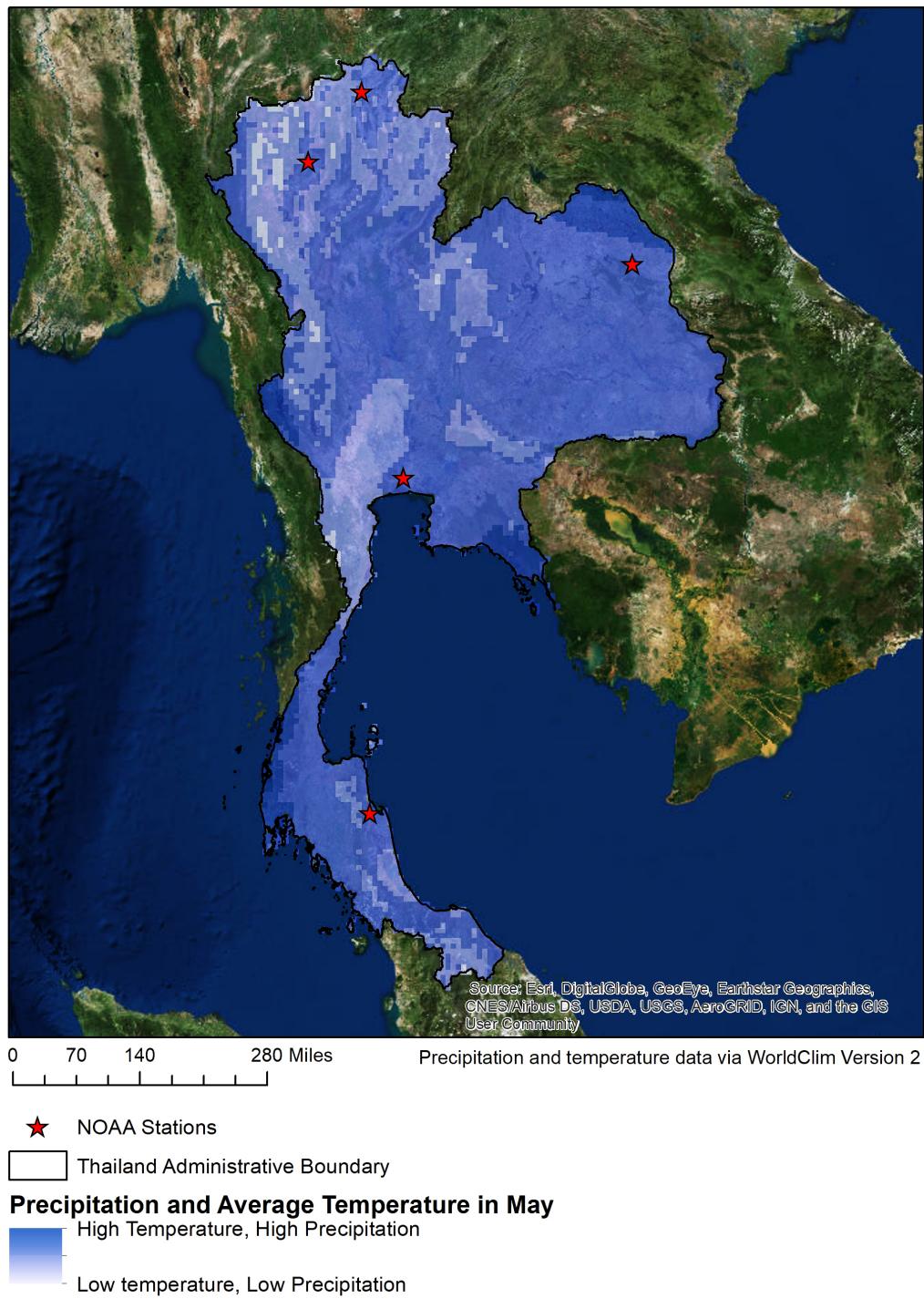
For Singapore, January, May, and November were selected. These months were chosen because January is the coldest month, May is the hottest month, and November is the rainiest month ([National Environment Agency, 2018](#)).

For Thailand, January, April, August were selected. These months were chosen because January is the coldest month, April is the hottest month, and August is the rainiest month ([Holiday Weather, 2018](#)).

## 12.3 Climate Data

### 12.3.1 What is graphed?

A linear regression of Monthly Average Rainfall and Maximum Temperature are graphed below. Monthly Average Rainfall can analyze changes in precipitation, and Maximum Temperature can attest to change in temperature. Maximum temperature is chosen over average temperature because there is not a strong enough trend for average temperature. Reasons for this are not apparent, and more research should be done on this subject.



**Figure 12.5:** The NOAA stations in Thailand chosen for analysis in this chapter. They are depicted on top of a raster which shows the prevailing average temperatures and humidity in Thailand in May. This is to help indicate why these particular NOAA stations were chosen.

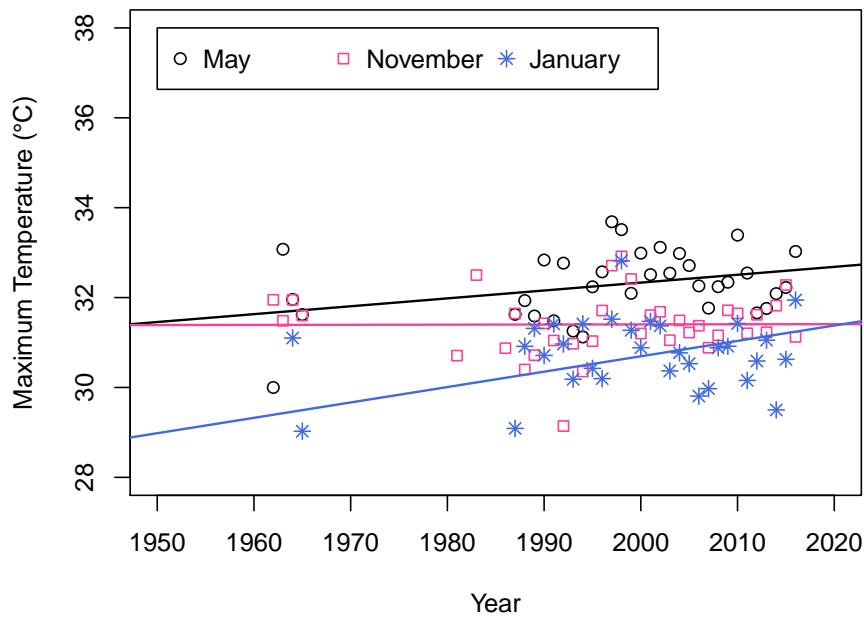
### 12.3.2 Overall Temperature Trend

From 1880, global surface temperature has increased 0.07 °C every 10 years. However, the past century has seen a warming of 0.74°C. ([Down to Earth Climate Change, 2018](#)). Both Thailand and Singapore have seen an increase in maximum temperature.

#### Singapore

Major climate models show that Singapore has warmed gradually by about 0.25 deg C in each decade from 1948 to 2015, and that temperatures will continue to increase. In our temperature analysis, we found out that Singapore's maximum temperature has been increasing from 1950 to the present day for the months of May, November, and January. For all three months, there are positive upwards trend line and statistically significant results. The p-value for all three months is less than 0.05, and thus statistically significant. [citepsingaporeweather??](#)

[Loo et al. \(2015\)](#)



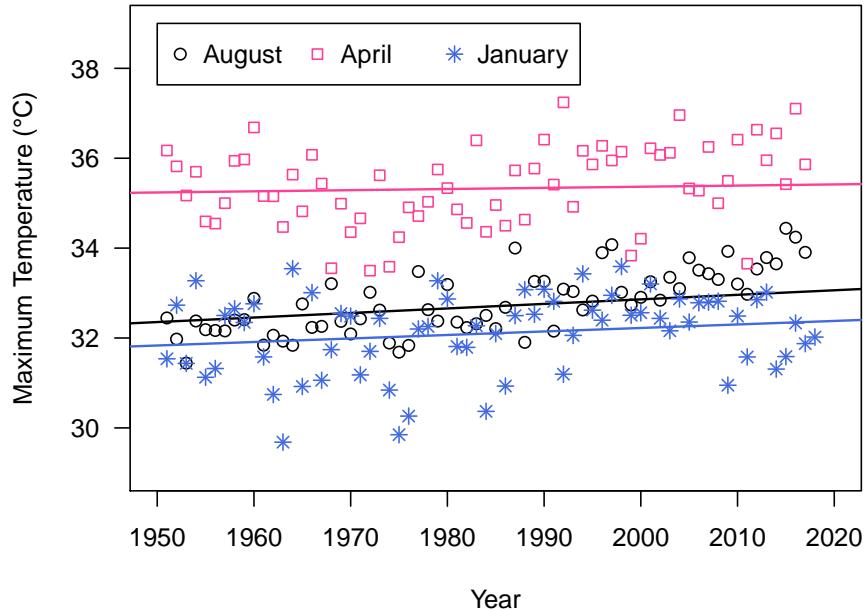
**Figure 12.6:** Average Monthly Maximum Temperature in Singapore

#### Thailand

Major climate models indicate a temperature rise for the whole country of Thailand, particularly the central plain and lower North-eastern region. However, there is no specific literature

analysing the picked regions. Projections show that mean temperatures in central Thailand, including Bangkok, has been increasing by 0.4 in each decade from 1958 to 2014. In our temperature analysis, we found that Thailand's maximum temperature is increasing overall for all five locations, however, not every month is statistically significant. On the other hand, Bangkok seems to show a significant trend which is congruent with the predictions that central Thailand's temperature will be increasing. (???, ???)

**Bangkok:** Bangkok's maximum temperature has been increasing from 1950 to the present day for the months of April, August, and January. All three months have steep upward positive trend lines, and all three months are statistically significant, as the p value for all months is lower than 0.05.



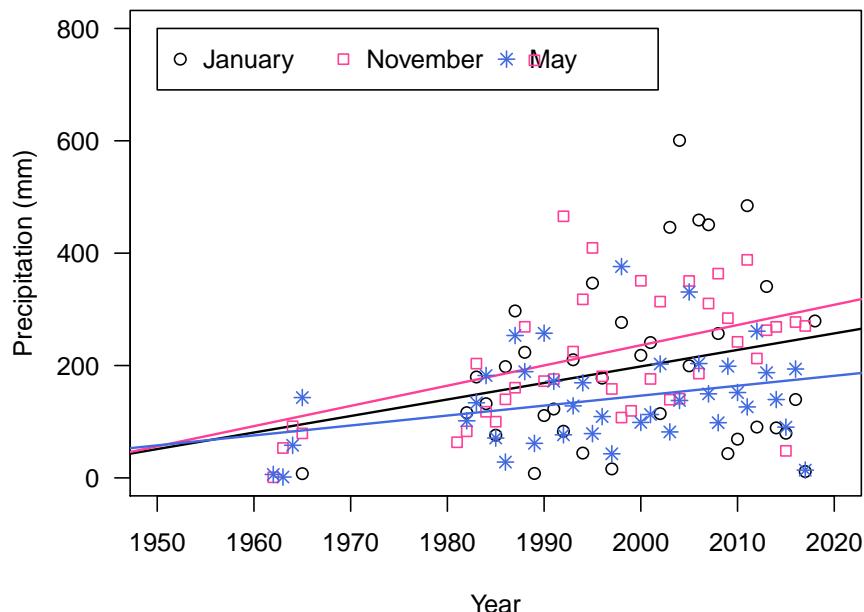
**Figure 12.7:** Average Monthly Maximum Temperature in Bangkok

### 12.3.3 Overall Rainfall Trend

According to the IPCC, the annual total wet-day rainfall in South East Asia has increased by 22 mm per decade, while rainfall from extreme rain days has increased by 10 mm per decade. Furthermore, between 1955 and 2005 the ratio of rainfall in the wet to the dry seasons increased, and there has been an increasing in frequency of extreme rainfall events in the northern parts of Southeast Asia (TBD, 2018).

### Singapore

Rainfall in Singapore has become more intense in recent years. According to Singapore's Second National Climate Change Study, there has been a general uptrend in annual average rainfall from 2192mm in 1980 to 2727mm in 2014 ([National Climate Change Secretariat, 2018](#)). In our rainfall analysis, we found out that Singapore's monthly average rainfall has been increasing from 1950 to the present day for the months of May, November, and January. For all three months, there is a positive upwards trend line and statistically significant results. The p value for all three months is less than 0.05, and thus statistically significant.



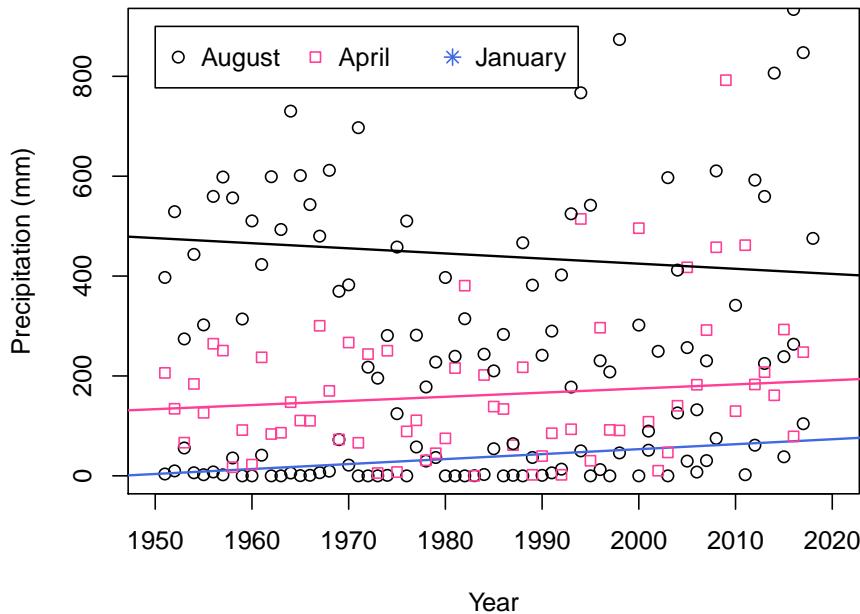
**Figure 12.8:** Monthly Average Rainfall in Singapore

### Thailand

There has been no significant change of rainfall volume in Thailand, and the total amount of rainfall between 1955 and 2014 did not change significantly. However, there has been evidence that there has been increasing rainfall in the Northeast and Gulf region as well as the Bangkok area. ([???](#), [???](#)). In our rainfall analysis, there is no clear trend for Thailand's monthly average rainfall. For some areas, rainfall is increasing, and for some areas rainfall is decreasing. However, Bangkok's monthly average rainfall is increasing.

**Bangkok:** Bangkok's monthly average rainfall has been increasing from 1950 to the present day for the months of August and January. Both these months have steep upward positive

trend lines, and are statistically significant, as the p values are lower than 0.05. However, August which has a downward negative trend line, has a p value larger than 0.05, which is statistically insignificant.



**Figure 12.9:** Monthly Average rainfall in Bangkok

#### Exercise 28 Temperature and rainfall graphs

Now that you know what temperature and rainfall graphs look like, pick your own region and download data for it from NOAA (<https://www.ncdc.noaa.gov/cdo-web/>). Make your own temperature or rainfall graph! Does it agree with the temperature and rainfall trends of Bangkok and Singapore?

#### 12.3.4 Why are temperatures rising in Bangkok and Singapore?

##### The Urban Heat Island Effect

The Urban Heat effect occurs when heat and air temperature in densely built urban areas are higher than in the surrounding areas. This occurs when there is a lack of vegetation and soil moisture, which would normally be used to absorb the sunlight to evaporate water through photosynthesis. The heat that is absorbed during the day through buildings, roads, and other types of construction is reemitted during the night. The heat's energy contributes to raising the temperature of the surfaces and air around the urban areas. Furthermore, buildings can

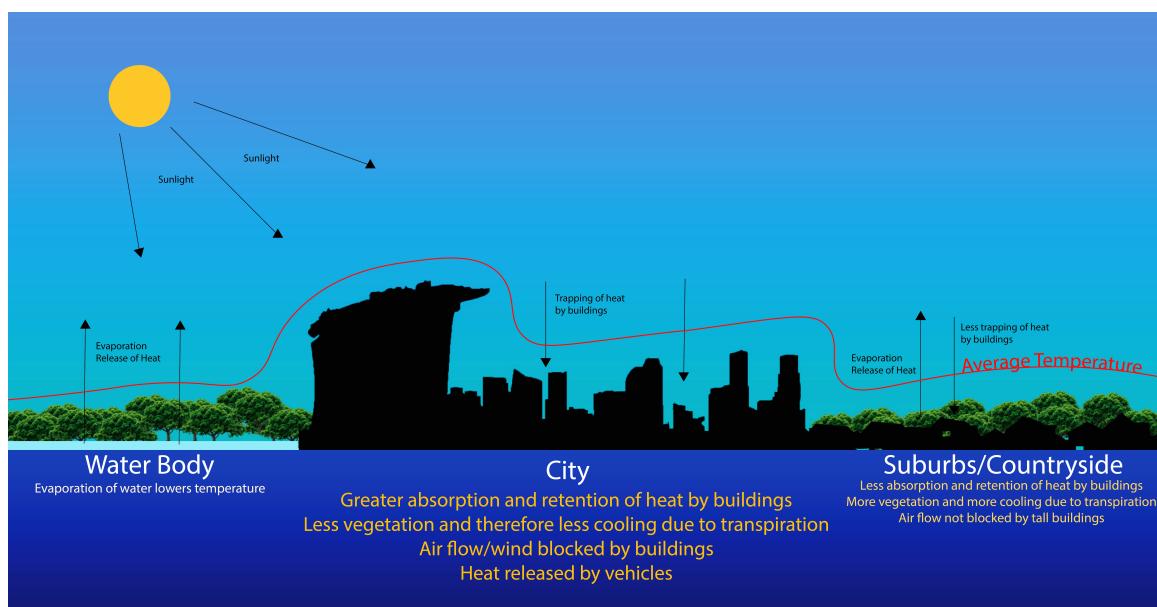
block wind, a cooling factor, which further leads to higher temperatures in cities. ([Filho et al., 2018](#)).

Singapore has shown to be affected by the urban heat island effect, as shown in our graph by the steep increase in maximum temperature. According to a study published by the National University of Singapore, the high rise central district has a 2 °C higher temperature at night compared to other areas with low-rise buildings. As the maximum temperature graph shows, maximum temperature in Singapore has been steeply increasing ([National Climate Change Secretariat, 2018](#)).

Bangkok, the most developed and urban area in Thailand, is also affected by the urban heat island effect, as shown in our graph by the steep increase in maximum temperature. According to a study published by Istanbul University, Bangkok has a 0.8°C higher temperature than the surrounding states of Bangkok ([???](#), [???](#)).

### Chapter Exercise: The Urban Heat Island Effect

On a map, mark the cities, suburbs, rural areas and water bodies in the region where you live. Using the internet, find the average temperatures for these places in any given month and add this information to your map. Can you see the urban heat island in effect, as in Figure 12.10?.



**Figure 12.10:** The Urban Heat Island Effect

#### 12.3.5 Does the observed variability have anything to do with human forcing?

In recent times, increasing awareness of the phenomenon of anthropogenic climate change has led to an increased effort to examine the role of human forcing in observed weather conditions and long-term climate trends. Greenhouse gas forcing has been tied to the patterns of

anomalously high rainfall in the pre-Monsoon season leading up to the great flood of 2011 in Thailand, and thus these greenhouse gas emissions functioned as one of the forcing mechanisms for the flood itself ([TCCS, 2013](#)).

## 12.4 What are the socio-economic implications for the countries analyzed?

Our climate affects everything around us, including vital life indices. As long term climate change trends are being uncovered in meteorological data, a large number of studies are being published on the impact of these changes on essential factors such as food availability, the spread of diseases, water access and infrastructure.

### 12.4.1 Healthcare

In Thailand, the occurrence of liver fluke exhibits a strong positive correlation with precipitation and temperature, two factors which are being impacted by climate change ([Suwannatrakul et al., 2016](#)). Temperatures in Thailand are clearly rising, as shown in Figure [12.7](#), and the patterns of precipitation in the country are changing, as shown in Figure [12.9](#). It is likely that liver fluke may exacerbated by ongoing climate changes.

In Singapore, the number of dengue cases was found to be correlated with temperature, but no statistically significant relationship was found with precipitation or humidity ([Pinto et al., 2011](#)). Temperatures in Singapore are also clearly rising, as shown in Figure [12.6](#) which means the number of dengue cases is forecasted to increase as well.

The comparison of Singapore to Thailand here can also be thought of in terms of their relative wealth. Singapore is situated in a region where vector-born diseases like dengue are endemic. However, because it is wealthy, the effects of climate change have not caused too many public health problems there. In fact, Singapore is the country which has made the most progress towards achieving health related UN Sustainability Goals (?). Thailand, on the other hand, is developing nation. It is much more prone to the occurrence of a public health crisis through increased occurrence of both insect-borne and water-borne diseases. In fact, the World Health Organization predicts that over 70 million people in Thailand will be at a significant risk of contracting malaria ([Unknown?, 2017](#)).

### 12.4.2 Water access

Singapore is widely known as a country with a water scarcity problem. Climate change is expected to create significant sea level rise and temperature increase in Singapore by 2100, which will further stress the country's water resources, and have led it to establish a National Climate Change Committee, which has enacted policies to protect the country from coastal erosion, flooding and loss of vital water supply ([Bhullar, 2013](#)).

Thailand does not have as much of a water scarcity problem, but significant degradation of forests and projected land use changes in the near future, combined with projected decreases in rainfall, are expected to decrease the yield and increase the sediment load of the Thadée watershed, a major source of water for agriculture and household use in the Nakhon Srithammarat Province in Southern Thailand ([Trisurat et al., 2016](#)).



**Figure 12.11:** The water pipeline at the Johor-Woodlands Causeway which brings 54% of Singapore's water supply from Malaysia([Shaaz, 2008](#))

### 12.4.3 Food

An analysis of the climate indices that most affect rice production in Southeast Asia, specifically the onset of the wet season and nighttime temperatures, found that over the period from 1971-2012, nighttime temperatures were found to have increased, as shown in Figure 12.7, which has had an adverse effect on rice yields ([Marjuki et al., 2016](#)).

Poorer farmers are especially vulnerable to changing climate. An economic analysis of the impact of climate change on rice yields in Thailand which integrates soil science crop modeling, weather simulators, and global climate change modeling found that overall, farmers are unable to neutralize the adverse effects of the more extreme climate change. However, they are able to cope with milder climate change and even benefit slightly from small increases in rainfall. While most farmers manage to adjust to milder climate change, poor farmers are less able to do so" ([Felkner et al., 2009](#)). Farmers' perceptions of changes in temperature and precipitation are generally consistent with the trends seen in Figures 12.6 and 12.9. Agricultural experiences, farm income, training, social capital, and effective climate adaptation communication are all significant factors in increasing the probability of them adapting to these climate changes ([Arunrat et al., 2017](#)).

The mountains of Northeast Thailand mostly see farming of low-value crops, which can be grown equally well in the lowlands. A study found that these mountains have a distinct advantage for the production of high-value fruits and vegetables, and planting of these high value crops represents a significant opportunity for agricultural development ([Choenkwan et al., 2014](#)). However, these fruits and vegetables are suited for temperate climates, and the potential for their cultivation may be impacted by the warming trend shown in figure 12.7.

Singapore, unlike Thailand, is not an agricultural hotspot. It imports over 90% of its food , which makes it particularly vulnerable to fluctuations in global food supply and prices ([National Climate Change Secretariat, 2018](#)).

#### **12.4.4 Biodiversity**

Changes in climatic conditions are having a massive impact on biodiversity all over the world. Because species evolve over long periods of time to live within certain ranges of temperature, it is projected that by 2050, 25% of all species will become extinct just because of rapid, anthropogenically induced climate change ([for Health and the Global Environment, 2018](#)).

Many species have responded to climate change by shifting their habitation ranges polewards, to avoid the warmer temperatures developing in pervading their original habitats. In Thailand, protected areas, which are on average 2°C cooler than the surrounding regions, are becoming increasingly vital for conservation of organisms such as tropical butterflies. Their importance is being further accentuated by the fact that most protected areas in Thailand are located at higher elevations, making them well suited to become habitats for species of butterflies migrating from lower elevations ([Klorvuttimontara et al., 2011](#)).

Biodiversity conservation measures in Southeast Asia may be impeded by a lack of willingness on the part of the local populations. For instance, a study conducted in households in China, Vietnam, the Philippines and Thailand found that people place a low priority on the conservation of animals such as marine turtles, and would be unwilling to accept additional taxes for conservation measures. This is likely a result of the fact that per-capita incomes in the region are generally not as high as in Western nations, and people do not trust government expenditure systems. This makes biodiversity conservation in the region something that may require international, rather than just local attention ([Nabangchang-Srisawalak et al., 2016](#)).

For more on biodiversity and climate change, see **Chapter 6: Biomass**.

#### **12.4.5 Air Quality**

Air quality is closely related to meteorological factors such wind speed, humidity, temperature, rainfall and solar radiation. In Singapore, air quality standards have generally met the standards of the United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and the World Health Organization (WHO) ([Velasco and Roth, 2012](#)). However, it is affected by the Southeast Asian Haze, which results from the slash and burn practices prevalent in the forests of Indonesia. This haze can make the air in Singapore dangerous to breathe. Understanding and combating this haze requires us to look into aerosol transport in the region using weather research and forecasting models ([G et al., 2017](#)). The El Nino climate phenomenon described in [12.3](#) can create exceptionally dry conditions in Indonesia, which can exacerbate forest fires there, and, by extension, the haze ([BBC, 2015](#)). For more on the Southeast Asian Haze, consider reading **Chapter 7: Peatlands**.

In Bangkok, a study has shown that there is a positive correlation between the trend of increasing temperatures seen in Figure [12.7](#) and PM2.5 concentrations. The city'sair quality is already below the standards set by Thailand'sPollution Control Department, so climate change is exacerbating the problem. These increased PM2.5 concentrations are correlated with increased occurrences of respiratory and circulatory diseases ([Langkulsen and Rwodzi, 2018](#)).



**Figure 12.12:** A NASA satellite image of forest fires over Indonesia, which cause the Southeast Asian Haze ([BBC, 2015](#))

### 12.4.6 Infrastructure

The dual challenge of both mitigating and adapting to the effects of climate change are significant ones. Policymakers and scientists need to seek inspiration from a variety of sources to design effective solutions. Incorporation of local and indigenous knowledge into climate change mitigation strategies is essential for this purpose.

For instance, small island communities in Indonesia, the Philippines and Timor Leste, which are particularly vulnerable to the effects of climate change such as sea level rise, have extensive knowledge of climate mitigation strategies. These include the use of local materials for reinforcement of coastal structures, the use of alternative sources of food during hazards, and the use of knowledge of celestial bodies and the behavior of animals for local systems of weather forecasting. They even have traditional seasonal calendars ([Hiwasaki et al., 2014](#)). The incorporation of the knowledge of these communities into more widespread systems of western-centric science could go a long way towards developing effective climate change mitigation and adaptation strategies for coastal communities throughout the region.

Larger cities face their own set of climate-related infrastructure challenges, such as that of the urban heat island effect, which is likely to be exacerbated by climate change, and will require a variety of architectural and technological innovations to mitigate ([Filho et al., 2018](#)). Additionally, cities like Singapore and Hong Kong, which already require significant electrical energy, may see an increase of between 3-5% in the demand for electricity for every °C of temperature increase due to global warming ([Ang et al., 2017](#)). The problem of increased demand for energy can be extended to entire countries as well; a study of specific climate and socioeconomic scenarios indicated that annual temperatures in Thailand will rise by 1.74 to 3.43 °C by 2080, implying increases in Thai peak electricity demand of 1.5-3.1 % in the 2020s, 3.7-8.3% in the 2050s, and 6.6-15.3% in the 2080s ([Parkpoom and Harrison, 2008](#)).

Slow coolant phaseout could worsen warming April Reese See all authors and affiliations

Science 09 Mar 2018: Vol. 359, Issue 6380, pp. 1084 DOI: 10.1126/science.359.6380.1084

For more on sea level rise, a significant infrastructural challenge that results from climate change, see **Chapter 9: Sea Level Rise and Subsidence**.

## 12.5 The Policy Context

### ASEAN

Singapore and Thailand are both part of the Association of Southeast Asian Nations (ASEAN), as well as other international initiatives such as the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC). ASEAN, in particular, enables cooperation on responses to climate change in a South East Asian context ([ASEAN, 2015](#)). For instance, businesses in some ASEAN countries have incorporated greenhouse gas emission reductions and fuel efficiency into their operations as they are aware of climate change and its potential impacts on ASEAN countries, which have fragile natural environments ([Amran et al., 2015](#)). However, ASEAN members so far have done little to curtail instances of cross-border pollution, and there are other limitations inherent in the organization's climate policy.

Individual states within ASEAN have often done better than the organization as a whole. For instance, Malaysia has a long-run carbon emissions policy which is superior to that of ASEAN

as a whole. It will, in the long run, enhance Malaysia's economy through the stimulation of the green technology sector, and the mitigation of the future costs of climate change related damage ([Rasiah et al., 2016](#)).

Pan-ASEAN policies have been effective in some areas, however. For instance, its member countries signed the ASEAN Agreement on Transboundary Haze Pollution in 2012 in order to prevent, monitor, and mitigate fires. This was done in order to combat the transboundary haze pollution described before. Even Indonesia, the source of most of the fires, signed the agreement in 2014. A related measure, the ASEAN Peatland Management Initiative (APMI), has also been implemented over the period from 2006-2020. The APMI was developed to guide ASEAN countries to sustainably manage peatlands and reduce fires and associated haze within the framework of the ASEAN Agreement on Transboundary Haze Pollution. Under the ASEAN umbrella, Singapore has been able to explore sanctioning Indonesia in order to get it to crack down on the agricultural practices responsible for the Southeast Asian Haze ([Robinson, 2017](#)).

### 12.5.1 Change at the community level

In regions that are especially vulnerable to climate change effects, adaptation is already taking place at the community and household level. There is an established history of grassroots movements in Southeast Asia, and this can enable the linking of both autonomous and planned adaptation planning to disaster risk management planning. National governments and international agencies can achieve good results just by supporting such grassroots level efforts. Funding under initiatives such as the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC) and the Kyoto Protocol is crucial ([Francisco, 2008](#))

### 12.5.2 International Perspective

All Southeast Asian nations are party to the Paris Climate Agreement signed in 2015. Given the significant challenges faced by countries in the region due to sea level rise, transboundary haze, extreme weather events and food insecurity, the Global Climate Risk Index states that four of the top ten countries most vulnerable to climate change are in this region; Thailand, Vietnam, Myanmar and the Philippines ([World Resources Institute, 2017](#)). The standards set in the Paris Agreement, if met, will help these nations with some of their problems. However, even if global warming is kept below 2 °C over pre-industrial levels by 2100, Southeast Asia may still see a sea-level rise of about 75 centimeters, which would be catastrophic. The countries in the region may well have to go above and beyond the standards set in the Paris Agreement. The agreement will be helpful in that developed countries that signed it have pledged to support developing countries in their climate change adaption to the tune of USD 100 billion (92.3 billion euro) annually from 2020 on. This financial support will likely go a long way towards helping developing Southeast Asian nations curtail carbon emissions and develop clean technologies ([Deutsche Welle, 2015](#)).

## 12.6 Conclusion

For better or worse, our existence on this planet has caused significant changes to the planet's vital systems. The planet is now continuously responding and evolving in response to our

actions. Sometimes, these responses can be destructive. Meteorology, and the closely related field of climatology, are crucial because they help us determine future weather and climate expectations. In a world where climate is changing rapidly, it is crucial for us to effectively observe and model climatological variables, so we can stay ahead of the curve. This is especially important in East and Southeast Asia, where climate change is driving changes in socio-economic sectors vital to our lives, such as healthcare, food, water access and agriculture.

Going forward, we need to continue to expand our capacity to observe and predict our weather and climate. This is so that we can stop more natural disasters before they happen, predict climatic changes that will affect vital life sectors and industries, and, perhaps most importantly, continuously remind ourselves of the need to adopt sustainability measures. It is fair to say that while climatological and meteorological data is essential in helping us survive today, it is even more essential in helping us plan for tomorrow.



# Chapter 13

## Floods and Droughts: Thailand

CELINE LIU, HENG JIA MIN, JEFFREY TONG, NATHALIE BAER CHAN, AND SONIA KAUR SAMBHI<sup>1</sup>

### 13.1 A Cycle of Floods and Droughts in Thailand

From July to December 2010, as the rainy season reached its peak across Thailand, floodwaters from the north began inundating the central provinces, threatening to head south into Bangkok in what would turn out to be the worst flood disaster to hit Thailand in half a century ([Gale and Saunders, 2013b](#)). Just months before this incident, Thailand was still in the midst of battling its most serious drought in decades ([Garbero and Muttarak, 2013](#)).

This cycle of floods and droughts, a common feature of life in Thailand, may seem puzzling given Thailand's annual rainfall far exceeds its annual water demand, according to Sumet Tantivejkul, Utokaput Foundation chairman. During the Sustainable Water Management Forum 2016, Tantivejkul highlighted, “[Thailand receives] around 754,000 million cubic metres of rain per year. That is more than enough for the annual water demand of around 100,000 million cubic metres... However, only 5.7% of rainfall, 70,370 million cubic metres, empties into the reservoirs.”

However, how floods and droughts arise are less to do with the volume of precipitation than the uneven distribution of precipitation across timescales and geographical locations, especially as it relates to the El Niño Southern Oscillation and the Indian Ocean Dipole. These distribution patterns interact with Thailand's water resource management approaches such as dams and water use to, resulting in floods and droughts of varying severity.

---

<sup>1</sup>Contribution Statement: All authors contributed equally to the paper in the form of research, writing, section editing and compilation of the bibliography and all sources. All authors were assigned to work on 2 chapters each. CL worked to put together the Introduction and Chapters 2 and 4. HJM worked to assemble Chapters 1, 2 and 6. JT worked on Chapters 3 and 5. NBC worked on Chapters 3 and 4. SKS worked on Chapters 5 and 6. JT worked on overall edits for style, language and logical flow to ensure consistency and comprehensibility of the final document.



**Figure 13.1:** Figure 1: Floodwaters reach waist deep during the 2011 Thai Floods (Source: TBD).

## 13.2 Mechanisms of Floods and Droughts

Floods are generated when a stream's discharge exceeds the capacity of its channel, resulting in water inundating land that is normally dry. There are three main types of floods: coastal (surge) floods, pluvial (surface) floods and fluvial (river) floods. Coastal floods are caused by the inflow of saltwater (usually the result of a large storm or tsunami) from the ocean to inland areas, while pluvial and fluvial floods are caused by the runoff of water from the land, usually during excessive rain or sometimes ruptured dams (Maddox, 2014).

Floods take hours or even days to develop. When there is rain, stream discharge gradually increases until it reaches a peak flow. Floods emerge when the stream discharge crosses a particular threshold (determined by the channel's capacity), and can be categorised as flash floods when the time lag between intense rainfall and peak flow is very small (Figures 2 and 3; Skinner and Murck, 2011). Stream discharge is the product of the velocity, depth and width of water flowing through it. Channel capacity can be modelled by different equations, but Manning's equation (1891) which applies to uniform flow in open channels is commonly used:

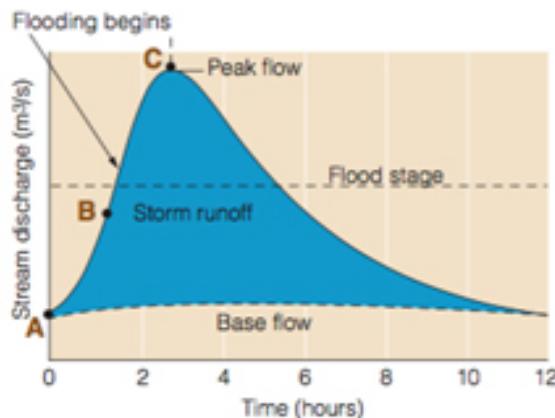
$$Q = VA = \left(\frac{1}{n}\right)AR^{2/3}\sqrt{S} \quad (13.1)$$

Where (in SI Units):

- Q = Flow rate ( $\text{m}^3/\text{s}$ )
- V = Velocity ( $\text{m}/\text{s}$ )
- A = Flow area ( $\text{m}^2$ )
- n = Manning's roughness coefficient ( $\text{s}/\text{m}^{1/3}$ ) the higher the coefficient, the greater the resistance to flow
- R = Hydraulic radius ( $\text{m}$ )
- S = Channel slope (unitless)

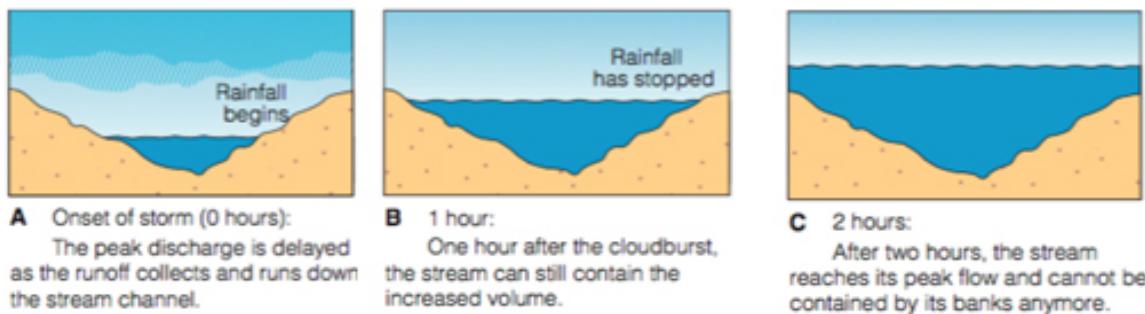
Floods are classified based on their theoretical likelihood of occurring in a given time period. For example, a large destructive flood that is expected to happen only once every century is classified as a hundred-year-flood. What this theoretical likelihood translates to, in reality,

is a one-percent chance that such a flood would happen in any given year. Unlike tectonic hazards, the occurrence of a flood of great magnitude does not reduce the probability of a flood of similar magnitude happening in the next year. Instead, after one flood season, the extensive ground saturation may make it even more difficult for water to infiltrate, increasing the likelihood of a flood in the next flood season (United States Geological Survey, 2018).



\*Base flow is the "normal" flow of water in a stream, contributed by groundwater.

**Figure 13.2:** Hydrograph representation of the formation of floods (Source: Skinner and Murck, 2011).



**Figure 13.3:** Figure 3: Visual representation of flood formation in a waterway (Source: Skinner and Murck, 2011).

Drought as a physical phenomenon is difficult to define, as over 150 published definitions of drought in the 1980s (National Drought Mitigation Center (U.S.), 2018) might testify to. Wilhite and Glantz (1985) have classified the definitions into four approaches: meteorological, agricultural, hydrological, and socio-economic. Meteorological drought, which defines drought on the basis of a degree of dryness in comparison to an expected, normal amount, is what most researchers and articles refer to when discussing drought. Meanwhile, agricultural drought refers to drought as it relates to agriculture, such as its effects on plant water demand, soil water deficits, reduced groundwater, or topsoil moisture levels. Hydrological drought, which

can lag behind meteorological and agricultural drought, concerns precipitation deficiencies in particular components of the hydrological system, such as groundwater and reservoir levels, streamflow and soil moisture. Socio-economic drought approaches then define drought with reference to demand and supply, such as Hoyt's definition (1936) of drought as occurring "when precipitation is not sufficient to meet the needs of established human activities".

While we broadly refer to drought as a physical phenomenon arising from lower-than-average rainfall (meteorological drought) in this paper, we acknowledge that other definitions of drought contribute to the significance of drought to Thailand as well. For example, agricultural drought is important for Thailand where agriculture contributes 8-10% of its GDP every year (The World Bank, 2018), and where droughts can contribute to as much as 20 billion baht (634.3 million USD) losses in purchasing power among farmers, as in the case of the 2016 flood crisis (Thaiturapaisan, 2016). Hydrological drought is concerning given the 25 river basins and 254 sub-basins that Thailand possesses (The World Bank, 2011), which result in downstream effects that cannot be accounted for merely by local precipitation levels. Finally, socio-economic drought is concerning particularly for a country whose water demand is likely to continue increasing with urbanisation and economic development (The World Bank, 2011).

Interestingly, the probability of drought can increase following a flood, by disturbing the ability of water buffers to store the excess water as a water source during water-scarce periods. For example, during periods with normal levels of precipitation, water can infiltrate the ground as groundwater, but during a flood most of the precipitation enters the sea directly as runoff. Over time, the reduced groundwater supply can contribute to agricultural drought.

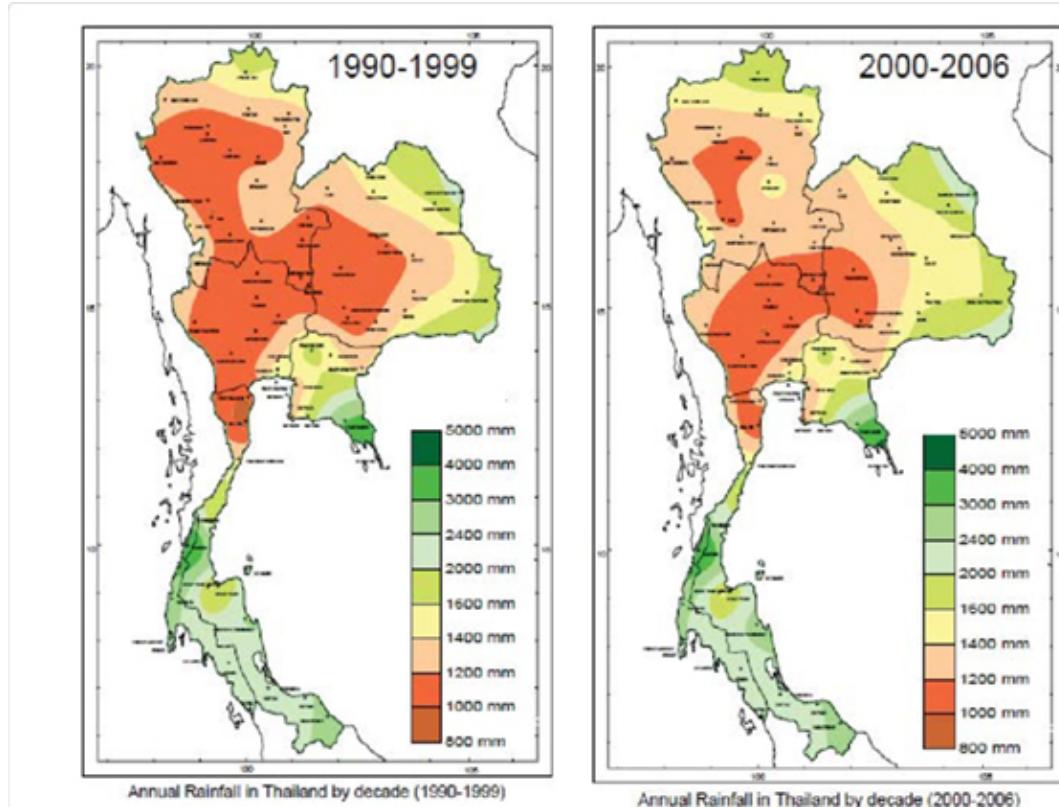
### 13.3 Flood and Drought Meteorology

#### General Precipitation Trends

Thailand is located between latitudes 6 and 20 degrees north. Its southern region experiences an equatorial climate with even rainfall throughout the year. Central and northern regions are characterized by a tropical monsoon climate with more clearly defined dry and wet seasons.

In particular, the climate of Thailand may be divided into three seasons as followed (Meteorological Department of Thailand):

- Rainy or southwest monsoon season (mid-May to mid-October). The southwest monsoon prevails over Thailand and abundant rain occurs over the entirety of the country, with 80% of the average annual rainfall occurring during this period. During the wettest months of August and September rivers carry high runoffs and can overflow, leading to flooding (Figure 4). In extreme rainfall years the flooding may spread along Thailand's main water artery, the Chao Phraya River basin, towards Bangkok, the country's capital, before emptying into the sea.
- Winter or northeast monsoon season (mid-October to mid-February). This is the mild period of the year in northern Thailand but the wettest point in the Southern East Coast, especially during October to November.
- Summer or pre-monsoon season (mid-February to mid-May). This is the transitional period from the northeast to southwest monsoons (Figure 4). The weather becomes warmer, especially in northern Thailand. Droughts are prevalent in the north during this



**Figure 13.4:** NOTE: Find better reference than this one.

period, while the south is generally protected due to its equatorial climate and more even rainfall.

### 13.3.1 Periodic Sea Surface Temperature Cycles and Precipitation

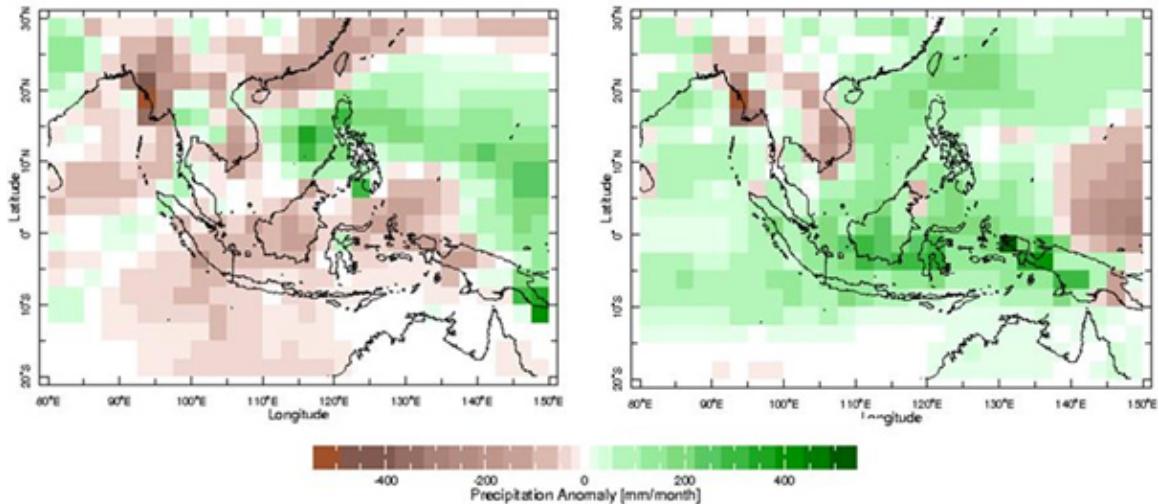
These annual weather patterns may also be exacerbated or moderated by periodic cycles such as the El Niño Southern Oscillation (ENSO) and Indian Ocean Dipole (IOD).

ENSO is an irregular periodic variation in winds and sea surface temperatures over the tropical eastern Pacific Ocean. The warming and cooling phases of sea temperature changes are known as El Niño and La Niña respectively. The two periods last several months each (typically occurring every few years) and their effects vary in intensity. In Southeast Asia, the impact from La Niña is typically wetter-than-normal rainfall conditions, especially during the Southwest Monsoon period (June-September). In contrast, during El Niño years, the region generally experiences less-than-normal rainfall. This trend, however, is especially inconsistent within Thailand (see Figure 5).

However, Buckley, B. et. al (2007) claim evidence for the long-term influence of ENSO on the variability of the Northern Thailand monsoon, and suggest that El Niño conditions significantly contribute to drought in the region. Using a multi-sample teak tree-ring chronology,

they discovered the occurrence of two periods of greatly diminished rainfall in the 1700s, corresponding to periods of anomalously warm sea surface temperature (SST) in the central and eastern tropical Pacific.

More research needs to be conducted in this area to determine the true effects of ENSO on precipitation in Thailand.



**Figure 13.5:** June to October rainfall anomaly composite for El Niño years (left) and La Niña years (right) between 1979 and 2016. Note that particularly in Thailand, El Niño years do not necessarily correlate with lower precipitation and vice versa. However, a general trend across most of Southeast Asia still remains.

Likewise, the Indian Ocean Dipole (IOD) is an irregular oscillation of sea-surface temperatures in which the western Indian Ocean becomes alternately warmer and then colder than the eastern part of the ocean. A negative phase sees greater-than-average sea-surface temperatures and greater precipitation in the eastern Indian Ocean region (such as in Thailand), with a positive phase having the opposite effect (Figure 13.6). An average of four positive-negative IOD events occur during each 30-year period with each event lasting around six months (Saji and Yamagata, 2003).

Chansaengkrachang et al. (2011) report that strong negative (positive) IOD may cause higher (lower) Thai rainfall in corresponding months based on 1979–2008 monthly rainfall observations. However, the study observed a weaker correlation (overall  $r = 0.11$ ) than that found with the following year's summer monsoon ( $r = 0.31\text{--}0.38$ ) indicating a delayed association (Bridhikitti, 2013).

These periodic sea surface temperature cycles may interact and either exacerbate or moderate one another in any given period of time. Both must be taken into account in order to determine their combined effect on precipitation.

NOTE: Should be using [Ashok et al. \(2003\)](#); [Hu et al. \(2015\)](#)

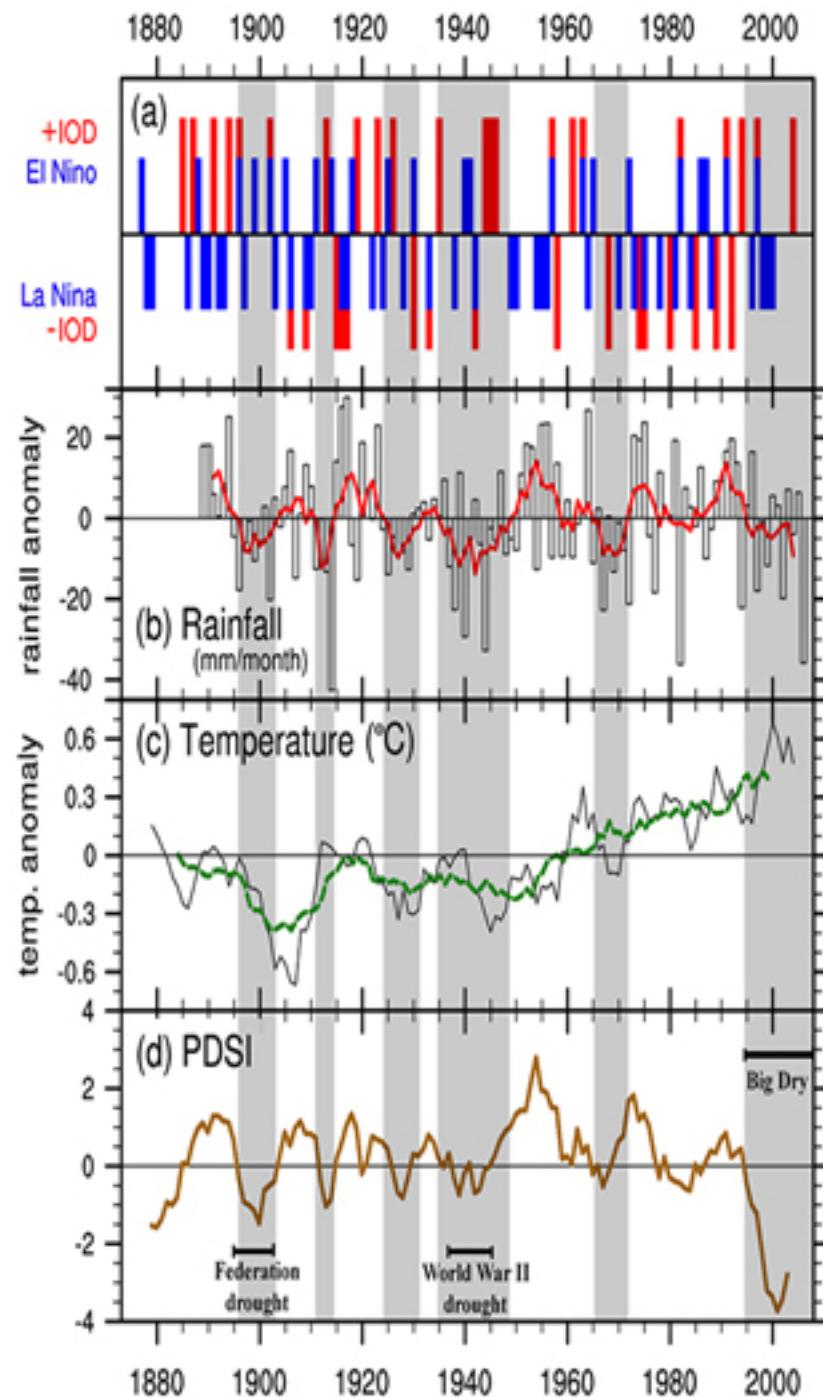
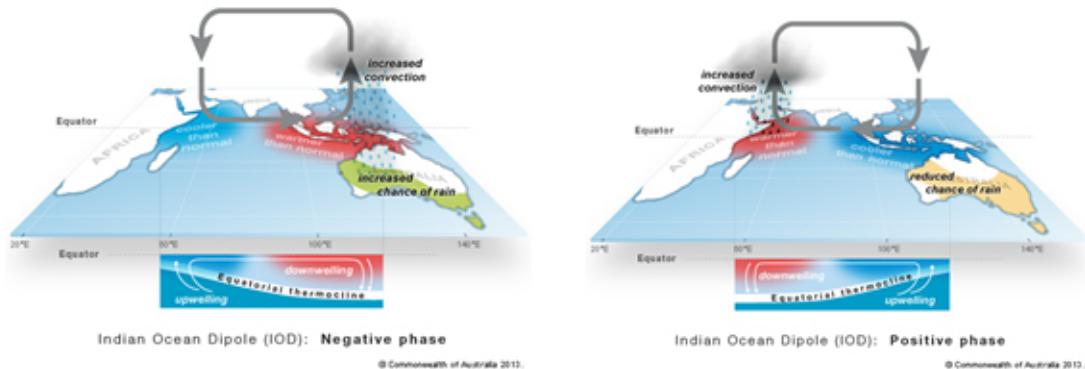


Figure 13.6: Caption and Source needed



**Figure 13.7:** Effects of the Indian Ocean Dipole on Temperature and Precipitation

### 13.3.2 Climate Change and Long Term Precipitation Trends

According to Marks (2011), climate change in Thailand will likely take three forms: (1) increased mean daily maximum temperatures in Thailand by as much as 1.9 degrees Celsius by 2050 (The World Bank, 2009), (2) a continued decrease in the number of rainy days (Sharma, 2014), and (3) precipitation events (storms and floods) that, while short, are intense and destructive (Anthes et al., 2006); Dasgupta et al., 2009). Meanwhile, the exact impacts of climate change on tropical cyclones, ENSO events and the Asian monsoon are indeterminate (Singhrattna et al., 2005). East and Central Thailand will observe decreases in total rainfall, while the Northeast and Gulf region, together with the Bangkok metropolitan area, are likely to experience increasing rainfall (Naruchaikusol, 2016; Limsakul & Singhruck, 2016).

Sea level rise is one significant effect of these climatic changes. The Gulf of Thailand has been rising a quarter of a centimetre every year. With the low elevation of coastal regions (which are an average of only a metre above sea level), (Marks, 2011) and land subsidence exacerbated by intensive groundwater use, Bangkok along with the rest of Central Thailand along the coast is likely to suffer prolonged flooding. The coastal floods that result from sea level rise will also result in higher salt levels in the soil (saline intrusion) (South East Asian – Global Change System for Analysis, Research and Training, 2009).

Recall the example of the 2010 drought and 2011 flood in the introduction of this chapter (more details in Box 1). In the 2010 drought, the Mekong River water level was sufficiently low that villagers shared how they could sometimes walk across the river – an event which ‘has never happened before’ (Leitsinger, 2010). The above weather patterns of the annual and interannual distribution of precipitation have become more unpredictable as a result of climate change, resulting in the increasing likelihood of rare events.

## 13.4 The Geography of Floods and Droughts in Thailand

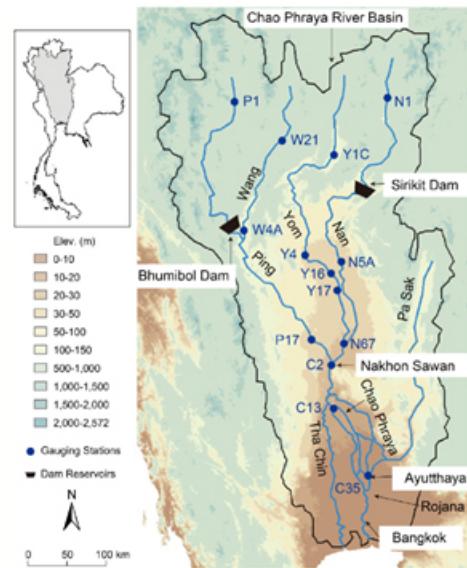
This section explores the geographical distribution of flood and drought events, and examines their implications on the lives of individuals potentially vulnerable to such hazards.

NOTE: Can't find [Dasgupta et al. \(2009\)](#)

### 13.4.1 Spatial Distribution of Floods

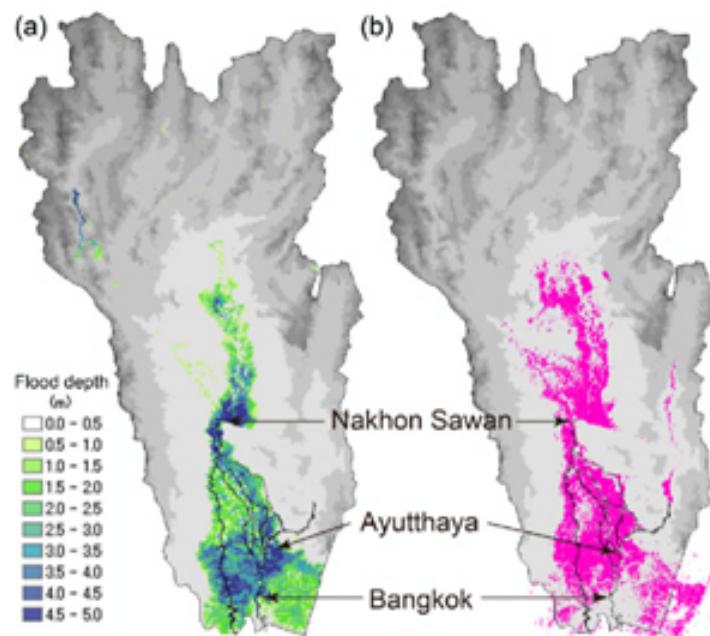
Rainfall patterns, elevation and local infrastructure significantly determine the location of flood events in Thailand. The densely populated lowland regions of Thailand, including the Bangkok Metropolitan Region, most notably contain the outlets of major river basins which drain water from the northern, higher-elevation regions of the country. Along coastal regions, tidal floods from the Gulf of Thailand and stormwater from local rainfall simultaneously contribute to the production of floodwaters.

Examining the Chao Phraya River Basin in detail reveals the vulnerability of the capital and primate city of Bangkok: the city sits not only at the confluence of multiple streams originating from the highland regions of Northern Thailand, but is also located along the coast where tidal floods from the Gulf of Thailand may prevent basin drainage. Most of the city is located in the floodplains slightly above mean sea level on both banks of the river (Figure 8) (Klongvessa & Chotpantarat, 2014; Sayama et al., 2017). Simulations based on rainfall data, topography and satellite imagery reveal that flooding in the Chao Phraya River Basin is predicted to occur most severely within Bangkok and lower Nakhon Sawan – regions with the greatest flood depths (Figures 13.8 and 13.9) (Sayama et al., 2017).



**Figure 13.8:** Map of the Chao Phraya River Basin (Sayama et al., 2017)

Furthermore, flood depths could also be potentially increased by land uses which further exacerbate land subsidence. Owing to historic groundwater extraction and pumping, land subsidence has been most prominent in the regions within and immediately surrounding Bangkok. The rate of subsidence in the capital, however, has consistently decreased (from 1 to 2 cm/year from 1978-2007 to approximately 0.97cm/year currently) due to government efforts to curb groundwater extraction (Poonam et al., 2010). The average rate of land subsidence is further predicted to decrease by 10% per year assuming the continuity of efforts. (Poonam et al., 2010). Despite such interventions, subsidence is still expected to occur, with increasingly greater proportions of the Bangkok Metropolitan Region found at lower elevations by 2050



**Figure 4** Inundation extent estimated (a) by the emergency response-type prediction (Lv1) and (b) by satellite remote sensing [provided by UNITAR's Operational Satellite Applications Programme (UNOSAT)] as of 13 October.

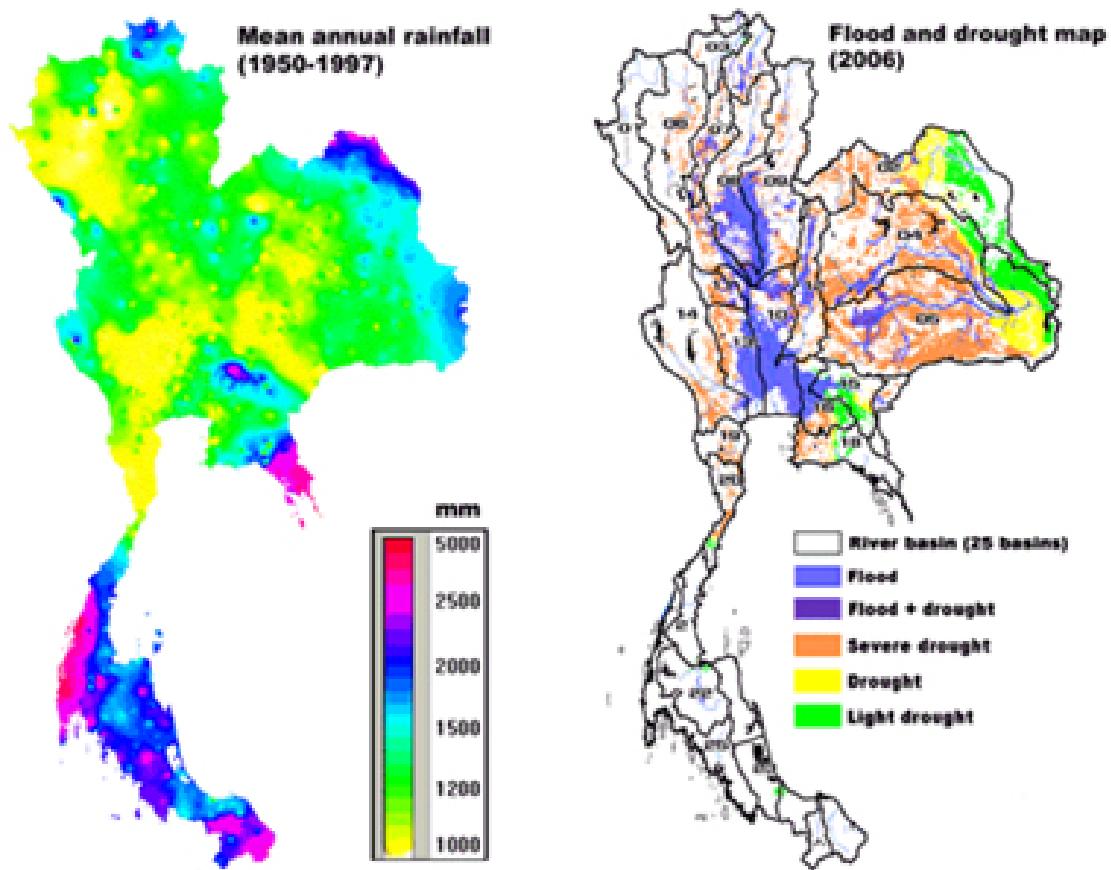
**Figure 13.9:** Flood Depth Simulation in the Chao Phraya River Basin based on rainfall data and predictions, river basin characteristics (which include evapotranspiration, dam outflow and storage volume, tidal effect, river cross section), and elevation (Sayama et al., 2017)

(Poonam et al., 2010). The predicted inundation area within Bangkok and neighboring Samut Prakarn during a 1-in-30 year flood, for instance, is expected to increase from 550 km<sup>2</sup> (2008) to 734 km<sup>2</sup> in 2050 (Poonam et al., 2010).

A particular region of interest that has experienced the most severe flood events is the province of Chachoengsao to east of Bangkok. The province is host to the largest land area of inland shrimp farms in Thailand, with more than 8000 shrimp farms and 29,157 shrimp ponds (Seekao & Pharino, 2016). However, shrimp farms in the province have been vulnerable to frequent flooding: Chachoengsao sits in the low-elevation Bangpakong River Sub-Basin and is located downstream of the confluence of Prachinburi and Nakhonnayok Rivers. As a consequence, floodwaters in 2011 for instance have severely inundated shrimp farms in the region, contributing to shrimp farm economic losses of approximately 109 million Baht (US\$3.41 million) nationally (Seekao & Pharino, 2016). Researchers also note that the province has recently experienced repeated flooding almost annually, and highly vulnerable areas correlate with the areas most severely inundated by floodwaters in 2011 (Seekao & Pharino, 2016). Flood vulnerability maps for the region and its aquaculture industry, however, remain scarce, while information about local vulnerability has been limited and inadequately communicated to farmers in the region (Seekao & Pharino, 2016).

### 13.4.2 Spatial Distribution of Droughts

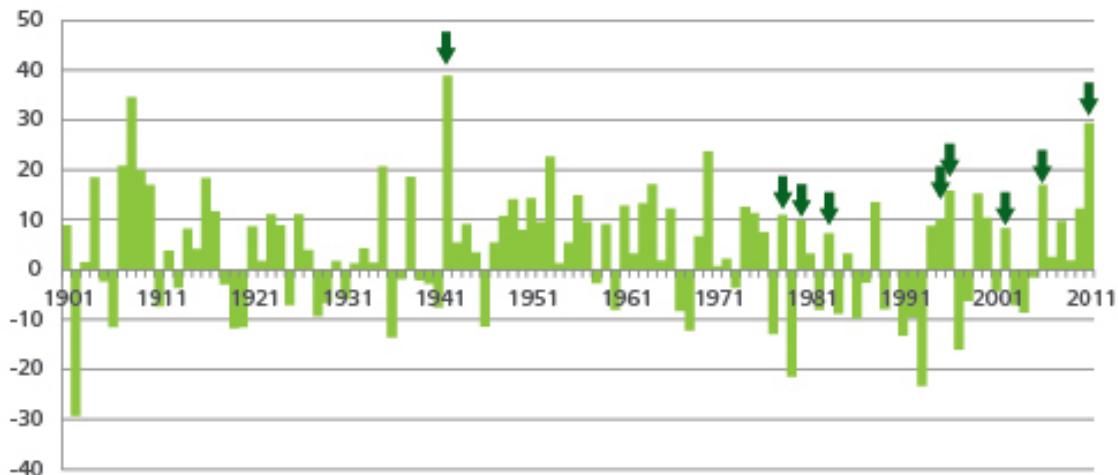
Due to the diverse topography and geography of the land, certain areas of Thailand are naturally prone to periods of delayed rainfall and water shortage, particularly under global climate conditions of increasing stochasticity. However, the majority of drought damage is caused by the geopolitical distribution of water rather than the quantity itself, as suggested by the lack of correlation between rainfall maps and disaster occurrence (Figure 10). In fact, drought incidence is a function of numerous factors including humidity, soil moisture, length of drought, drought area, drainage basin, land use, and water infrastructure. In recent years, interplay between the latter two factors has led to increased drought vulnerability, as residential areas, economic activities, and agriculture have expanded beyond the capacity or physical reach of existing irrigation systems (UN-Water Country Report, 2014).



**Figure 13.10:** Comparison between mean annual rainfall and the incidence of floods and droughts (Chitradon, 2009).

Thailand is often discussed with reference to four distinct geographic regions – Northeast, North, Central, and South – that experience water insecurity according to the vulnerabilities created or exacerbated by land use, unequal infrastructure investments, and water consumption. The Northeast is characterized by mountains, the large Khorat plateau, the Mekong

River, and grasslands, and is substantially less industrialized than the rest of the country (Geography of Thailand, 2014). Although the typically arid Northeast receives a medium-high volume of rainfall during the wet season and even floods in its river basins, existing water infrastructure developments including dams frequently fail to sustain sources through the extensive dry season, when the area's water basins diminish by around 82% (UN-Water Country Report, 2014). Bordering this region is the North, whose Ping, Wang, Yom, Nan river basins hold much more fertile soils than the Northeast and are generally less drought-prone, but were hit hardest during the 2016 droughts (Fox, 2016). This may be because of the quantity of water-intensive agricultural activities in the North as well as the water security disparity between irrigated and non-irrigated lands (UN-Water Country Report, 2014). Similarly, the fertile Central region's Chao Phraya basin has many irrigated lands and development projects due to the commercial success of Bangkok, but intense rice paddy cultivation and other industries have increased Central Thailand's water demand above its dry season capacity (Geography of Thailand, 2014). The Southern region experiences the heaviest annual rainfall in the country, but due to lacking infrastructure and intensive farming can lose up to 85% of its water at its driest (UN-Water Country Report, 2014).



**Figure 13.11:** Is this water demand? by month? year? Put axis labels, reference (see above...)

Of Thailand's land area of 510,890 sq km, only 64,150 sq km of land were irrigated as of 2012, leaving 87% of the country without reliable water sources, including a significant portion of its farmland (CIA World Factbook). However, even in the most irrigated lands, dramatic increases of industrial water use threaten the agricultural sector and consequently the Thai economy (Thaiturapaisan, 2015).

### 13.5 The Politics of Floods and Droughts in Thailand

Within the context of Thailand, political actions and contestations by multiple agents play significant roles in determining the outcomes of disaster preparedness, response, water resource

Part	Rainy Season	Drought Season	: cubic - metres
North	35,791.2	7,633.5	
North-East	41,432.6	7,607.5	
Middle	16,139.6	5,510.6	
East	14,992.2	2,008.4	
South	59,811.2	8,700.7	
Total	168,166.8	31,450.7	

**Figure 13.12:** Average Annual Quantity of Water in Regional River Basins in Thailand (Source: Draft of Master Plan About Drought in Thailand)

Year	Area of drought (Province)	Vulnerability		
		People	Agricultural area (acre)	Value (US.\$)
2007	66	16,754,980	540,047.2	6,109,203.1
2008	61	13,298,895	209,999.6	3,200,888.5
2009	62	17,353,358	237,773.6	3,337,853.2
2010	64	15,740,824	686,741.2	43,598,997.7
2011	55	16,560,561	324,672.0	4,062,376.2
2012	52	15,234,597	594,604.8	12,297,552.2
2013	58	9,066,185	1,708,918.8	89,802,429.3

**Figure 13.13:** Statistics of Major Droughts between 2007 and 2013 (Source: Department of Disaster Prevention and Mitigation)

management, and mitigation. We explore in this section the influence politics has had in the management of floods and droughts.

### 13.5.1 An Overview of Thai Politics and History

Thailand is unique in Southeast Asia as the only country with no colonial past, maintaining an absolute monarchy system until 1932. Following this, it saw sixty years of military rule before the first democratic coup of 1973, which kickstarted a series of successive oscillations between military and civilian governments. In total, Thailand has had 25 general elections and 19 coups d'état since 1932, with 12 of them successful. At the same time, the monarchy remains deeply influential despite their limited constitutional power. As such, the politics of power hangs in a precarious balance between three main actors – the military, the civilian government and the monarchy – and this instability has undermined efforts to establish an effective disaster risk management policy.

### 13.5.2 The Influence of Political Instability of Water Infrastructure and Disaster Incidence

Flood and drought management is currently fragmented across various ministries and agencies such as the Royal Irrigation Department (RID), the Electricity Generating Authority of Thailand (EGAT), the Meteorological Department, the Department of Water Resources (DWR), the National Disaster Warning Centre (NDWC), the Ministry of Public Health (MPH) etc. In 2011, the Office of National Water and Flood Management Policy (ONWF) was created within the Yingluck cabinet in response to the 2011 floods to harness the water-related competences of the various state agencies and focus on effective and coordinated management of water-related disasters.

Yet the future of this agency is now uncertain following the ousting of the cabinet in the 2014 coup (Maier-Knapp, N., 2015). Inter-institutional rivalry and the lack of cross-agential coordination has led to coordination efforts in Disaster Risk Management to be negligible among state agencies (Shook, 1997; Huaisai et al., 2006; Foran et al., 2012), and efforts to address these concerns have been threatened by political instability. Failing to address these concerns may exacerbate individual vulnerability to water-related hazards.

#### Disaster Preparedness

In light of heavy bureaucracy and political instability, basic disaster preparedness systems remain ineffective. Thailand's Meteorological Department has long complained of an inadequate rainfall prediction system; with regards to the 2011 floods, department authorities stated that, "No one expected rainfall would be this much. Right now our system, including hardware and software, is obsolete." Requests for a 4 billion baht (\$130 million) overhaul of its radar and modeling systems had gone unheeded since 2009 (Bloomberg, 2011). Smith Dharmasaroja, former director general of the Thai Meteorological Department, highlights that these miscalculations were directly responsible for exacerbating the floods, as water from the dams were forced to be discharged too late during the height of the disaster.

Furthermore, the tense history and relationship between the military and civilian government has undermined disaster warning systems as local authorities are cautious in declaring disasters or dispatching military personnel as an initial response (Setboonsarng, 2011). If armed forces are deployed immediately, this signals a security response to the population and implies higher levels of emergency. In addition to this, sending armed forces into areas of ongoing conflict is a delicate matter that could aggravate the conflict-torn provinces in the more vulnerable south. This is despite the fact that disaster management efforts are ultimately dependent on the military due to their resources and experience (Maier-Knapp, 2015).

In 2017, the northern province of Sakon Nakhon was hit with the worst flooding in 20 years, affecting 426,000 people and killing at least 7. Reportedly, warnings by local authorities were contradictory and confusing; at the peak of the flood, pictures of the overflowing Huai Sai Khamin reservoir were posted on social media and quickly dismissed by the Irrigation Department, while the Department of Disaster Prevention and Mitigation continually denied local reports of malfunction with an emergency siren warning tower (Bangkok Post).

### **Disaster Response and Recovery**

In times of disaster, political instability and inefficiency further worsens response during the most critical moments, as conflicting parties with different agendas compete over management strategies.

Presently in Thailand, divide between the interests of the rural and urban areas manifest themselves along party lines, leading to conflicts between the central government, which relies heavily on rural support, and opposition parties, which have strong support in urban centres. This may lead to competing agendas during disaster events. During the 2011 floods, clashes between the Bangkok's opposition-run Governor's office and the central government were critical in determining the city's response strategies. When the central government ordered a redirection of flood waters towards the city centre, a bastion of support for the city's governor, the Governor openly challenged the legality of the prime minister's decision. This led to the delay in deploying 800,000 sandbags, which were refused by the city's governor, and have also led to accusations of favouritism in disaster-response decisions by different levels of government (The Centre for Climate and Security). In the later days of the flood, the Governor also contradicted the official statement of safety by the Police General and Prime Minister by urging his residents to evacuate, saying, "Listen to me and only me. I will tell you when it is safe" (quoted in Setboonsarng, 2011).

The political situation in Thailand was further complicated following the re-establishment of the military government under Prime Minister Prayuth Chan-ocha in 2014, who some blame for withholding government disaster relief in the aftermath of the 2016 El Niño droughts (Lewis, 2016). Chan-ocha in fact publicly doubted the severity of the crisis and the validity of complaints from the rural authorities. He expressed in a radio address, "How can the whole province have no water?" and stressed the need for verification and prioritization of efforts based on the type of assistance required (Bangkok Post, 2016).

Evidently, tension between the various levels and forms of political power greatly undermine efforts at creating a coherent disaster response strategy in times of crises.

### **Disaster Mitigation**

Furthermore, anti-flood and anti-drought preventative measures can come into conflict and even outright contradict one another, forcing difficult choices on a government already stretched thin by bureaucracy and political tradeoffs. For example, management of reservoir water storage requires highly politicized decisions about when to release water from the dams, potentially wasting resources in the case of a sudden drought while increasing capacity for flood mitigation. This concurrence of floods and droughts is particularly significant due to the aforementioned lack of effective predictive technology. Retaining dam waters past the typical release point can also keep urban centres like Bangkok dry, but at the unjust expense of flooding many provinces upstream, aggravating urban/rural conflict further (Pongsudhirak, 2011).

When floods and droughts do occur, they hit hardest in areas with the least infrastructure to prevent and minimize damage. Flood relief requires drainage systems like canal networks, and drought risk can be drastically reduced through the creation of wells; however, these property-saving industry-saving, and potentially life-saving measures can be expensive projects and are thus only installed in the densely-populated, capital-heavy urban centres of commerce. Moreover, the political instability of the early 21st century contributed to a 3.8% decline of

the infrastructure construction sector in 2014 and also led to long term, large scale shortages in the workforce (BMI Research, 2015).

Dependence on hydrological infrastructure emphasizes existing contrasts and conflicts between Thailand's economically and ecologically diverse regions, particularly between urban and rural areas. Infrastructure is a major limiting factor for urbanization, and the country is rushing to build the capacity to support its rapidly changing and modernizing economy, leaving some critics wondering how long-term these immediate response solutions could be and who they are prioritizing (Thinphanga, Thailand Environmental Institute).

### 13.5.3 Summary

Political instability remains a fact of life in Thailand and the situation shows little sign of improvement, leading to a lack of a cohesive disaster management strategy. Due to the urgent nature of the natural hazard situation, many community-based, bottom-up approaches to hazard management have taken root in order to fill this vacuum. In the next section, we explore the ideologies and approaches towards disaster management that are of strong relevance to Thailand, and that could potentially advance sound disaster management policies.

## 13.6 Ideologies and Attitudes Towards Disaster Management

### 13.6.1 Sufficiency Thinking and Disaster Management

One of the most prominent ideologies with relevance to disaster management in Thailand is Sufficiency Thinking. Thailand is the first country to adopt sufficiency thinking as a national policy, with the aim to transform the mindset of its population to “enrich everyone’s lives in a truly sustainable way” ([Avery et al., 2016](#)). As a form of sufficiency thinking, the Sufficiency Economy Philosophy (SEP) is a set of social, economic, environmental and cultural guidelines that has been developed by late King Bhumibol Adulyadej to build a fair, resilience and sustainable economy and society for Thailand (Box 2).

The SEP has been firmly anchored in Thailand’s five-year national development plans since 2002, and practical implications were evident in the 10th and 11th plans as it was stipulated that the SEP was to be applied to all parties at all levels. Innovative management practices have been applied across Thailand in agriculture, education, business, government and community organisations for over two decades ([Avery et al., 2016](#)).

In terms of disaster management, the SEP stresses the balance in the use of economic, social, environmental and cultural capital, while underlining the importance of preparedness in dealing with changes in these four dimensions ([Avery et al., 2016](#)). The New Theory Agricultural Project, for instance, was introduced to lift farmers out of the vicious cycle of high debt and difficult living conditions. It is a subsistence, organic farming method which provides a step-by-step process for farmers to develop a sufficiency mindset at different levels: farmers learn to manage natural resources more sustainably while maximizing benefits to ensure food security and reduce risks from natural disasters. With a variety of crops, food and water supplies, disaster-ready buildings, and stronger community bonds, farmers are better prepared for

disasters. Moreover, the lower debt and better ecological health contributes to their resilience and ability to bounce back after disasters.

### 13.6.2 Ecosystem-Based Disaster Risk Reduction (Eco-DRR) Approaches

In a similar manner to the SEP, Eco-DRR is primarily an approach that emphasizes the protection and integration of natural ecosystems as disaster risk reduction measures (REFERENCE). Eco-DRR recognizes that healthy natural ecosystems, including nature reserves, mangrove forests or national parks are able to (1) offer protection or buffers against natural hazards such as floods or droughts as forms of ecosystem services, and (2) reducing the vulnerability of individuals to hazards by providing support for sustainable livelihoods and needs in the form of food, water or shelter (UNEP, 2015). Guidelines offered by the United Nations International Strategy for Disaster Reduction (UNISDR) suggest that deliberate zoning for wetlands or ecological reserves may not only contribute flood DRR, but may simultaneously offer co-benefits to meet environmental goals (Dudley et al., 2015).

In terms of flood mitigation, protected wetlands may serve as temporary infiltration or storage regions. Such vegetated regions, while absorbing excess water, are able to reduce both the flow of floodwaters and the peak flood height. These reduce the damage to property and assets as a result of the inundation of floodwaters (Dudley et al., 2015). In terms of drought mitigation, protected and vegetated areas such as forests are able to ensure the stabilization of soils, thus reducing erosion (Dudley et al., 2015).

Implementing Eco-DRR measures may require close collaboration among multiple agencies, organizations and community leaders. [Dudley et al. \(2015\)](#) suggests that working groups with the representation of community members in charge of the protected areas may facilitate zoning efforts to successfully integrate Eco-DRR considerations, with stronger cooperation and agreement of local stakeholders.

### 13.6.3 Moving Forward

Both the SEP and Eco-DRR could potentially form the framework of Thailand's emergency management policies, though there are no plans in place for this as of yet (REF?). In terms of disaster preparedness, any disaster management policy in line with the SEP mindset of prudence would entail adequate mitigation measures in the case of foreseeable hazards such as annual floods and droughts. A strong emphasis on moderation in terms of balancing economic, social and environmental concerns both in from the perspectives of the SEP and Eco-DRR may mitigate the impact of hazard events due to better environmental health and ecosystem services. Finally, the emphasis on self-sufficiency as well as strong national ties would be vital in the aftermath of a disaster event and allow the country to better rebuild without relying heavily on foreign aid.

## 13.7 Community-Based Disaster Risk Management (CB-DRM)

### 13.7.1 What is CBDRM?

Allowing for the agency of at-risk communities and their active engagement in the identification, analysis, treatment, monitoring and evaluation of disaster risks, Community-Based Disaster Risk Management (CBDRM) is a promising approach forward beyond traditional state-led disaster risk management. ‘Community’ in CBDRM does not refer to a homogenous entity, as traditional one-size-fits-all approaches may suggest. Communities can be diverse and socially differentiated, by identity (e.g. gender, class, age) and non-identity (e.g. beliefs, interests, values) markers. For our purposes, we will adhere to the Asian Disaster Preparedness Centre’s definition of a community as a group that shares one or more things in common (e.g. disaster risk exposure, disaster experience) (ADPC, 2004). One should note, however, that people living in a community can still differ in vulnerabilities and capacities.

Traditional emergency management thinking assumes that spontaneous actions communities take without the control of the authorities are disruptive, and that victims in natural disasters need to be told what to do so that their crisis and dysfunctional behaviour is controlled (Dynes, 1994). In the process of attempting to control communities, most top-down disaster risk management programs are found wanting in their ability to address specific local needs, sometimes increasing rather than decreasing communities’ vulnerability (ADPC, 2004). However, in CBDRM, local communities are seen as having the greatest stakes in managing risk, and hence the greatest interest in it. They also own assets, resources and local understanding that players at the top (e.g. state-level government) may lack. Hence CBDRM advocates the direct involvement of the vulnerable in planning and implementing disaster risk management measures, in partnership with local, provincial, and national entities. In so doing, CBDRM can be seen as a tool for environmental justice.

### 13.7.2 Aspects of CBDRM

Like traditional disaster risk management, CBDRM encompasses many forms and approaches. In our chapter, we focus on 3 components: (1) inclusive governance and knowledge-creation structures, (2) providing communities with skills and equipment, and (3) peri- and post-disaster coordination. Most of the examples we provide are sourced from the Asian Disaster Preparedness Centre’s report on activities it has carried out in Thailand together with its partners (2015).

#### Inclusive Governance and Knowledge-Creation Structures

CBDRM advocates for the inclusion of communities affected by disasters into its disaster risk management (DRM) process, from its planning stages to its implementation. By including local on-the-ground knowledge into existing local, provincial and national development action plans, and generating information in a manner and language easily understood by the communities, solutions generated better reflect affected communities’ own opportunities and constraints, and engage those whose survival and well-being are most at stake.

An example of inclusive governance under CBDRM is Participatory Disaster Risk Assessment (PDRA). As a participatory process, the PDRA first seeks to understand the thoughts and needs of a range of groups in each community. These are used to develop community risk-profiles which include risk perceptions, existing solutions and gaps. Results are then presented to Community-Based Flood Management Committees (CBFMC) in each district, which help to identify cost-effective and sustainable solutions based on the target communities' needs. Subsequently, concrete actions are jointly implemented by the CBFMCs and local governments. This process of dialogue and negotiation involving those at risk (represented in CBFMCs), authorities (district and national institutions), and other relevant stakeholders facilitates the integration of individual communities' flooding plans with existing local and national development action plans.

Experiences across the different projects that have included PDRA components demonstrate that active community input assisted the identification of more applicable and cost-effective measures, enhancing the long-term sustainability of project outcomes. Notably, identifying and enlisting the support and influence of local 'champions' helped to mobilize communities to contribute to the process. Community members were thus empowered by demonstrating their knowledge, and undertaking first-hand roles in mapping specific characteristics of their local areas. One example where PDRA's success is evident is the Talad Kao community, where the quantity and locations of CCTVs and spotlights for monitoring flood risk were decided based on information provided by the community (Tripathi, 2018).

### **Providing Communities with Skills and Equipment**

While community-based approaches are meant to be led by the community, CBDRM does not preclude 'external' agencies such as the government and international aid agencies from providing communities with skills and equipment, especially if these provisions are complemented with community resources such as the willingness to learn and willingness to volunteer time and leadership to help during disasters. A suite of training and education programs targeting communities, hospitals and schools, often coupled with equipment provisions, thus form part of the CBDRM framework in Thailand.

One example is the Program for Enhancement of Emergency Response (PEER), a regional training program instituted by the U.S. Agency for International Development's Office of U.S. Foreign Disaster Assistance (USAID's OFDA) in 1998, to strengthen response capacities to disasters in Asia. The Asian Disaster Preparedness Centre (ADPC) in Bangkok is responsible for administering 2 PEER programs, Hospital Preparedness for Emergencies (HOPE) and Community Action for Disaster Response (CADRE). The former trains healthcare personnel to develop response plans to community emergencies. The latter trains anyone in communities to prepare for disasters in three days, including medical first responder training and collapsed structure search and rescue skills. In Thailand, community responders in 4 target areas (Bangkok, Pathum Thani, Ayutthaya and Nakhon Sawan) were trained at Tambon level (below district and province level). Following completion, CADRE equipment was supplied to all Red Cross National Societies. Specialist equipment was provided to hospitals, while communities also received response kits with emergency medical and life-saving equipment (ADPC, 2015).

Early warning systems are another example of equipment and skills provided by external parties planned with community input and designed for community use and leadership. A case in point is the system of flood staff gauges installed at the Pasak River bank at Wat Hua Hin and

Tambon Tha Luang of Ayutthaya province. Community members monitor water levels from the flood gauges marked green (normal), yellow (warning) and red (critical). Each level will result in different actions agreed on by residents (e.g. moving things to higher places when the water reaches yellow on the staff gauge). To supplement the implementation of early warning systems, the “Mr. Warning” initiative (Figure 13) was introduced to communities in the Chao Phraya river basin, and riverine and flash flood-prone communities in Prachinburi. This initiative presents location-specific technical information on flood warning systems through easily digestible posters, to increase awareness of the public on what to do and expect in flood situations.

For students in schools, equipment and training that have been provided include life jackets, training on how to adapt everyday floating items to makeshift lifeboats and speed card games where they match flooding challenges with solutions.

### Peri and Post-Disaster Coordination

Lastly, a significant component of CBDRM involves peri-(during) and post-disaster coordination within communities, and between communities and their government. The main approach to improving coordination has been simulation exercises and creating creative solutions to improve communication.

Since simulations are part of the PEER program, they focus on both hospitals and general community response. PEER’s 3-stage hospital simulation exercise includes (1) a tabletop-based exercise which forms the backbone of a multi-hazard response plan, (2) a functional command post exercise where the management team practices directing hospital response without actually deploying resources, and (3) a full-scale exercise that involves the Hospital Command Centre and deploys emergency personnel to manage patient reception at the emergency department (ADPC, 2015). To test community-based flood management plans initiated by the Talad Kao and Ban Buphram communities, PEER also conducted flood simulation exercises where trained CADRE volunteers practiced undertaking water rescue missions. Post-simulation, communities brainstormed for better interventions (ADPC, 2015).

Outside of PEER programs, schools have also been heavily involved in planning for flood safety where school-specific inputs from teachers and students were sourced and plans were integrated with existing resources and capacities of their wider community. For example, Wat Hua Hin school’s action plan was integrated with the Community Flood Preparedness Plan of Moo (village, subdivision of Tambon) 2, Ban Hua Hin, and Tha Luang TAO (Tambon (subdistrict) Administrative Organisation) (ADPC, 2015). Some schools have also agreed to share resources like evacuation space, such as Luang Wittayanukul and Wat Kai Jone (ADPC, 2015). The increased interaction between communities and local, provincial and national development institutions have both allowed for better coordination and integration of action plans and developed better understanding of how local water levels are influenced by upstream irrigation and water releases.

The involvement of community in decision-making has also facilitated the brainstorming of innovative ideas (Figure 14) such as using the ‘LINE’ mobile phone application to coordinate flood warning response, together with strategically placed loudspeakers and CCTVs (ADPC, 2015). Another example is the installation of water purification equipment. After community members in Ban Hua Hin identified water purification as a priority for reducing flood impact, the equipment was installed at a daycare centre where money collected from the machines (1

baht per litre) would contribute to the maintenance of the system, managed by the community-based flood management community (ADPC, 2015).

Especially since the lack of real-time information on water and human conditions and on ‘who is doing what’ has been identified as a key information gap that contributed to the magnitude of the 2011 flood impacts (Jukrkorn et al., 2014), the improved coordination and integration that CBDRM brings is valuable.

## 13.8 Concluding Remarks

In this chapter we have elaborated in detail upon the production of both hazards and vulnerabilities to floods and droughts in Thailand. We highlight that this production is complex and multi-dimensional, involving both natural conditions and political interventions by a range of actors.

In the later half of this document, we then explored possible approaches towards more inclusive and resilient disaster risk reduction based on community involvement. Despite the forward-lookingness of the principles and ideologies we have mentioned, studies on their applications to flood and drought risk management in Thailand – whether the SEP, Eco-DRR or CBDRM – have been limited.

Moving forward, it is important for research to evaluate the impact of existing community-based initiatives, most notably those of CBDRM. Studies should explore how individuals within communities perceive the effectiveness of these initiatives. While such research is currently scarce in the literature (Zwi et al., 2013), further studies would inform understandings of the benefits and disadvantages of such approaches, and the extent to which these initiatives have had an impact on the lives of the Thai people.

NOTE: missing in-text citations [Marks \(2011\)](#)

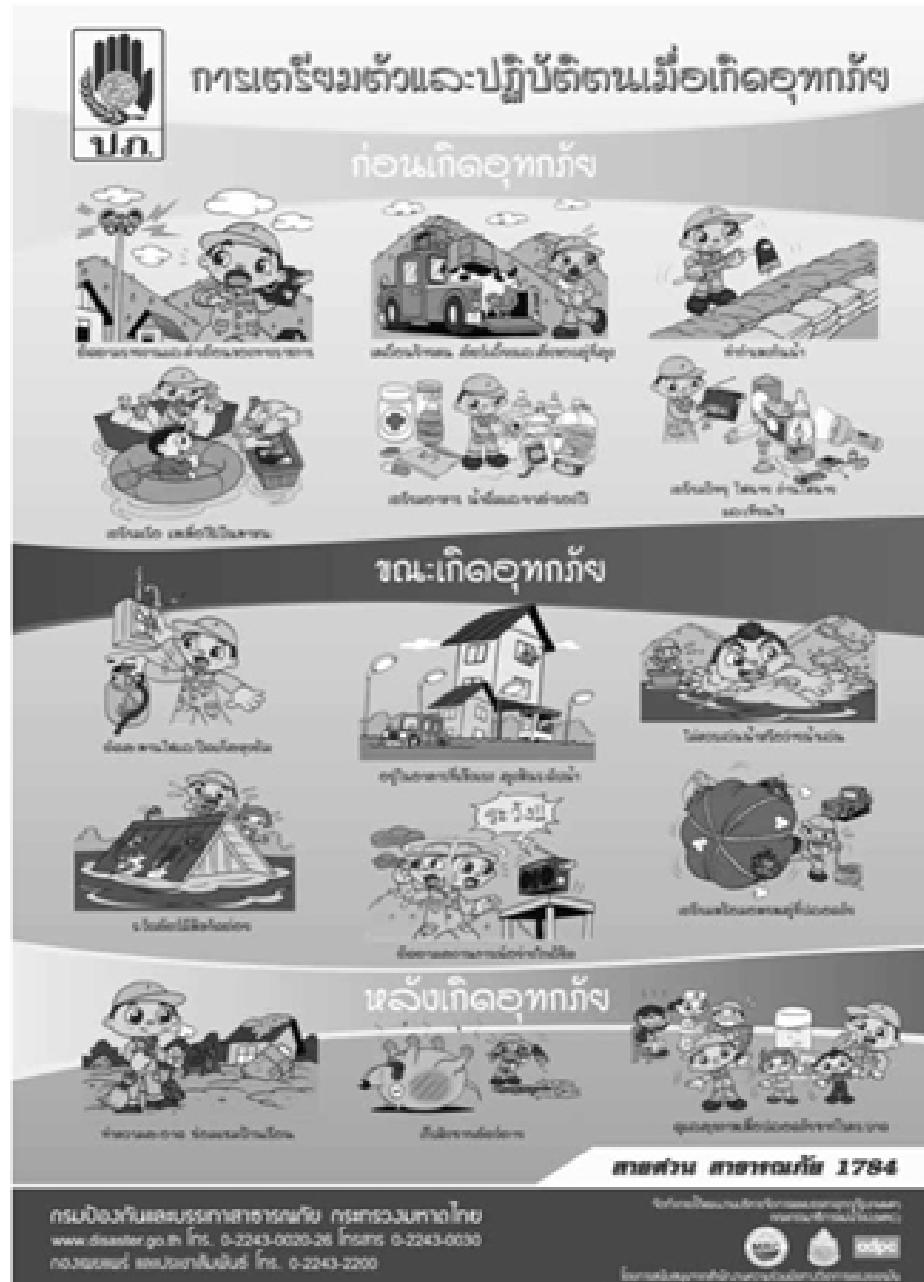
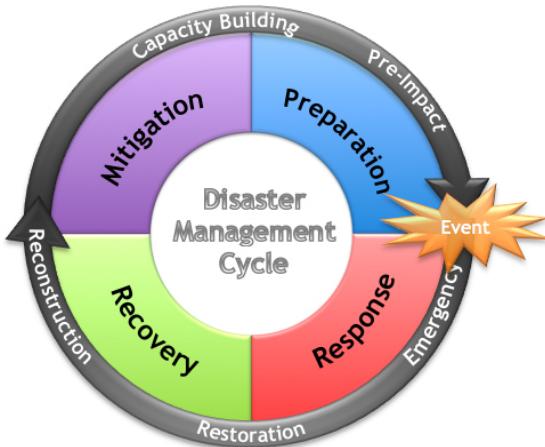


Figure 13.14: Poster as part of 'Mr. Warning' initiative (Source: Asian Disaster Preparedness Center)



**Figure 13.15:** Disaster Management Cycle.

Challenges/ Advantages posed by flooding and other community issues	Challenges/ Advantages posed by flooding and other community issues	Identified solutions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Transportation difficulties</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High water levels affecting local transportation</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Repair boats in advance before flood season</li> <li>Request for assistance from local government</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Houses and property damaged</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Difficulties coping with sudden water flow particularly in the case of flash flooding from upper stream</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Monitor flood situation and move property to higher place in advance</li> <li>Request for compensation from relevant government agencies to repair houses</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Robbery prone area (may discourage affected community members from moving to safe zones, particularly elderly)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Problem of drugs in the community and insufficient lighting in some areas</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Install CCTVs to enhance community security</li> <li>Install spot lights to improve visibility in poorly lit areas</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Movement of animals from normal habitats</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Flash flooding may cause dangerous animals (e.g. snakes, centipedes, crocodiles, scorpions) to move from regular habitats towards households and community areas</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increase awareness and vigilance to the risks posed by movement of animals following flooding</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Solid waste problem</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Flood water can cause the movement of garbage and waste affecting households and community areas</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Rubbish should be disposed of at allocated areas</li> <li>Avoid disposing of waste directly into water</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lifeline facilities (water &amp; electricity) cut off</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Electricity meter needs to be moved to a point higher than flood level</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contact provincial electricity authority to move electricity meter to higher ground</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Sanitation facilities affected by flooding</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1st floor toilets typically flooded during flood seasons</li> <li>Septic tanks can get filled with water</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Some houses are not affected if water does not reach 2nd floor since toilets are located on upper floor</li> <li>Request assistance from government and private sector</li> </ul>

**Figure 13.16:** Examples of CBDRM (for flood risk) planning materials and tools utilised in target communities (Source: Asian Disaster Preparedness Center)



# Chapter 14

## The Korean Peninsula: Physical Geography, Water and Climate Change

MARC LOS HUERTOS<sup>1</sup>

### 14.1 Framing the Peninsula's Physical Geography

The Korean Peninsula endenders a wide range of geographic characteristics that potential environmental risks. For our purposes, I have tried to frame the environmental issues of the peninsula within the following questions:

1. What are the defining features of the geo-physical context of the Korean Peninsula?
2. What challenges do they pose to the analysis of environmental issues?

In particular, I will summarize the geologic context, describe the climate and water resources and put them into context of climate change and water use, and energy use scenarios.

Since Korea has no source of oil, what are the energy issues; what are the water issues...and how do these impact food security?

### 14.2 Geologic Context

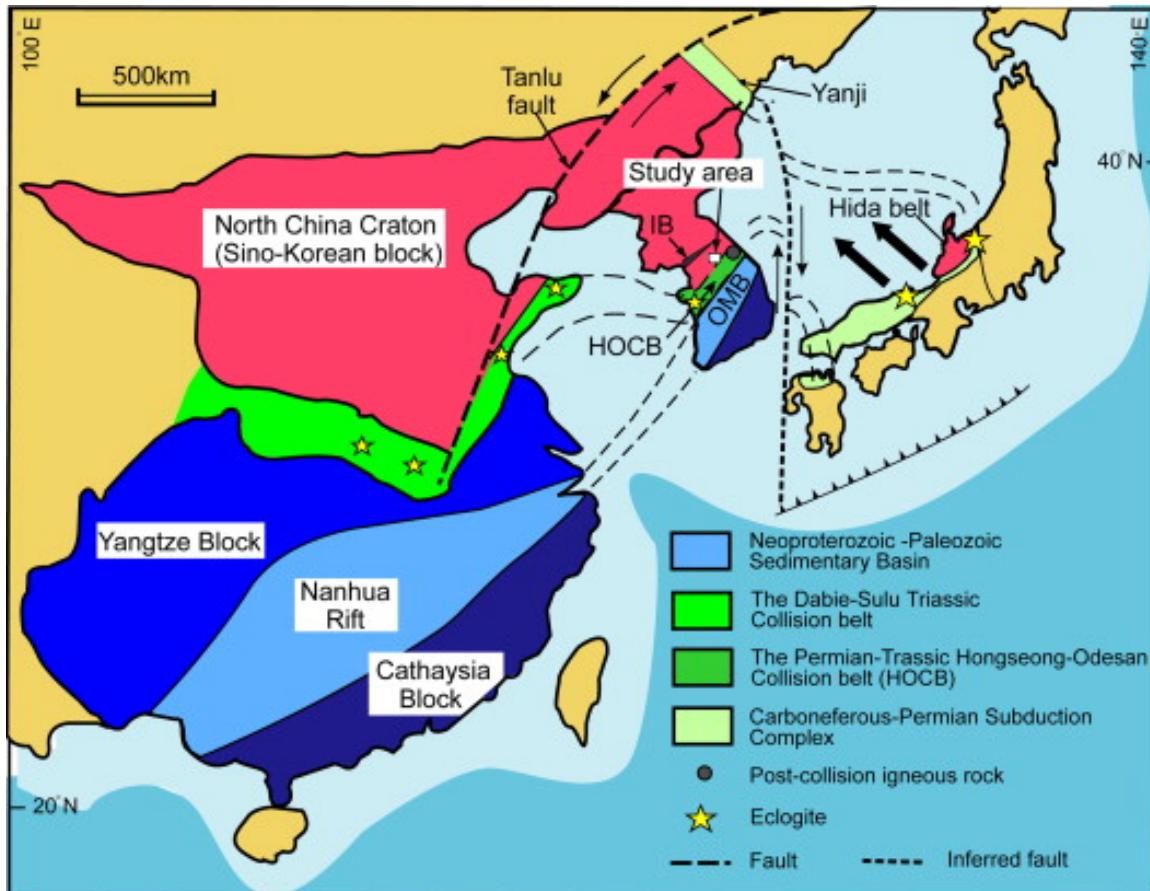
#### 14.2.1 North China Craton

The Korean terrain is the result of some 3.85 billion years of geologic processes. In particular, tectonic forces and processes. On a superficial basis the the Korean peninusula part of Asian continent – but the continent is not made up on one homogenous piece of the Earth's crust,

---

<sup>1</sup>Statement of Contributions:

but is composed of a set of cratonic blocks and each one has their own history and development (Figure ??). The Korean Peninsula lies on the North China Craton, one of the oldest fragments of a continent with rocks over 3.85 billion years old



Even the deep history of the NCC is one subjected to a wide range of tectonic activity. At a large scale the block appears homogenous, in part because systematic research began in the early 21st century. Since the 2000s, the complexity of the craton is being better appreciated — in terms of its origin and how it has evolved over time (Zhao et al., 2005).

Specifically, the North Korean portion of the peninsula shares some of this early history (Figure 14.1).

And as a continent, East Asia is composed in part from several cratons, the North China Craton, South China Craton and Tarim Craton. The amalgamation of these cratons did not occur until early Cretaceous and Tertiary (Figure 14.2).

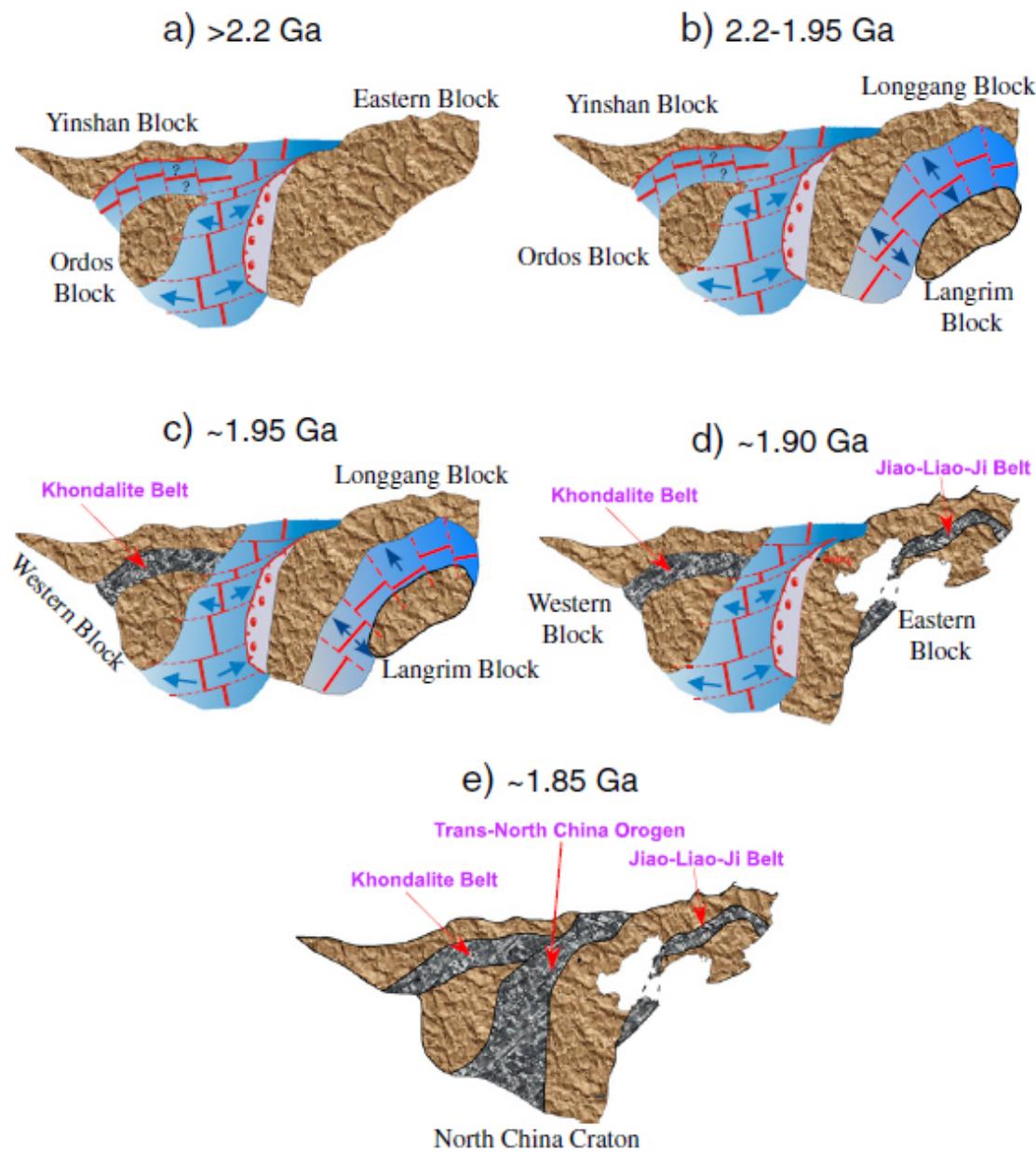
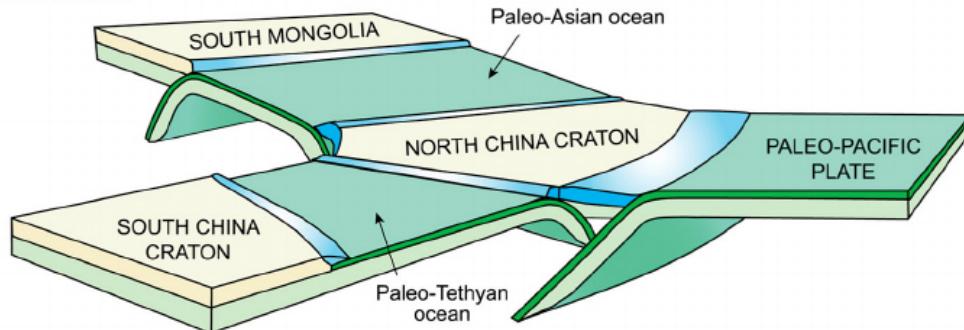
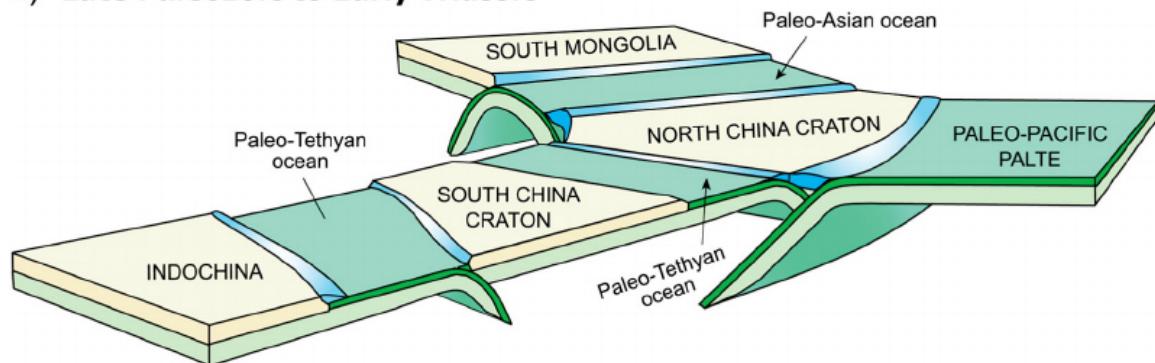
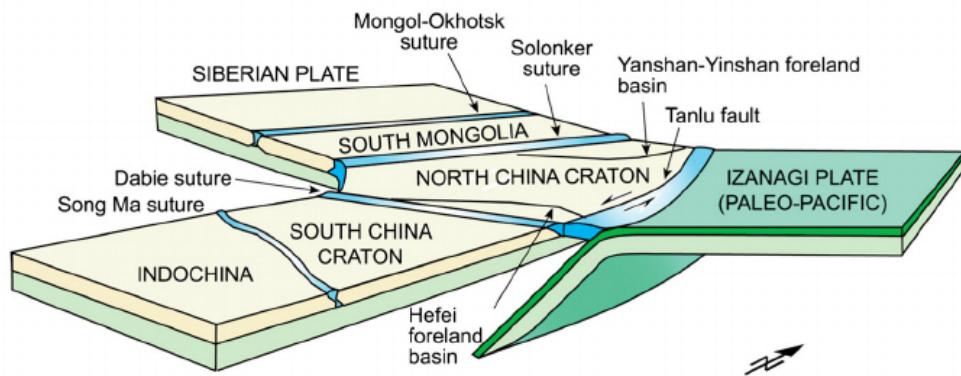


Figure 14.1: Hypothesized early geologic history of the North China Craton ??.

### 14.2.2 Korean Peninsula Geology

In spite of our delayed understanding of the NCC complexity, geology of the Korean Peninsula is documented before the Second World War (Figure 14.3).

Ree et al. (1996)

**a) Early Paleozoic****b) Late Paleozoic to Early Triassic****c) Early Cretaceous to Tertiary**

**Figure 14.2:** (Source: [Kusky et al. \(2014\)](#)).

Finally, we begin to appreciate the complexity of the Peninsula with a recently published review for the Olympics (Figure 14.4).

## 14.3 Aquascape: Climate and Water Demand

The peninsula's water landscape relies on precipitation and its storage – behind dams and in aquifers.

(Figure 14.5).

(Lee and Chung, 2007)

### 14.3.1 A Shared Future on a Divided Peninsula

The Korean Peninsula has been subjected to constant barrage of colonial projects from the North, West and East. Since the Korean Conflict, the Peninsula's ecology has been subjected to a geopolitical concerns resulting divergent and convergent socio-economic and environmental outcomes. And yet, the political boundaries have artificially cut the Imji and Bukhan river watersheds; the forests species are shared; and the Peninsula will experience similar climate change trends.

While both countries import food. their food systems can be thought of different manifestations of similar issues and with solutions that might be "shared." In 2006, the World Food Program (WFP) and FAO estimated a requirement of 5.3 to 6.5 million tons of grain when domestic production fulfilled only 3.825 million tons. The country also faces land degradation after forests stripped for agriculture resulted in soil erosion. Harsh weather conditions that dented the agricultural output (wheat and barley production dropped 50% and 80% respectively in 2011) and rising global food prices stressed greater food shortage, putting 6 million North Koreans at risk.

The yield in food production in 2016 increased by 7 percent from 4.5 million tonnes in 2015 to 4.81 million tonnes and North has produced more food than South. It is estimated production decreased by 2% in 2017 to 4.71 million tonnes.

As an industrialized, lower populated portion the North's economic development was considerably higher until the 1970s when the higher populated and largely agricultural base industrialized and showed rapid growth, along with the other Asian tigers during that time. In recent times the S. Koreans are known for heavy industry, electronics, and XX. Meanwhile with the collapse of the Soviet Union and economic sanctions and trade-embargoes the north's development has been severely constrained. The aggravated chronic food shortages of the 1990's has been continued by on-going systemic problems including a lack of arable land, collective farming practices, and persistent shortages of tractors and fuel.

These histories have dramatic impact on the natural resources and food production in the countries...

In the south, arable land reached a maximum in 1968 (2.31 m ha) while trying to meet food requirements, but with economic success, the reliance on food aid ended in the late 1960s and the ROK began food demand for meats increased and over time in-country production was focused on staples (e.g. rice, which the country was self-sufficient in 1978) and imports meats and dairy.

### 14.3.2 Climate Trends

Belayneh, A and Adamowski, J

### Data Sources

Climate data was obtained from the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Climate Data Online and access in January 2018 ([www.ncdc.noaa.gov](http://www.ncdc.noaa.gov)). R, an open source programming environment ([R Core Team, 2017](#)), was used to analyze and display the data and the SPIGA package to analyze the standardized drought index ([an Ayala-Bizarro and Mendoza, 2016](#)), based on [Belayneh and Adamowski \(2012\)](#).

#### 14.3.3 Temperature

##### Maximum Temperatures

The daily maximum temperature records generally begin in the mid-20th century and demonstrate an increasing trend. These trends vary between stations and are often limited to a few months a year. Most of the stations have increasing trends in March, June and September show a statistically significant trend, while Ulleungdo Island is significant from Jan - June, but nothing later in the year. Finally, Makpo was significant from Jan - May, but not afterwards. These data suggest maximum daily temperatures are increasing in a pronounced way in Korea first half of the calendar year.

In sum, based on the evaluation of four sites, the number of months with significant trends range from 3 to 8 (Table 14.1).

**Table 14.1:** Trends in TMAX

Station	Temperature Rate Range	No. of Months with Warming ( $p \leq 0.05$ )
Incheon (ROK)	0–0.04°/yr	8
Mokpo (ROK)	-0.01–0.02°/yr	5
Pyongyang (DPRK)	0–0.04°/yr	3
Ulleungdo (ROK)	-0.01–0.03°/yr	3

##### Minimum Temperatures

More important, are the increasing minimum temperatures, for example, in Incheon, 7 months has a significant increase monthly min daily temperatures and Pyongyang has a significant trend 10 out of 12 months (Figure ??).

In sum, based on the evaluation of four sites, the number of months with significant trends range from 2 to 10 (Table 14.2).

#### 14.3.4 Precipitation

##### Rainfall

Precipitation trends are harder to summarize because in some cases, the rainfall trend is upward in others it's downward, depending on the month and station selected. Rainfall on

**Table 14.2:** Trends in TMIN

Station	Temperature Rate Range	No. of Months with Warming (p<0.05)
Incheon (ROK)	0.01-0.03°/yr	7
Mokpo (ROK)	0-0.01°/yr	2
Pyongyang (DPRK)	0.02-0.07°/yr	10
Ulleungdo (ROK)	0-0.03°/yr	5

**Table 14.3:** Trends in PRCP

Station	Increasing Months (NS)	Decreasing Months (NS)	No Sig Change
Incheon (ROK)	none (5)	none (4)	12 months
Mokpo (ROK)	none (6)	none (6)	12 months
Pyongyang (DPRK)	May (7)	none (5)	11 months
Ulleungdo (ROK)	May, Aug (3)	5 Jan (6)	9 months

the Peninsula seems to be responding in several uneven ways, increasing monthly totals and decreasing depending on the station and the month.

trends have so much noise it is difficult to determine if there are valid observations to generate a policy response (Table ??). However, [Bae et al. \(2008\)](#) found declining rainfall in April in the south-western portion of the Peninsula relying on approximately 300 high quality weather stations. Because the available records via NOAA are relatively scant, it's no surprise that the results do not agree and in fact, the variable responses suggest that a signal cannot be found using these data. Furthermore, the stations analyzed do not cover the south-west corner and found insignificant results for the Han, Nakdong, and Gum river watersheds.

Rainfall and temperature, of course, interact on the landscape and reference evapotranspiration ( $ET_o$ ) is a key indicator of that impact on water resources because as an index it signals water demand by plants with implications for forests and crop production.

In a study by [Nam et al. \(2015\)](#), the mid- and southwest have experienced an increase in  $ET_o$  during the months of February, March, and November since the 1970s. These results have important implications to manage water resources, since ground water may be the only source to counteract an increase in  $ET_o$ .

## Snow Depth

Precipitation as snow is one of the most important forms of precipitation for many countries because snow provides water storage, slow discharge rates that are easier to capture, and improves soil infiltration and ground water recharge. However, the records of snow depth collected by weather stations is inadequate to quantify long-term trends because their locations have such limited recorded snow events.

IS THERE ANOTHER SOURCE? So far, can't find.

### 14.3.5 Extreme Events

Drought and flooding have had differential impacts on the Peninsula. The floods in North Korea in 1995 were devastating – generating landslides, destroying crops, and causing loss of life.

The long-term weather changes have been have not be obvious. In fact, Korea experienced a dramatic drought between 2013-2015. Although the drought was only three years, it exposed concern that the Peninsula could continue to experience drought even while an increase in precipitation trends exists. However, the history of drought longevity and severity suggest that this recent event was mild compared to previous events (Figure ??).

In fact, using data for Pyongyang, there does not appear to be a long-term trend of increasing or decreasing precipitation totals (Figure 14.9).

### 14.3.6 Climate Scenarios and Natural Resources

#### Storage – Groundwater and Surface Water

Although data from N Korea are scant, ROK uses a significant portion of groundwater for both drinking and irrigation (Figure 14.10).

#### Climate Change, Forest Cover, and Hydrology

As described earlier, [Nam et al. \(2015\)](#) found an increasing  $ET_o$ , which will reduce available water for plant growth and domestic use.

[Shin et al. \(2014\)](#) modeled the effect of climate change on South Korea – increasing temperatures and rainfall from current conditions to the 2080s. Using a modeled increase in temperatures and rainfall, they predicted potential forest cover changes and hydrology changes suggesting an increase in groundwater recharge. However, the ET increases XX%, the forest cover will not change independent of leaf litter processes , soil-vegetation interactions, and species composition shifts. However, in spite of these uncertainties that with forest cover changes, stream-flow and groundwater recharge may not increase proportional to increases in precipitation in spite of a possible increase in precipitation. Thus, their results clearly demonstrate that our capacity to extend these models out (in this case 80 years) provides a planning horizon to that should be considered.

#### Hydrology and Food Linkages

As noted earlier, water supply and food production, in particular rice production, is key for the Peninsula's food supply. In the next section, we will look more closely at the narratives with respect to food security and self-sufficiency and place these narratives into the water resources in terms of supply and quality.

## 14.4 Food and Water Linkages

### 14.4.1 Agriculture and the History of Irrigation

Rice cultivation, as the major crop on the Korean Peninsula, was supported by a well developed irrigation system. For paddy rice, irrigation was indispensable practice and ancient Korea used a range of technologies that included construction of large-scale reservoirs and conveyance systems.

Managing water resources has been a documented endeavor in the Korean Peninsula for thousands of years. In fact, some of the earliest irrigation systems are well documented on the peninsula. The management of water and its relationship to irrigated agriculture, especially paddy rice is well appreciated by the Koreans.

Agricultural activities started approximately 8,000 years ago. By the time bronze was introduced by the Huns, the agricultural life style was dominate for Koreans, who cultivated rice, barley, beans and among others. By the 4th century BCE, technology facilitated by the use of iron allowed the development of structures such as Bo (weir) and Je-eon (reservoir) for crop irrigation.

Rice was the major crop cultivated in Korea from her ancient history. All irrigation water was primarily used in paddy fields for rice cultivation and only small portion of the water was used to partially irrigate upland cultivation.

According to ancient Korean history, irrigation of rice paddy was an indispensable practice. This is well shown by a large-scale reservoir, Byeokgol-je in Gimje, Jeonbuk province, which was built in 330 B.C. by King Biru of Baekje Kingdom during the Three Kingdoms Era (Figure 14.11). Although certainly not the only one, structures such as this bare evidence the high level of Korean knowledge and techniques in building embankments.

However, it should be noted that technology was combined with strong centralized government intent and political will to construct and restore irrigation facilities to increase farmland and production ([TBD, 2018](#)).

### 14.4.2 Food (In)Security in Asia and Water

North Korea is the outlier in East Asia with respect for food security. In the 1990s the North Korean economy saw stagnation turning into crisis. Economic assistance received from the USSR and China was an important factor of its economic growth. In 1991 USSR collapsed, withdrew its support and demanded payment in hard currency for imports. China stepped in to provide some assistance and supplied food and oil, most of it reportedly at concessionary prices. [citation needed] But in 1994 China reduced its exports to North Korea.

Deprived of industrial inputs, including fertilizers, pesticides, and electricity for irrigation, agricultural output also started to decrease even before North Korea had a series of natural disasters in the mid-1990s. This evolution, combined with a series of natural disasters including record floods in 1995, caused one of the worst economic crises in North Korea's history. Other causes of this crisis were high defense spending (about 25% of GDP) and bad governance. It is estimated ([TBD, 2018](#)) that between 1992 and 1998 North Korea's economy contracted by 50% and several hundred thousand (possibly up to 3 million) people died of starvation.

The rigidity in the political and economic systems of North Korea left the country ill-prepared for a changing world. The North Korean economy was undermined and its industrial output began to decline in 1990. From 1994 to 1998 North Korea suffered a famine.

Since 1998 there has been a gradual recovery in agriculture production, which by 2013 brought North Korea back close to self-sufficiency in staple foods. However, as of 2013, most households have borderline or poor food consumption, and consumption of protein remains inadequate. Over 50% of the population is food insecure (Figure ??). The situation is projected to improve only slightly by in the next 10 years with a decline from 53.8% to 40.9% of the population categorized as food insecure ([U.S. Department of Agriculture et al., 2017](#)). 37% of the children had their growth stunted and 1/3 of mothers were severely undernourished.

Meanwhile, few in South Korea regularly suffer from food shortages, while economic factors limit the protein content and dietary choices for a wide range of residents (IS this true? [TBD \(2018\)](#)).

While DPRK has historically depended on geopolitical allies for relief during famine, without these partners the country's capacity to address famine is much more limited... MORE HERE [Rhee et al. \(2017\)](#) According to the IFAD the decline of soil fertility in DPRKs contributed to the lack of self-sufficiency in grain productions ([International Fund for Agricultural Development, 1998](#)).

Nevertheless, with the aid many claim that food does not reach the some of the most in need and may in fact re-enforce centralized power [Dalton and Jung \(2009\)](#). Nevertheless, informal markets began with aid and although govt has been trying to limit the economic power of these markets with a range of tools, such as devaluation and creating a new currency. Of course, it's without any doubt that the aid was political, designed to promote a move away from totalitarian governance, thus entailed mixed motives.

In summary, sustained massive government programs in the north have been used to address food security issues with limited success [He and Xu \(2017\)](#). Meanwhile, as incomes have improved in the ROK, diets have changed and the capacity to develop food self-sufficiency has declined dramatically in the south.

#### 14.4.3 Korean Diet

According to [Kim et al. \(2016\)](#), the Korean diet is composed of bibimbap and kimchi and various banchan and kimchi, which is both historically important and aesthetically [Chung et al. \(2016\)](#). Overall, this diet includes a high proportion of vegetables, moderate to high consumption of legumes and fish, and low consumption of red meat ([Kim et al., 2016](#)). However, to idealize the Korean diet fails to appreciate the long-term trend in both diet and the concomitant impacts on environmental resources.

#### 14.4.4 Westernizing Diets

Over the long-term, the per capita supply of foods has dramatically changed. For example, barley has declined from 49 kg in 1960 to 1 kg in 2010, while rice has declined a bit and wheat has not had a real change. Even more dramatic has been the increase in fruit ...

## 14.5 Water Resources, Infrastructure, and Management

The management of water resources depends on judicious decision making based on the resources available.

[Kim and Lee \(2018\)](#)

Irrigated area relative to total paddy rice increased dramatically in Korea between 1918 and 1939 from 17% to 70% ([Kikuchi and Hayami, 1978](#)). The development of water, although with a long history in the Peninsula, rapidly changed in the early 20th Century with the colonial Japanese along with the introduction of higher yielding Japanese varieties.

The ROK invested heavily to improve agricultural productivity and even more so in the midde and late late 20th Century. According to [Burmeister \(1987\)](#) the South Korean governement promoted an extremely directed research and extension to promote green revolution technologies.

North Korea announced in December 1993 a 3-year transitional economic policy placing primary emphasis on agriculture, light industry, and foreign trade. A lack of fertilizer, natural disasters, and poor storage and transportation practices have left the country more than a million tons per year short of grain self-sufficiency. Moreover, lack of foreign exchange to purchase spare parts and oil for electricity generation left many factories idle.

The government pursued Kim Jong Il's Songun policy, under which the military is deployed to direct production and infrastructure projects. As a consequence of the government's policy of establishing economic self-sufficiency, the North Korean economy has become increasingly isolated from that of the rest of the world, and its industrial development and structure do not reflect its international competitiveness.

### 14.5.1 Water Supply and Global Warming

According to XXX,

However, as several authors correctly point out, the impact of climate change provides imorant feedback on ecological and agroecological systems. For example, [Nam et al. \(2015\)](#) found a decline in  $ET_o$  for many parts of South Korea...

### 14.5.2 Surface-Ground Water Interactions

South Korea lacks the awareness and interest in hyporheic zones, owing to which there are no management initiatives at all ([Kim and Lee, 2018](#)). Therefore, it is practically impossible to study this zone in Korea. During the period 2008–2012, the Ministry of Land invested US \$20 billion in the Four Major Rivers Project, focusing only on the functional aspects of water resources. The project focused on surface water, while ignoring groundwater and aquatic ecosystems. In addition, the proposal to change the designation of the five major river areas that the Ministry of Land has been promoting since 2013 was directly opposed to the conservation management plan for waterfront areas created by the Ministry of Environment.

Urban and rural landuse patterns have differential impacts on water quality. For example, in the City of Seoul, groundwater quality discharges into subway tunnels. Water quality in these tunnels has elevated Mn, Fe, NO<sub>3</sub>, and pathogenic microbe exceed Korean Drinking Water Standards ([Chae et al., 2008](#)). Of course, no one suggests that subway tunnel waters

is a drinking water source, however, it demonstrates the connection (new connection) between subterrenan surface waters and ground water.

### 14.5.3 Water Quality: Nutrients and Drinking Water

As one important component of the surface and ground water interactions is the contamiation of groundwater via recharge that might enter groundwater via the hyperheic zone. In a study by [Min et al. \(2003\)](#), shallow groundwater was contaminated...

In a country wide estimates, NK has an average N/ha use, while SK has an order[?] of magnitude more with XX N/ha. This is the difference between developed and “developing” countries.

Given high levels in SK, we should expect elevated nutrients in surface and ground waters, which is highly spatially even. Nitrate is largely derived from chemical fertilizers with fractional contributions of 0.35-0.71, and organic fertilizers including composted manure with mixing fractions of 0.39-0.49 ([Kim et al., 2015](#)).

Nitrogen and oxygen isotope have been used to evaluate the fate of nitrate in South Korea ([Koh et al., 2010](#)) AND I CAN'T FIND THE TAKE HOME MESSAGE YET.

The relative contribution of nitrate from composted manure compared to chemical fertilizers increased with increasing nitrate concentrations, suggesting that composted manure significantly increases nitrate pollution and therefore its use should be carefully controlled to manage rural groundwater quality. This study also suggests that PCA and Bayesian isotope mixing models are effective for quantitative assessment of the sources of pollutants, such as nitrate.

Nevertheless, for much of the country, the trend of declining groundwater contamination (Figure 14.14) is a result of reduced nitrogen fertilizer inputs, which peaked in 1990 at 1.104 Mt or 500 kg/ha ([Lee et al., 2017](#)). In addition, throughout the 2000s the land areas dedicated toward agriculture has been declining and rice paddies having peaked in 1988 has been declining since.

### 14.5.4 Eutrophication: Inland Waters and Coastal Zone

Natural lakes in South Korea are limited in number and generally quite small. As a result, reservoirs and regulated rivers are the major sources of freshwater for society. About 18 000 reservoirs have been constructed in South Korea, and they are particularly important for domestic water supply.

[Kim et al. \(2001\)](#) surveyed in this general assessment of the trophic state of South Korean reservoirs. Ten reservoirs were from the upper or middle reaches of rivers (including eight of the ten largest reservoirs in Korea), and three were estuarine reservoirs. Reservoirs in the mountainous district of South Korea were usually mesotrophic, whereas the estuarine reservoirs were highly eutrophic. Because total nitrogen to total phosphorus ratios were always between 18 and 163, phosphorus was probably more limiting than nitrogen for algal growth. However, hydraulic residence time and light penetration may be limiting in the nutrient-enriched downstream reservoirs. In winter, algal density was lowest in deep reservoirs, perhaps due to deep mixing. During the same season, algal density was high in shallow reservoirs, perhaps due to a favorable hydraulic residence time. Factors contributing to the observed eutrophication patterns, including nutrient runoff from agriculture, animal farms, fish aquaculture, and urban

areas, are discussed. According to the national budget of phosphorus, fertilizer and livestock manure are major source of phosphorus, contributing 133400 and 73700 tons of phosphorus per year, respectively, while human excretion discharges 30000 tons P/year. Reduction of the application of fertilizer, proper treatment of manure, and conservation of topsoil may be the most practical and effective measures to prevent further lake eutrophication.

Growing populations in northeast Asia have greatly altered the nitrogen cycle, with increases in agricultural production to feed the population, and with increases in N emissions and transboundary air pollution. For example, during the 1900's over 50% of the N deposition over Republic of Korea was imported from abroad. In this paper, we present biogeochemical budgets of N for the South Korean peninsula (the Republic of Korea) and for the Yellow Sea region. We quantify N inputs from atmospheric deposition, fertilizers, biological fixation, and imports of food, feed, and products. We quantify outputs in riverine export, crop uptake, denitrification, volatilization, runoff, sedimentation and sea water exchange. Calculations were conducted using mean values from 1994–1997. All of the nitrogen budgets were positive, with N inputs exceeding outputs. The excess N inputs gave rise to increases in N storage in landfills and in groundwater. Annual accumulation of N in the Yellow sea, including inputs from South Korea and other drainage areas, was 1229 kt/yr with a residence time for N of approximately 1.5 years, thus doubling N content in marine waters every 3 years during 1994–1997 [Bashkin et al. \(2002\)](#). The human derived N inputs leads to excessive eutrophication and pollution of the Yellow Sea.

#### 14.5.5 Water Quality and Pesticide Use

TBD...

#### 14.5.6 Waste Water: Recycling and Treatment

Climate change and the subsequent change in agricultural conditions increase the vulnerability of agricultural water use. Wastewater reuse is a common practice around the globe and is considered as an alternative water resource in a changing agricultural environment. Due to rapid urbanization, indirect wastewater reuse, which is the type of agricultural wastewater reuse that is predominantly practiced, will increase, and this can cause issues of unplanned reuse. Therefore, water quality standards are needed for the safe and sustainable practice of indirect wastewater reuse in agriculture. [Jeong et al. \(2016\)](#) evaluated irrigation water quality criteria for wastewater reuse were discussed, and the standards and guidelines of various countries and organizations were reviewed to suggest preliminary standards for indirect wastewater reuse in South Korea. The proposed standards adopted a probabilistic consideration of practicality and classified the use of irrigation water into two categories: upland and rice paddy. The standards suggest guidelines for E. coli, electric conductivity (EC), turbidity, suspended solids (SS), biochemical oxygen demand (BOD), pH, odor, and trace elements. Through proposing the standards, this study attempts to combine features of both the conservative and liberal approaches, which in turn could suggest a new and sustainable practice of agricultural wastewater reuse.

In spite of the low temperature during the winter season and the high land environment, the wetland treatment system is gaining popularity in Korea because of its lower construction cost and simplicity in operation and maintenance. Many different types of wetland treatment systems have been built during the last 10 years, among which the free water surface wetland has

been predominant. Most of the large-scale systems are government projects for improving the water quality of the streams flowing into the estuary dikes and reservoirs. The covering plants used in this system are different in different areas but cattails and reeds or their combinations are common. Constructed wetlands in Korea can be characterized by their shallow depths and short hydraulic residence times. There is no established flow pattern and configuration rules for constructing wetlands, but many efforts have been made with a view to improving their ecological function. Flow control is the most difficult problem in designing a riverbed or riparian wetland. There have been scores of flow rate control devices developed for wetlands, but none of them guarantee wetlands' safety against flooding. In earlier wetland construction, the building materials were mainly soil. Recently, strong and durable building materials such as rocks, gravel beds, concrete and steel are used at vulnerable places to protect them from erosion. [Youngchul et al. \(2006\)](#) investigation indicated that the wetland system would be an appropriate technology because it is not only cheaper to construct, but also requires less maintenance work. However, we suffer from the reduced effectiveness in performance during the winter. We need to evaluate the partial treatment accomplished during 6 to 7 months per year.

## 14.6 Population and GHG Emissions

### Declining Population Growth in the South

The Korean Peninsula is home to 77 million people, about 2/3 are residents of South Korea. But what's really striking is the speed at which it could happen: South Korea's population (currently larger than Spain) could shrink to a level comparable to tiny Switzerland within only a few generations. In 118 years South Korea is predicted to lose 40 million of its 50 million inhabitants, according to the research, which was conducted by a government agency.

With no change in the growth rate, 1.19 children per woman, the southern portion of the peninsula has begun experience a population decline ([Figure 14.15](#)), with a projected population of zero by the 2750 in 732 years, although these values were part of a study commissioned by the opposition party, South Koreans will probably experience the socio-economic impacts populations aging and deline.

Between 1975 and 2015, its median age soared to 41.2 from just 19.6.

And yet with a population density of as of 2017, 526/mile squared, while in the North ~210

### Korean GHG Production

Greenhouse gas emissions have steadily increased in South Korea, and never passing the North's high in the 1990s ([Figure ??](#)). However, more poignant is the precipitous decline in GHG emissions in North Korea.

The decline begins with collapse of the Soviet Union and then by the sanctions placed on the PDRK, who's residents are paying a severe price. Ironically, in terms of the GHG emissions, the country went from one of the worst per capita emitters in the 1990s to one of the lower countries.

While the South Korean's emissions have stabilized in recent years, relative to East Asian average (6.2 is still quite high).

Meanwhile North Korean negotiators have ... [Habib \(2013\)](#)

### 14.6.1 Forest Protection and Food Production

DPRK dramatically increases deforestation in the 1990s,

A large part of the emissions from deforestation and forest degradation has occurred in developing countries, where the share of deforestation-related greenhouse gas emissions has been estimated at around 25% (Houghton, 2005)

[Tubiello et al. \(2015\)](#)

Major forest losses, of more than 0.5% annually, have occurred in the tropical forests of West and East Africa, South and Central America, and Southeast Asia (FAO, 2008). However, there have been significant net forest gains in East Asia (3.8 M ha/year) and Europe (0.7 M ha/year). In spite of these changes, deforestation remains a concern in Asia, the most populous continent in the world (Zhao et al. 2006).

This study presents results from an analysis of deforestation in the Democratic People's Republic of Korea.

Forest cover declined in Asia between 1990 and 2000 but increased later (FAO 2010). There is also substantial regional variability in the forest cover change in Asia.

Forest cover continued to decrease in North Korea (Engler et al. 2014). Deforestation accelerated in North Korea during the 1990s compared to the preceding decade not only in terms of quantity but also in shape (Kang and Choi 2014).

Deforestation in North Korea in recent decades has been receiving attention due to its relationship with the famine and floods its people suffered. Between 1995 and 1996, several floods damaged much of the land used for agriculture. It was estimated that 1.3 million hectares of agricultural land was damaged and lost due to inundation and sedimentation (IUFRO 2007). The debris left afterward in lower elevation zones made the land unusable for growing crops (Kim and Chi 1998). This is a partial cause of the famine that occurred in North Korea in the 1990s, resulting in more clear-cutting of forest to expand the agricultural land (IUFRO 2007).

## 14.7 Food Sufficiency and Sovereignty and Water Security on the Korean Peninsula

### 14.7.1 Economic Transitions

Just a few decades ago, South Korea was a poor, traumatized country sending its own low-skilled migrants out into the world as an economic lifeline. It should be a point of pride that the country's rapid development — the so-called "Miracle on the Han River"—has turned it into a magnet for Asian immigration. But the demographic changes are coming fast, too. "The demand for foreign workers will only intensify," says Park from the International Organization for Migration, "so South Korea better prepare itself."

### 14.7.2 SSR and Water Foot Prints

[Yoo et al. \(2016\)](#) evaluated the water requirements if the ROK were to fulfill ROK's food self-sufficient goals. In the context of a meat diet, the per capita water requirements for production and consumption would need from

There are few examples of increasing water supply for agricultural production by 12% in a matter of a few years. So, one is forced to wonder how these policy goals actually translate to implementation efforts and what is the actual intent behind such goals. [NOTE: Albert suggests that this might be an "empty policy" because of free trade agreements and their impact on domestic agricultural production. Need to follow up.]

### 14.7.3 Organic and Sustainable Water in Korea

The land area dedicated to certified organic agriculture has increased from 14.9 M ha to 37.2 M ha between 2000 and 2011 ([Willer et al., 2014](#)). In regions like the Hongdong District, in ROK, organic production is a rejection of modern Fordist agricultural models to maintain social cohesion while maintaining economic sustainability ([Kim and Jamal, 2015; Suh, 2015](#))

Depending on how organic agriculture is implemented, it may or may not improve the overall sustainability in agriculture. However, by avoiding certain chemicals and restricting the certain cultural practices, organic agriculture is the most well known farming alternative that may improve water quality in many parts of the world.

Organic agriculture and traditional farming methods and foods could have a significant effect on the environmental resources used in the country. By focusing on non-dairy and red meat production, ROK could improve its self-sufficiency and maintain traditional Korean diets.... more here, what about the impact of free trade?

## 14.8 Energy Portfolio

### 14.8.1 Conflated Policy Goals: Renewable Energy and New Energy Sources

### 14.8.2 Industrial Ecology: The Ulsan Eco-Industrial Park

### 14.8.3 Ucity

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GAGbi1-DWQg>

### 14.8.4 Shared Goals

In this paper, I argue that the ROK and DPRK have shared challenges to the development of food security and maintain reliable water supplies. Although each country has radically different development patterns, by sharing the Peninsula, they may have common goals that could be better solved in a collaborative manner.

I am a biogeochemist and have been working in farming communities in California for nearly 20 years. Negotiating the balance between maintaining an economically productive landscape

while protecting and restoring the aquatic ecosystems has been the focal point of my research activities. Using this background to review the context of the Korean Peninsula is a challenge.

My knowledge for the Korean Peninsula is colored by inequalities how North and South Korea institutions engage with both their natural resources and the outside scientific communities. Since I am not a scholar of Korean history, politics, or natural resources, my analysis and engagement with the literature is fraught with uncertainties and potential errors. I will rely on the audience to correct my failings and hope that I offend few with my conclusions.

According to [Rhie et al. \(2017\)](#), “no matter what management reforms the North Korean regime implements, the country’s economic system remains the intrinsic stumbling block.” (p. 283).

Trade- and reform-centered strategies are likely to provide a sustainable solution to North Korea’s problems. Because of North Korea’s lack of comparative advantage in the production of grains, the production-oriented strategy fails to attain the country’s minimum human needs target.

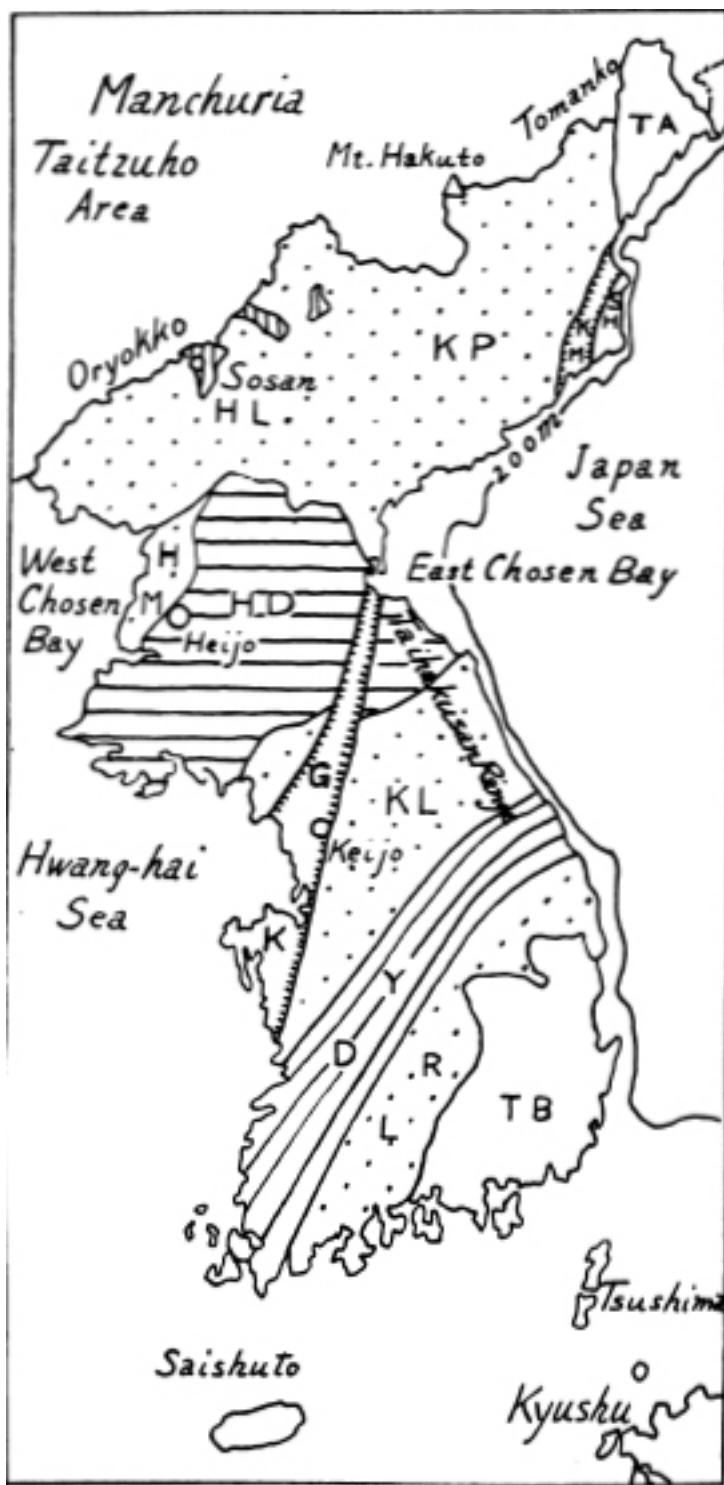


Figure 14.3: (Source: Kobayashi (1933)).

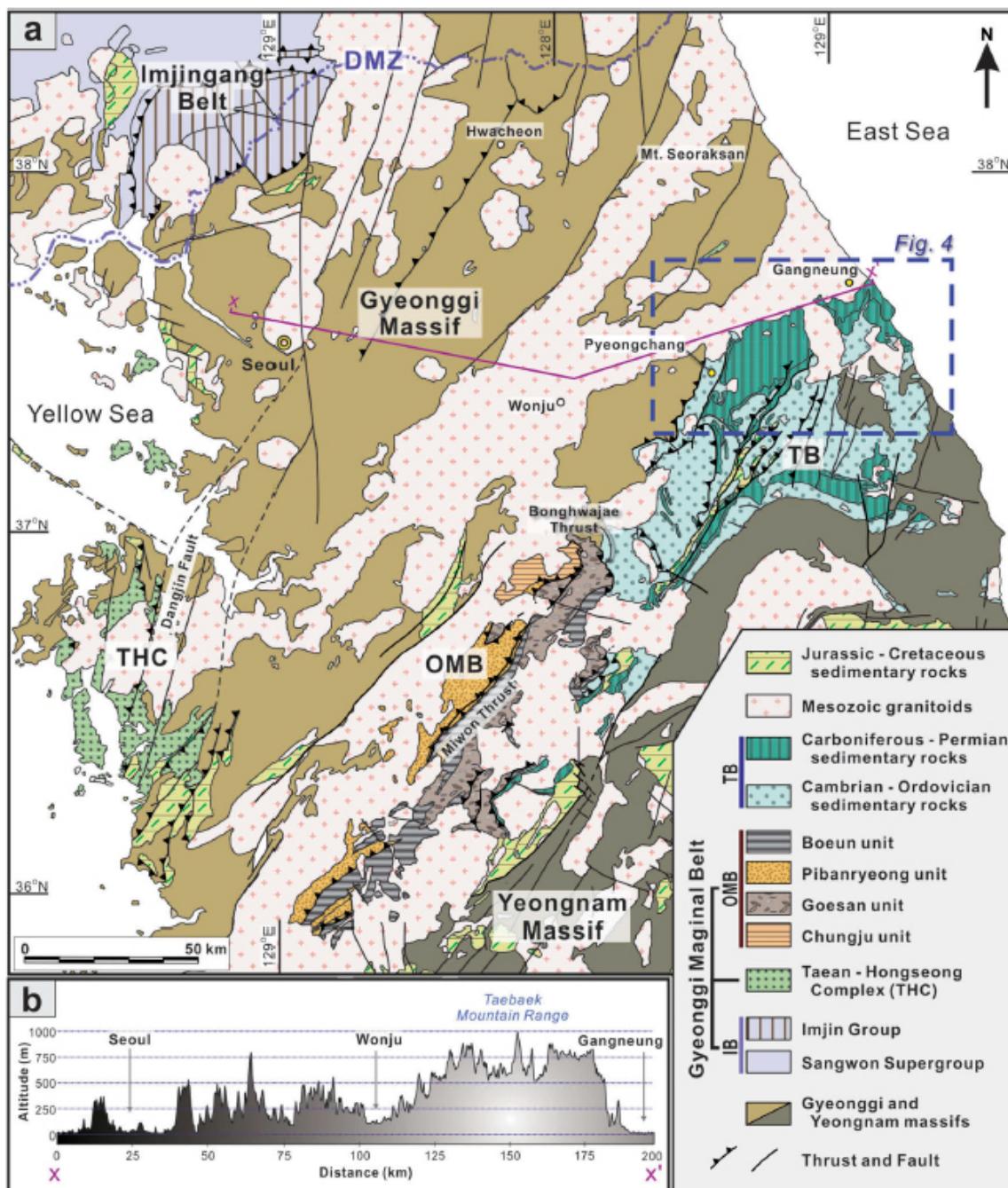


Figure 14.4: (Source: Cho et al. (2018)).

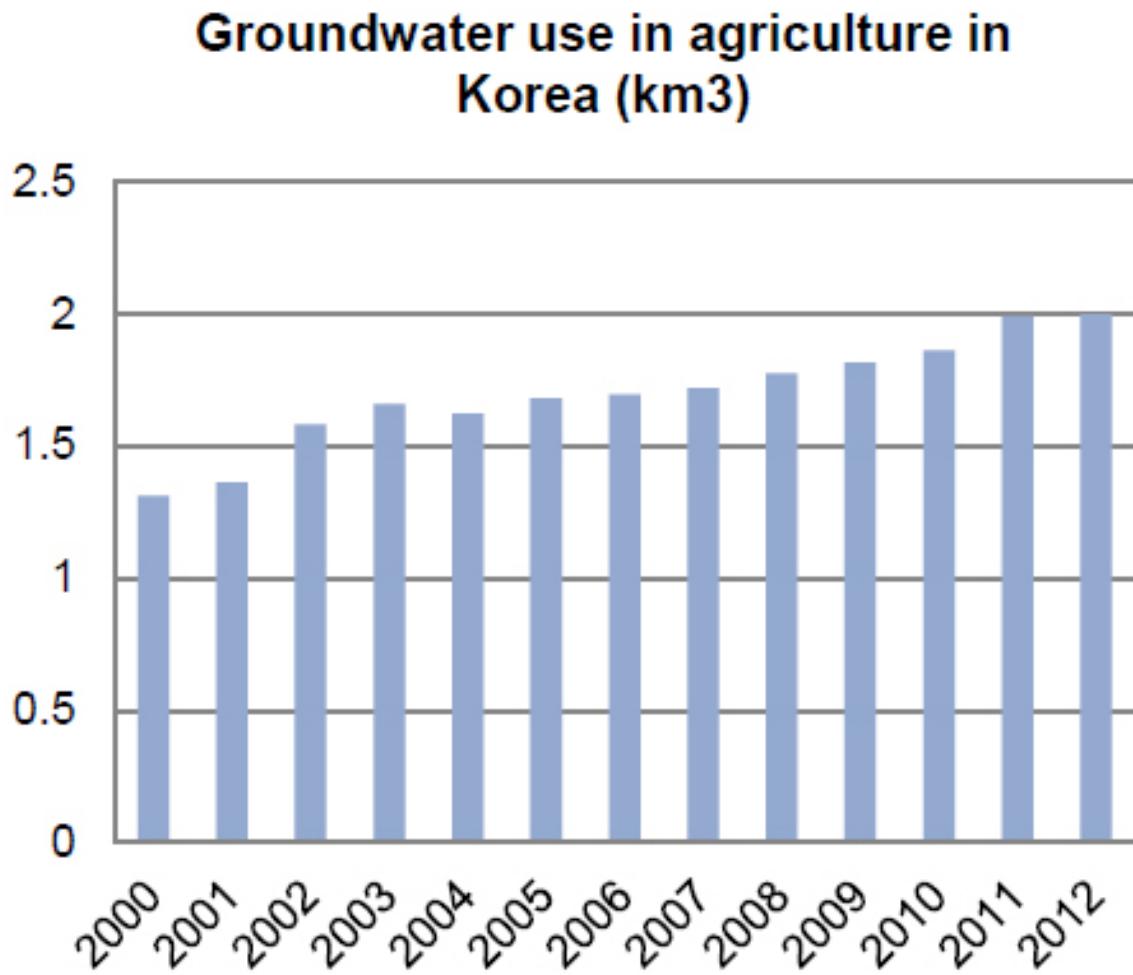
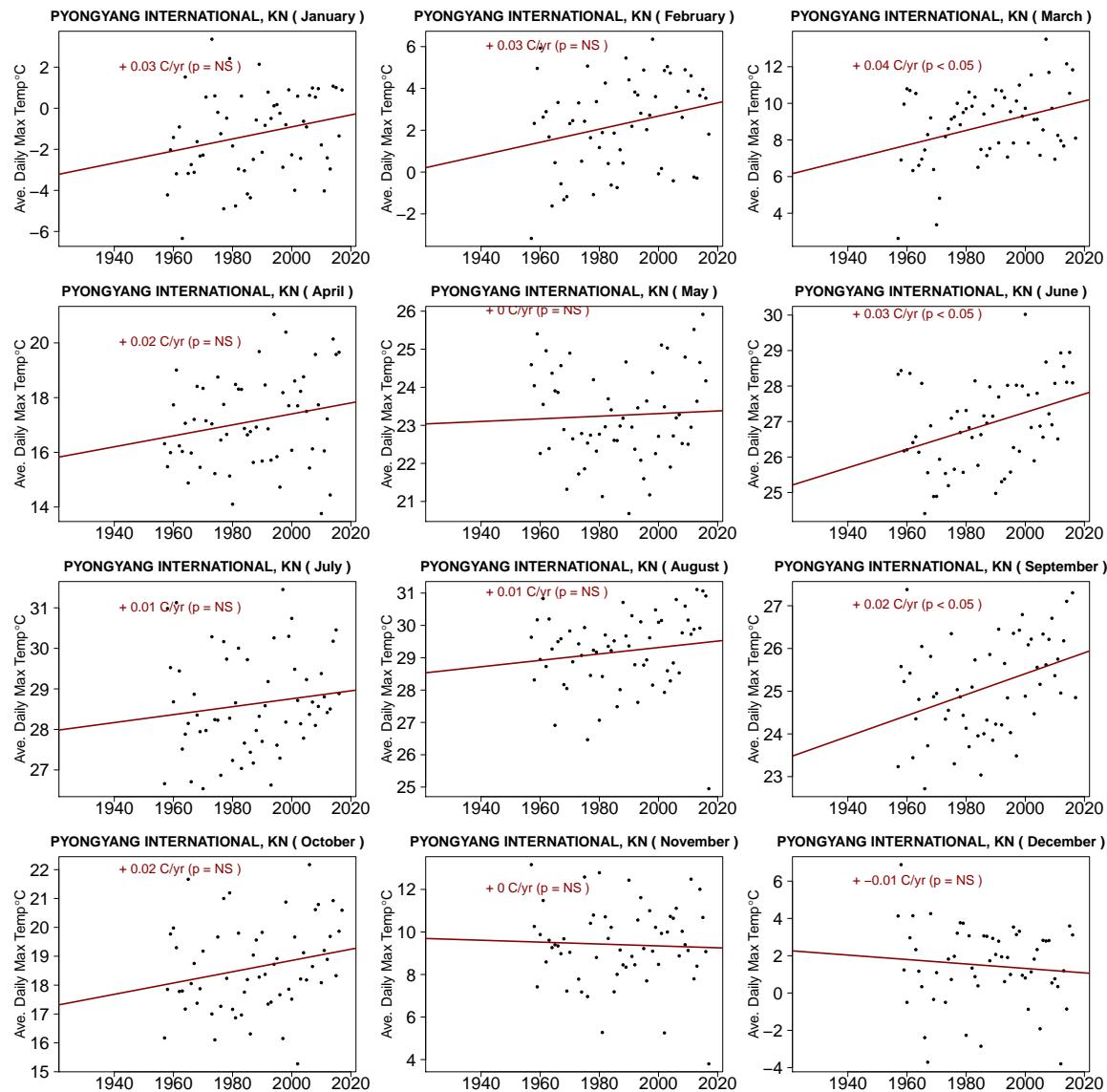
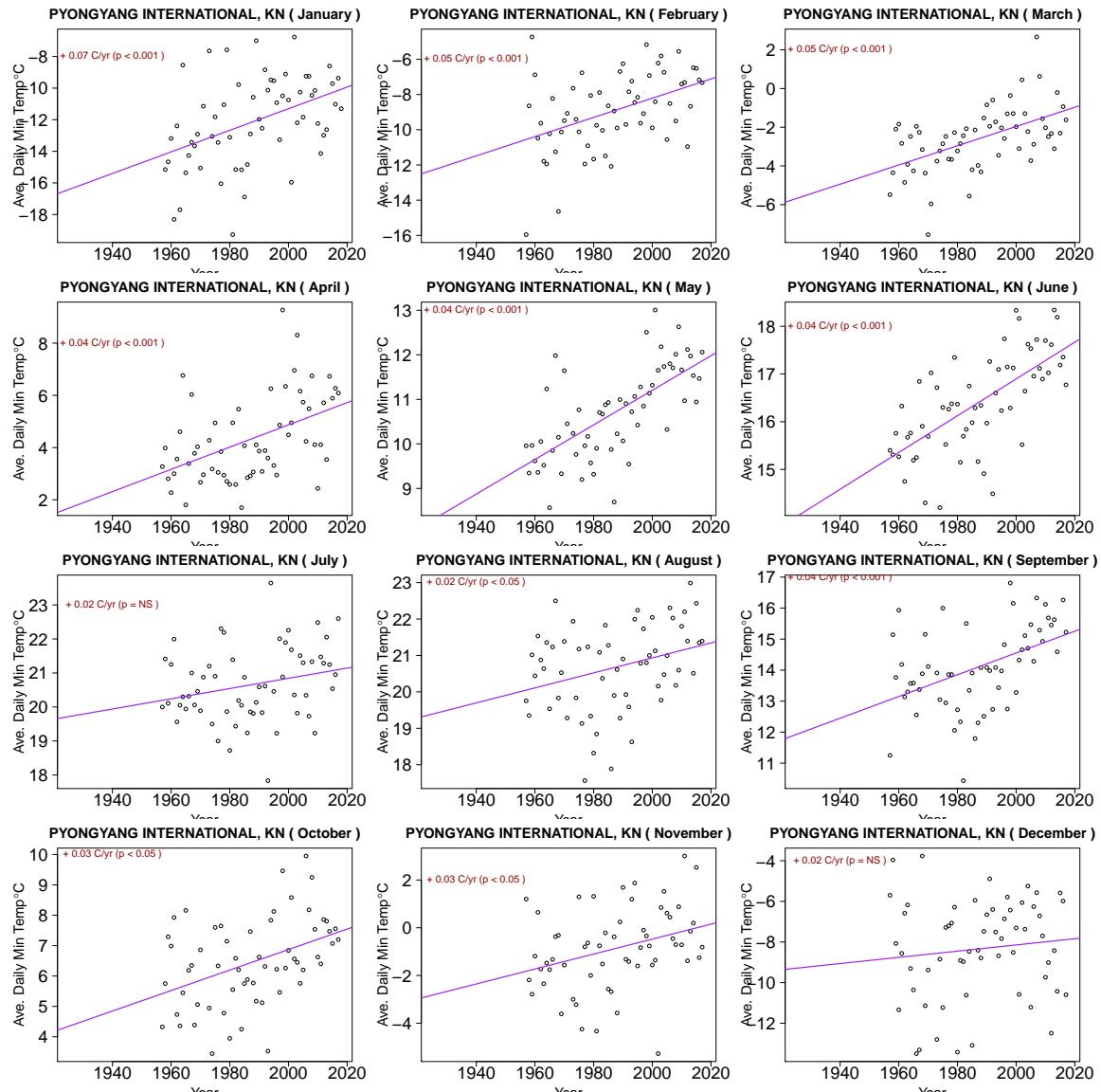
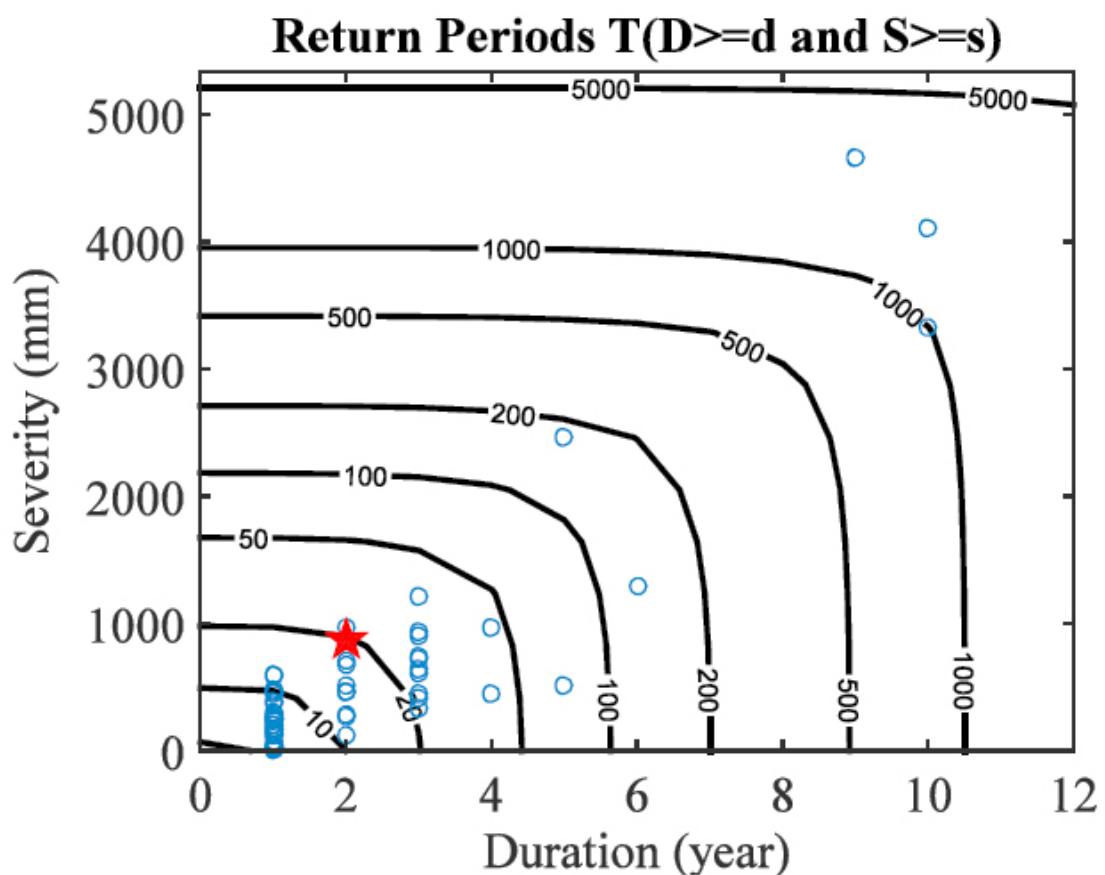


Figure 14.5: Source:[TBD \(2018\)](#).)

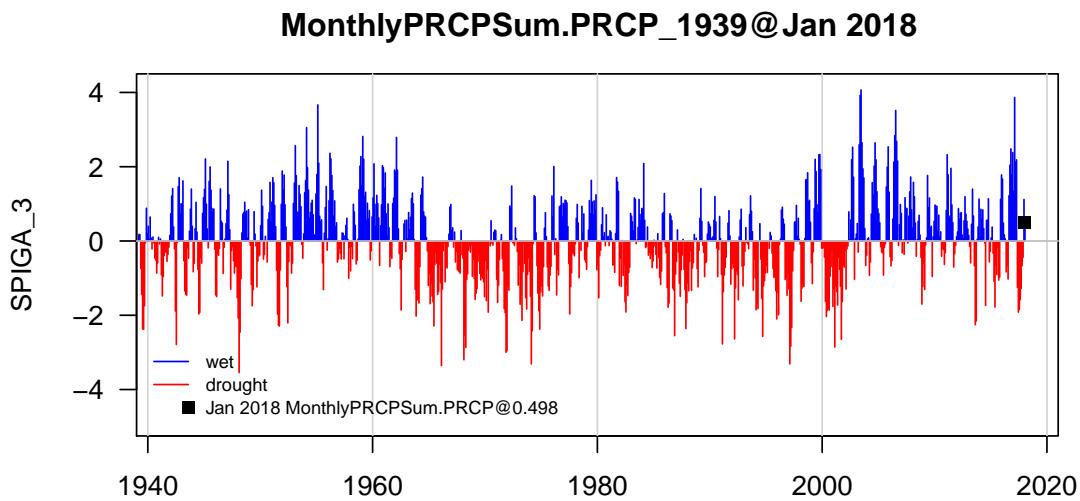
**Figure 14.6:** Max Temp. Pyongyang

**Figure 14.7:** Min Temp. Pyongyang



**Figure 14.8:** Severity and Longevity of drought in Korea (Source: [Kwon et al. \(2016\)](#)). Red star corresponds to the 2013-15 drought.

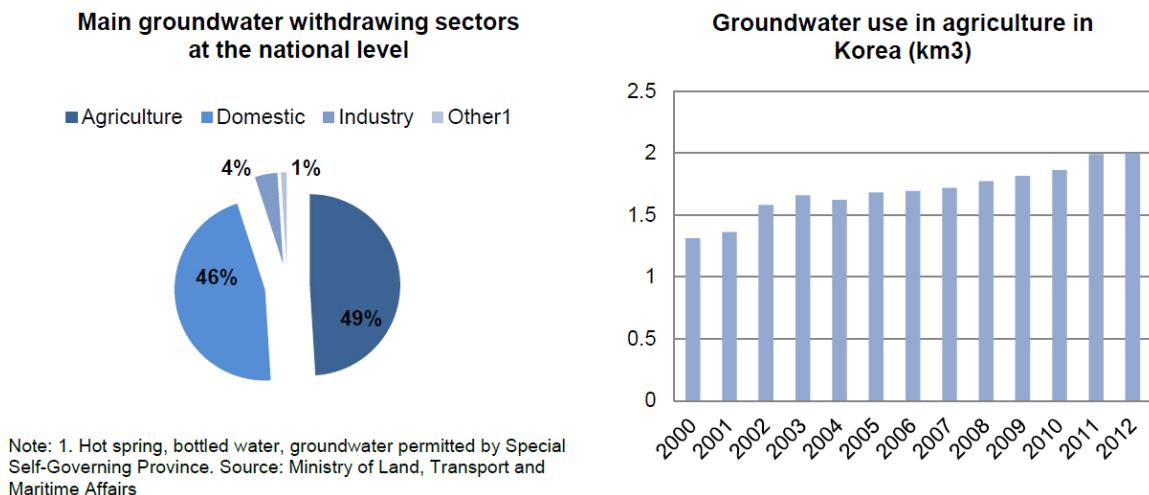
**Figure 14.9:** Standardized Precipitation Index for Pyongpang (1939-2018).



I. Ayala: ivan.ayala@unh.edu.pe

03/15/ 2018

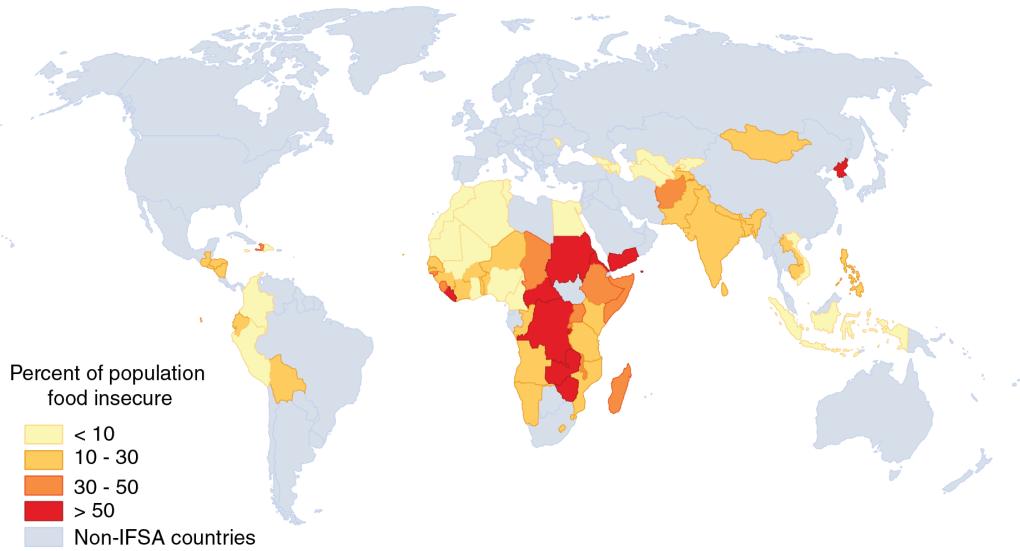
**Figure 14.10:** Proportion and Use of Groundwater in ROK (Source: [TBD \(2018\)](#)).



**Figure 14.11:** Byeokgol-je Embankment (Source: [TBD \(2018\)](#)).



Figure 1

**Share of population that is food insecure, 2017**

IFSA = International Food Security Assessment.  
Source: USDA, Economic Research Service.

**Figure 14.12:** Map of Worldwide Food Insecurity

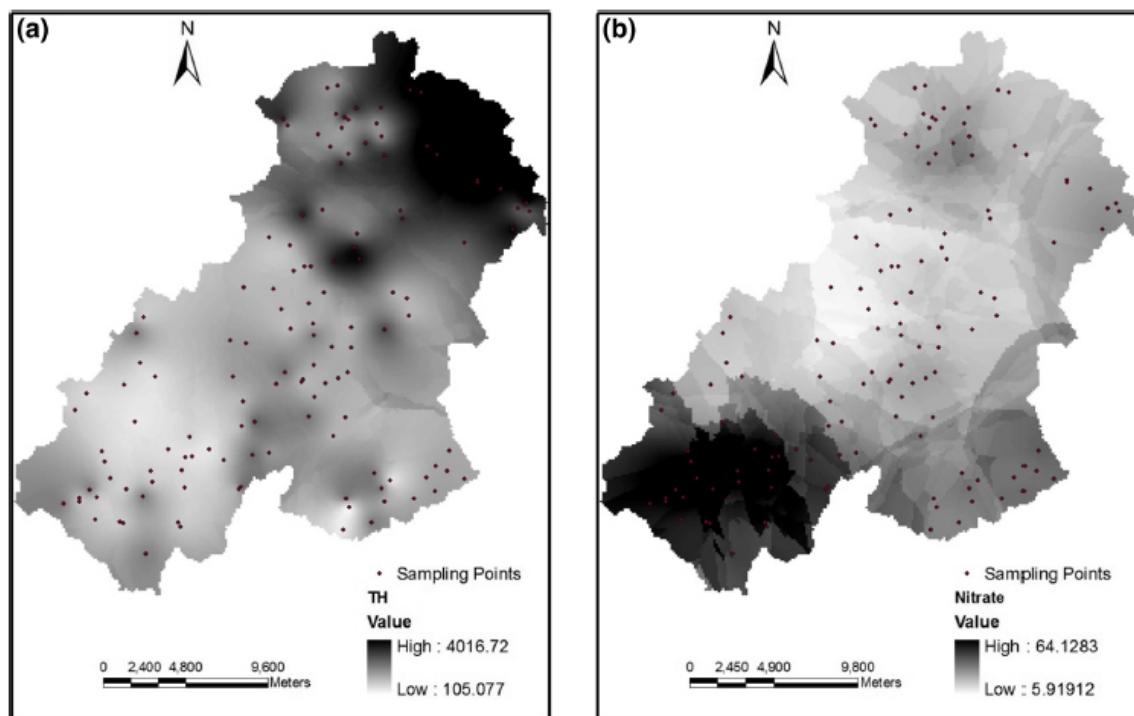
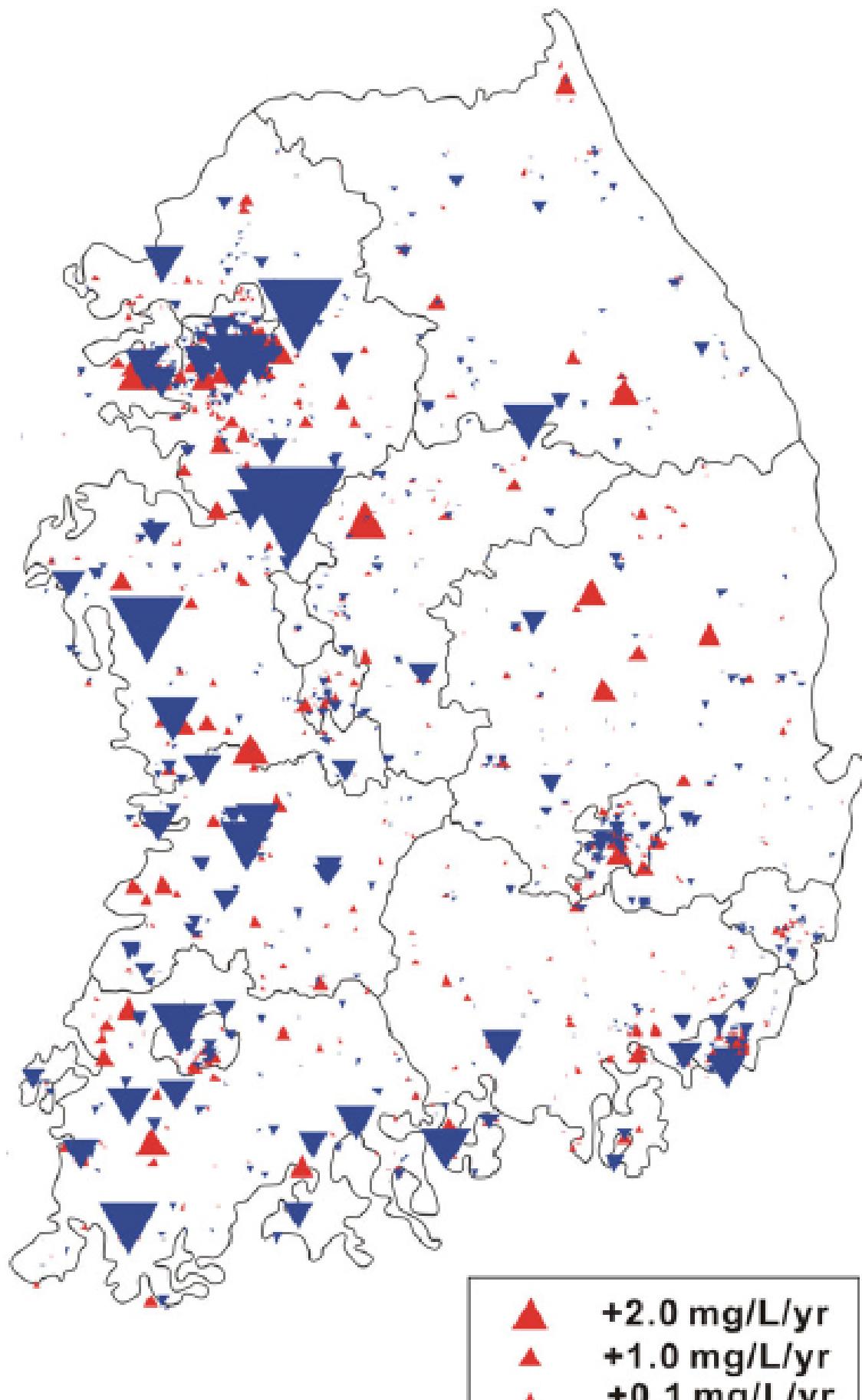
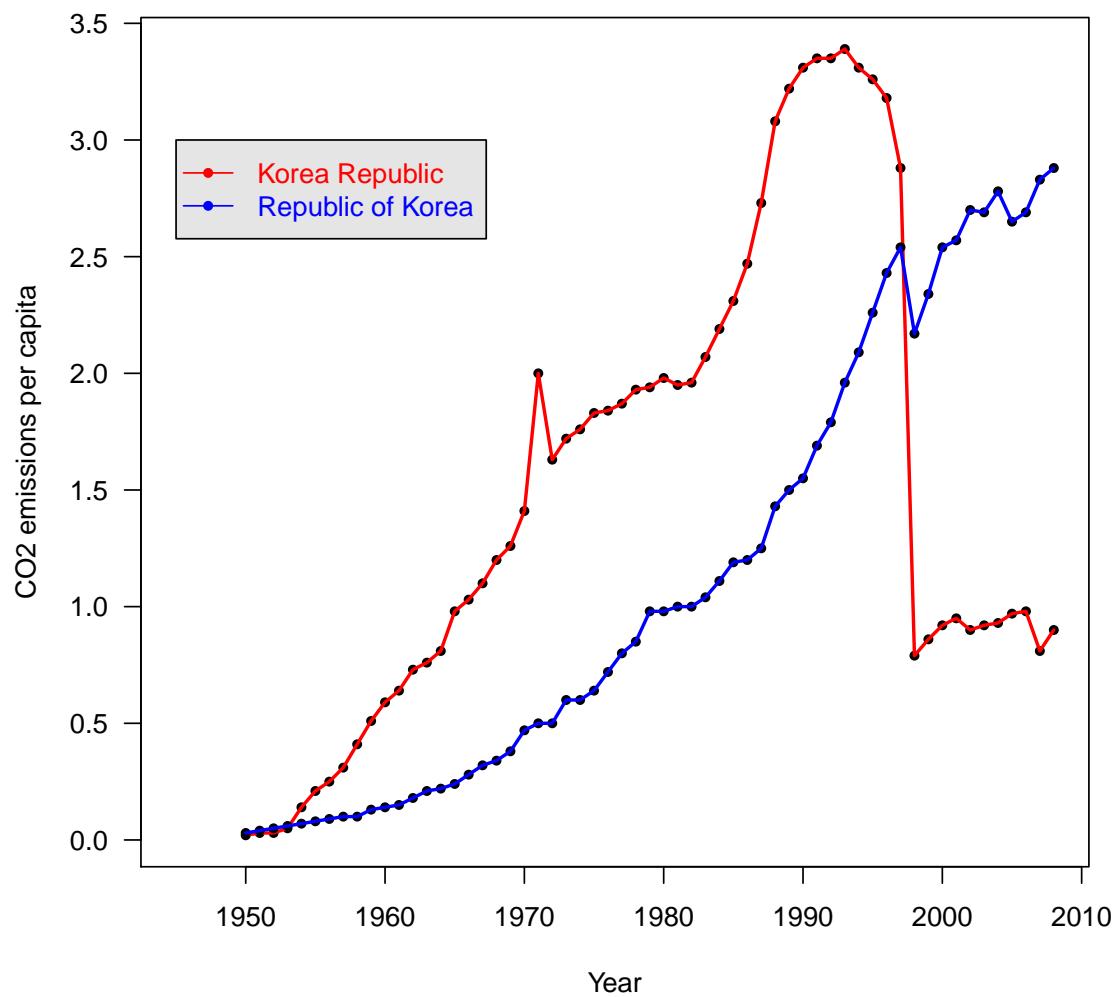


Figure 14.13: (Source: Tolera et al. (2017)).

**Figure 14.14:** Nitrate changes

**Figure 14.15:** Population growth in N and S Korea [TBD \(2018\)](#).

**Figure 14.16:** Korean Emissions (Source: [TBD \(2018\)](#)).





# Chapter 15

## Water Quality

TBD<sup>1</sup>

### 15.1 Arsenic and Water Borne Disease

### 15.2 Arsenic

#### 15.2.1 Arsenic in the Mekong Aquifers

How are the geographical features of the Mekong Delta providing resources to humans and furthermore, what elements of their formation pose challenges to how Vietnamese people will interact with these features in the future?

Erban et al. (2013)<sup>2</sup> investigate the challenges being posed by the overexploitation of aquifers in South and Southeast Asia, with a specific focus on Vietnam. Their research focus is a large ( $\approx 1,000 \text{ km}^2$ ) area of the Mekong Delta in Vietnam. Arsenic in groundwater continues to threaten human health in this region. It is a colorless, odorless, and tasteless poison that is toxic to humans if they are exposed to it over a long period of time (Ravenscroft, year)<sup>3</sup>. The poison occurs most commonly in sands deposited by large rivers, with the worst cases recorded in the tropical basins of Asia. Arsenic-contaminated groundwater is found in the unconsolidated sediments and sedimentary, igneous and metamorphic rock which age in range from thousands of years to billions. In most cases, high levels of arsenic in the groundwater also means there is arsenic in the soils. The effects of arsenic in groundwater is both additive and cumulative because plants can absorb arsenic through the roots. The subsistence rice economies of Asia, whereby rice is irrigated with arsenic-contaminated water, present the worst cases. The deep aquifers are presumed to be sources of pathogen- and arsenic-free water.

---

<sup>1</sup>Statement of Contributions: Betel and Luyi wrote a section about Arsenic for another chapter, but we moved it to this chapter to focus on water quality as a whole...

<sup>2</sup>fix citation

<sup>3</sup>fix citation

### Historical Context

Pliocene-Miocene-age aquifers in the Mekong Delta are contaminated at depths of 200-500 m and they have been heavily exploited. Generally, seven main aquifers are heavily pumped in the Mekong Delta, varying from the Pliocene to the Miocene age. The Division for Geological Mapping for the South of Vietnam, who used a combination of scientific techniques (i.e. mud logging of drill cuttings), determined the delineation of aquifers and their ages, used by Erban et al.<sup>4</sup> in this work. Pumping wells is a process that existed in Vietnam since the 1900s, but became more common after the 1980s. The dissolved concentrations of arsenic are highest near the surface, closer to the Mekong river and its tributaries, reducing greatly with distance. Extreme arsenic concentrations are found in numerous hot spot regions. Erban et al. found that deep wells located in the focus areas of the research in the Mekong area showed more contamination than in other parts of Southeast Asia.

An analysis of satellite-based radar images recorded from 2007 to 2010 shows how intensive groundwater extraction has caused land subsidence of up to 3cm/year. Furthermore, transient 3D aquifer simulations show similar subsidence rates with a total subsidence of up to 27 cm since 1988. Erban et al. (2013)<sup>5</sup> propose a causal mechanism that explains the long-term effect of groundwater extraction on interbedded clays. The groundwater extraction causes these interbedded clays to compact and expel water containing dissolved arsenic or arsenic-mobilizing solutes, examples being dissolved organic carbon and competing ions, into deep aquifers over decades.

The subsequent threat is that deep, untreated groundwater in the Mekong Delta Region will no longer be a safe source of drinking water. The pumping-induced clay compaction was measured as land subsidence. Erban et al. present a conceptual model that explains the vertical distribution of arsenic in the Mekong Delta according to how it developed historically. Starting in the Miocene age and tracking to the present, the researchers explain how fresh clays rich in arsenic and organic compound were deposited widely. The slow diffusion out of contaminated pores and dissolution of the solid-phase arsenic supply allowed for a continuous deep arsenic load in deep clays. Recently, the overpumping of low-arsenic, deep aquifers resulted in causing water carrying arsenic-mobilizing solutes to be squeezed out of the deadflow storage of clays to neighbouring aquifers.

Kintisch, Eli. "Department of State's air pollution sensors go global." (2018): 248-249.

---

<sup>4</sup>fix citation

<sup>5</sup>fix citation

# Chapter 16

## Air Quality

TBD<sup>1</sup>

### 16.1 Air Masks in Asia

#### 16.1.1 Air Pollution and Air-Borne Contagions

A common site in East Asia, people wearing masks. Even designer mask coming in vogue suggests that the ...

Kintisch, Eli. "Department of State's air pollution sensors go global." (2018): 248-249.

On April 4th, 2018 off the coast of the island of Borneo an oil spill engulfing much of the East Asian sea sweep Indonesia making it go on a state of emergency. Southeast Asia's abundance of temperate rainforest make it even more important to mitigate hazardous air pollution in the region. Air pollution is seen in Indonesia with the sizeable burning of land systems contributing to record high air hazards each year. The movement of CO<sub>2</sub> in Southeast Asia activity show shifts in the regions

Research on CO and CO<sub>2</sub> concentration have shown high activity increase in the southern and northern Indian ocean. The increase was from approximately 50 ppbv in southern hemisphere to >120 ppbv north of the equator. CO findings also report as high as 200 ppbv near coastal India. We can also see relative aerosol mass in ozone levels indicating common transport and source for CO as well. ([Phadnis et al., 2002](#))

#### 16.1.2 Southeast Asia Haze

The Southeast Asia Haze has become infamous for its impacts on human health and agriculture. In many parts of Southeast Asia, the haze has become an annual phenomenon as human activity in the region, including prescribed peatland burns, becomes more prevalent (figure 16.1). The Indian Ocean Experiment (INDOEX) study done in 1999 found that the aerosols in the haze could drastically disrupt water availability and crop production because of the

---

<sup>1</sup>Statement of Contributions:



**Figure 16.1:** Southeast Asian Haze in Indonesia

way the aerosols interfere with the sunlight's breakdown of hydroxyl radicals ([Taylor, 2003](#)). There is a tremendous loss of biodiversity because the haze can cover millions of hectares of land for prolonged periods of time. The haze pollution has both immediate and long-term environmental impacts. Though an overwhelming number of the massive forest fires occur in Indonesia, the haze crosses national boundaries and is carried by winds to several neighboring countries, such as Malaysia and Singapore.

The burning of peat, as compared to the burning of other kinds of land, is much more dangerous because of the particular matter and sulphur and nitrous oxides that are released when peat is burned. The Southeast Asian Haze is unique because of the impact that burning peat has on the atmosphere.

The impact that the Southeast Asia Haze has had on human health is drastic and worsened in recent years. There are long-term respiratory effects of the haze. Air pollution indexes from the World Health Organization reached extremely unsafe levels because the biomass smoke contained soot particles, inorganic materials like silica, ammonia, and more ([Sastry, 2002](#)). This air pollution can cause respiratory and cardiovascular diseases, of which the elderly and young are most vulnerable. Premature deaths from the haze are difficult to measure because it is on a much longer time-scale than immediate respiratory problems, but it is suggested that the haze in Southeast Asia will have long-term impacts on human health.

There are not only environmental and health impacts but also economic and political impacts from the Southeast Asia haze. The negative impacts the haze has on human health and



**Figure 16.2:** Peat Erosion

agriculture cost Southeast Asian nations billions of USD in damage and should the magnitude of the Southeast Asian haze continue, future profits and ecological health could be permanently damaged. Future profits and ecological health are at risk, even if the phenomenon of the Southeast Asia haze is resolved, because the landscape could be damaged and take centuries to recover properly.

### ENSO Events

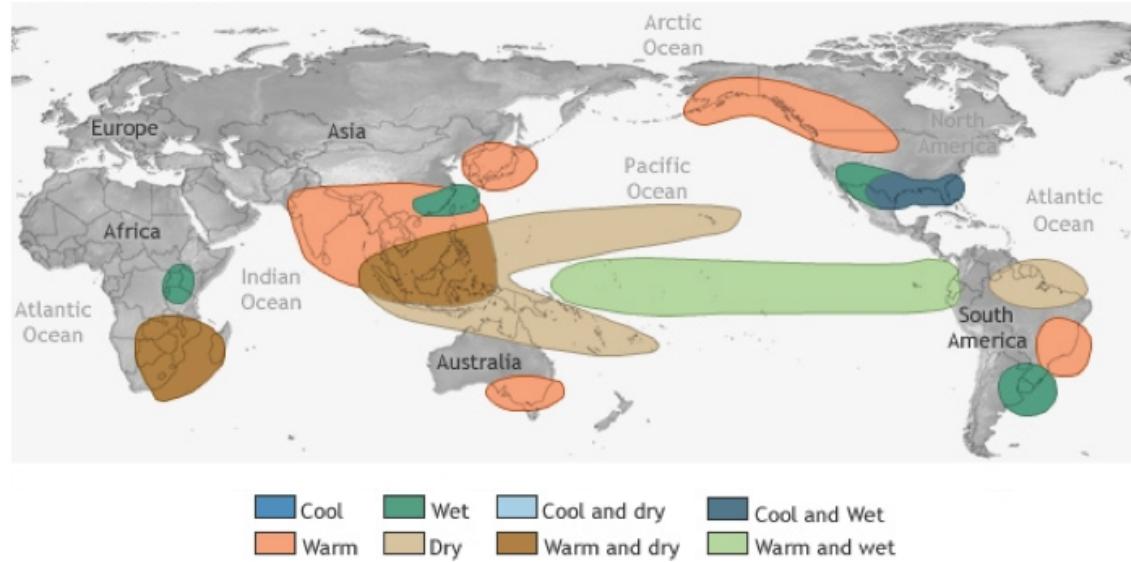
The El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO) phenomenon is a cyclical warming of the eastern equatorial Pacific Ocean. It occurs every three to five years and lasts anywhere from six to eighteen months (figure 16.3). ENSO, unlike La Nina, brings droughts to even the wettest parts of insular Southeast Asia, such as Borneo ([Aiken, 2004](#)).

Peatlands are particularly vulnerable to ENSO because it is so dependent on consistent moisture for freely draining soil. Droughts cause water levels in peat swamps to drop. In Borneo, peat swamp forests during severe El Nino droughts have been subject to fires that have consumed peat up to 50cm in the late twentieth century ([Turetsky et al., 2015](#)).

In El Nino drought years, the prescribed burns in peatlands can burn with greater intensity than in more climatically stable years. With dry lakes, low river levels, and dry peat soils, strong winds during El Nino can help ignite fires or spread fires that had already been started intentionally by human activity ([Chokkalingam et al., 2005](#)).

## EL NIÑO CLIMATE IMPACTS

December–February



**Figure 16.3:** A model of global El Niño climate impacts during the peak of an El Niño-Southern Oscillation event.

The ENSO phenomenon that led to drought conditions was associated with high air pressure over the region that prevented the smoke haze from dissipating. As a result, the haze spread horizontally but managed to maintain a high level of concentration. In cities, the haze led to an atmospheric inversion and trapped emissions from cars and factories within the city. The high air pressure makes it difficult for the smoke haze to dissipate in cities in Southeast Asia because there is a large mass of high-rise buildings in the cities. The exact causes of the trapped haze are still unknown but one theory is that it is similar to the heat island effect, in which changes to the landscape cause urban regions to become warmer than their rural surroundings.

# Chapter 17

## Capturing Solar, Wind and Tidal Energy

TBD<sup>1</sup>

### 17.1 Solar

The production of biomass the basis of conversation of sunlight to fixed carbon (sugar) – but since the early 1960s?, technologies have been used to convert solar energy directly into electricity using photovoltaic technology.

### 17.2 Wind

### 17.3 Tidal

---

<sup>1</sup>Statement of Contributions:



## **Part III**

# **Bread Crumbs and Human Scenarios**



# **Chapter 18**

## **Biomimicry: Nature as a Model**

JHANVI XXX

### **18.1 Biomimicry: Infrastructure and Design Theory**

#### **18.1.1 Introduction**

Have you wondered how we have created submarines that can move so naturally through water? How the fastest train in the world travels at 200 miles per hour? How we have made needles that hurt less and less when you need to get that vaccine? The answer is that we have learned from nature.

This chapter explores the topic of Biomimicry, where it has been derived from and what it means, and then will focus on two case studies in the field. The chapter adds to the existing literature and scholarly conversation by focusing on learning from nature in Asia.

Asian cultures have a rich history of learning from nature from medicinal plants to physical architecture of temples and pagodas they have all found inspiration outdoors. In the modern day, this connection is sometimes forgotten and my paper will try to re-bridge this.

I will delve into the theoretical study of the subject and then suggest implementable solutions that are biologically inspired. The reason this is unique is because often times papers are limited to theory, and not actionable items and that is why my cases are supported by published patents, books, and even quotes from researchers who have capitalized on the science.

My first case study, to be applied in China, explores the cement industry and how it can be changed to be more cost and energy effective, based on research conducted by a Stanford researcher. My second case study, to be applied in LA, explores how a design implemented in Beijing can be brought back to LA in designing an energy efficient stadium.

Finally, we apply Biomimicry in Smart Cities and current examples of what exists, and what has worked and not worked, to understand the future of this field.

## 18.2 What is Biomimicry?

Biomimicry is an innovative approach to problem-solving, seeking sustainable solutions to human challenges, which emulate nature's time-tested patterns and strategies. This is developed based on the ideas that gave rise to chaos theory and fractal theory and others, which says that nature has already solved many of the problems which we are grappling with. The 'secrets of survival' are becoming more and more important to humans as we progress technologically, and have fewer resources available. Biomimicry enables us to tap into this secrets, and harness them to make efficient and practical solutions.

## 18.3 The Theory

In order to understand how to apply Biomimicry, it is first essential to understand the theory that supports the field.<sup>1</sup>

### 1. Function and Strategy<sup>2</sup>

Biomimicry focuses on how nature, and living things, address certain functions or solve certain problems instead of how beautiful the solutions look, or how simple they are. A function is the purpose of a product or solution. In the context of biomimicry, function refers to the role played by an organism's adaptations or behaviours that enable it to survive. Functions can be met by systematic use of a system or a strategy. A biomimicry strategy is one that is a mechanism or process performing the function. It is often an adaptation to an environment where the function is needed. For example, the function of a honeybee is to collect nectar/ create honey for its honeycomb and for sustenance. The honeybee's strategy is to pollinate trees in the process of collecting nectar, and using its long snout to collect the nectar. This section leaves us with two take-aways:

- Ask yourself, what should my design do?
- Ask how questions. Eg: How does nature keep animals warm?

### 2. The Systems Perspective

When different functions and different solutions work together to impact a larger function, a system is created. The key thing here is the relationships between the smaller functions — if these are broken then none of the parts can serve their functions. As Buckminster Fuller once said, "A system is greater than the sum of its parts." Systems have boundaries that allow the larger system to be broken into smaller ones or sub-systems. Many large systems can also connect to create super-systems. An example is the water system, the air system, and more create the processes that maintain nature's balance. Adjacent systems can exist at any of these levels, but influence similar systems and may have similar functions.

### 3. Earth's Operating System

The earth has physical boundaries which we can't leave easily. We are bound by our need for oxygen, by the atmosphere, and by the blanket of space surrounding us. In this operating system, anything that imposes scarcity on the earth, shapes the system:

- limited water

---

<sup>1</sup>better, but you should have some text to help the reader understand what you are doing here

<sup>2</sup>I think this/these should be subsections

- limited air/ atmosphere
  - limited sunlight, from which all energy ultimately is derived
  - gravity
  - biological systems that have been shaped around these scarcities
  - competition and predation which led to evolution as a system of sustenance
4. Natural Patterns
- Natural patterns include things that are persistent, and don't regularly change. Examples of this include:
- Natures ability to recycle everything it produces
  - Natures ability to use shape as a mode of function
  - Natures inherent feedback loops- ability to change when something goes wrong

## 18.4 Biomimicry as a worldview

Biomimicry is a unique way of looking at any topic. It accepts that fundamentally everything in nature has a function and a strategy. It is similar to systems thinking such that the natural environment is its system, and everything within it is interdependent. As explained in the section above, finding the function of a system or product is the first step in making the connection between the object, what it is used to accomplish, and how it accomplishes the task.

A function, by definition, is the purpose of something. In the context of biomimicry, function refers to the role played by an organism's adaptations or behaviours that enable it to survive. Here is a list of functions that are underlying most natural tendencies and can be found in objects and tasks:

- Attach or Move
  1. Move or Stay put
  2. Protect from Physical Harm
  3. Protect from living things
  4. Protect from non-living threats
  5. Manage structural forces
  6. Regulate physiological processes
  7. Prevent structural failure
- Maintain Community
  1. Coordinate
  2. Cooperate
  3. Provide Ecosystem Services
- Modify
  1. Modify Physical state
  2. Modify chemical/ electrical state
  3. Adapt/ optimize
  4. Transform/ convert energy

- Make
  - 1. Reproduce
  - 2. Physically assemble
  - 3. Chemically assemble
- Process Information
  - 1. Navigate
  - 2. Send signals
  - 3. Process signals
  - 4. Sense Signals/ environmental cues
  - 5. Compute/ learn/ de or en-code
- Break down
  - 1. Chemically break down
  - 2. Physically break down
- Get, Store, or Distribute Resources
  - 1. Capture, Absorb, or filter
  - 2. Store
  - 3. Distribute
  - 4. Expel

## 18.5 Biomimicry History

Biomimicry as a pedagogy was developed<sup>3</sup> first in 500 B.C when the Greeks saw biological organisms as models in finding harmonious balance and proportion between the parts of a design that is synonymous to classical ideal of beauty. This was used as inspiration in finding the Golden Ratio or 2.16 which is the ratio of plant stems to petal length, or bird wingspan to body. The Golden Ratio came to be a defining beauty standard, and normalised the comparison of natural and man-made objects. In 1482, Leonardo Da Vinci was inspired by birds flying to invent a flying machine. This is an early example of Biomimicry. This also helped in the development of the Wright's brother first prototype to make an airplane in 1948. In 1958, Jack E. Steele introduced the term Bionics and he defined it as the science of natural systems or their analogues. However, the term Biomimicry itself first appeared in 1982 before which it was an abstract concept. In 1997, scientist and author Janine Benyus popularized the term more in her book, "Biomimicry: Innovation inspired by Nature". In 2005, Bryony Schwan and Janine Benyus co-founded the Biomimicry 3.8 and in 2007 Chris Allen joined Beynus and Schwan to help launch "AskNature" which is the first digital library containing a list of natural solutions to global problems. Scientists argue that Biomimicrt picked up traction after nano-engineering became popular in the 1990s. Here, designers can search a collection of natural systems classified by their design and engineering. Today for example, look at the nose design of Japan's speedy bullet trains and how they resemble a bird's beak. Biomimicry is continually growing but can sometimes exist in academic bubbles. For a solutions based pedagogy like this to exist and get better, it needs to be exposed to geographic differences and perspectives.

---

<sup>3</sup>developed seems like the wrong word

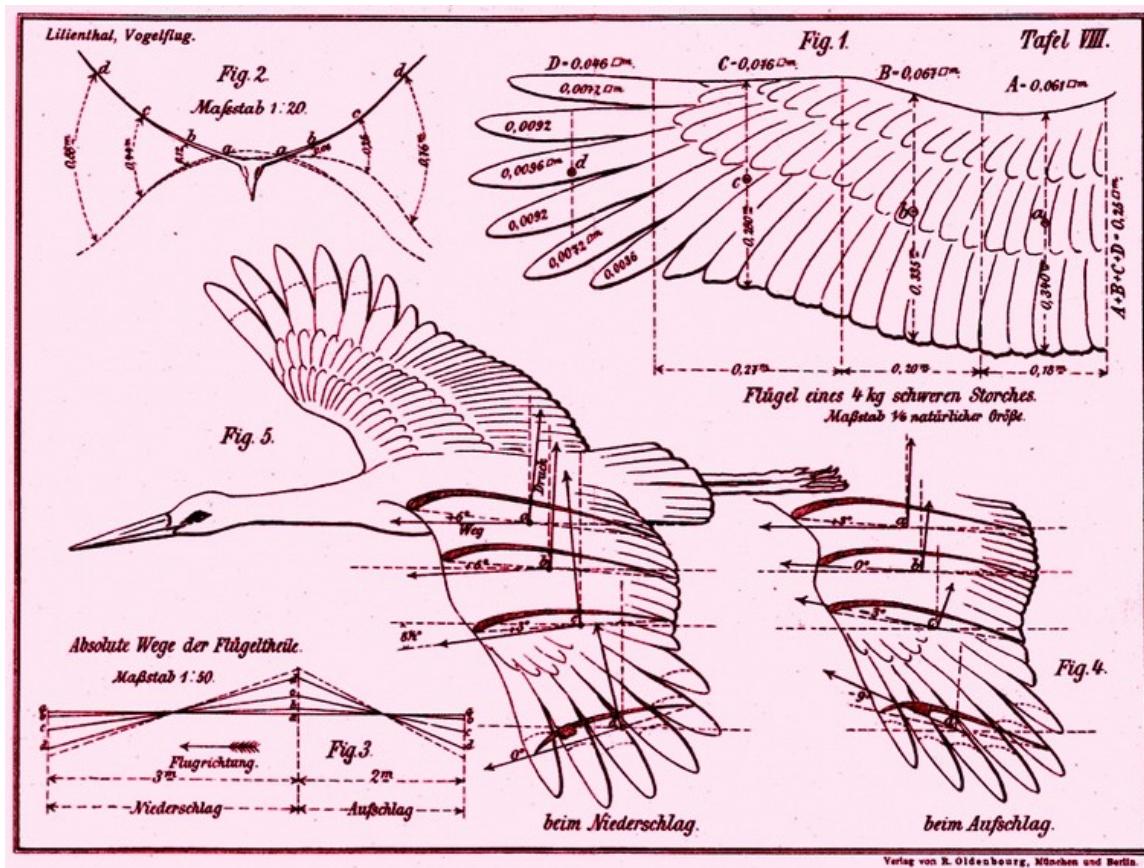


Figure 18.1: Drawings inspired by birds, used in designing the first flying machines

## 18.6 Case Study: The Cement Industry alternatives

In order to best see how far we have come in the applications of Biomimicry, we can look at examples within industries of its applications. Biomimicry application in the cement industry has been one of interest to many scientists because it is an industry on which human progress is based. We urbanize, and sustain large populations, by building structures out of cement. In addition, it is an industry that contributes hugely to the world GDP, and uses a lot of energy. Because both the outcomes and inputs in this system are huge, any solutions could revolutionize the future. Let us turn to China which is a prime example of a robust system. China, in the last three years, has used more cement than the United States in the 20th century. Cement production has been uniform for several years, and is often inefficient and unsustainable. How does cement production take place? What are its uses? How can this problem can be solved using a biomimicry approach? How is this different in impact than before?

Cement is eventually used to make concrete, so we will cover only the production of cement in this section. There are two ways to produce cement which are covered in the next two subsections.

### 18.6.1 Dry Process

1. Quarry the principal raw materials - limestone, clay, and others. This is followed by crushing the rock, first to a 6 inch size, then using hammer mills to reduce the pieces to 3 inches or smaller.
2. The crushed rock is combined with other ingredients such as iron ore or fly ash and ground, mixed, and fed to a cement kiln.
3. The cement kiln heats all the ingredients to about 2,700 degrees Fahrenheit in huge cylindrical steel rotary kilns lined with special firebrick. Kilns are mounted with the axis inclined slightly tilted away from the horizontal to avoid settling.
4. The finely ground raw material or the slurry is fed into the higher end. At the lower end of the kiln, there is a flame produced by controlled burning of powdered coal, oil, alternative fuels, or gas. During this movement in the kiln, some gases are given off, and the remainder unites to form a new substance called clinker. Clinker comes out of the kiln and is discharged red-hot from the lower end of the kiln.
5. The heated air from the coolers is returned to the kilns, a process that saves fuel and increases burning efficiency. The clinker is then cooled, cement plants grind it and mix it with small amounts of gypsum and limestone.

### 18.6.2 Wet Process

In the wet process, raw materials are ground with water before being fed into the kiln between steps 2 and 3.

### 18.6.3 Characteristics of the Cement Industry

Cement is used as the main binding element in concrete, used for constructing bridges, roads, buildings, and many other man-made sites. It is a construction material used for decoration and for practical purposes but its large-scale production influences the way we look at emissions and carbon economies. Cement production needs a lot of energy, and is CO<sub>2</sub> and raw materials intensive. Even these raw materials being quarried or produced require energy.

Any changes to the cement production processes will reduce this amount of energy consumed. The combination of process emissions (emissions released when limestone is transformed into lime during the production process) and emissions from the required thermal energy leads to substantial CO<sub>2</sub> emissions for each tonne of cement.

In addition to the environmental costs, cement production has significant economic costs. Building a cement plant costs hundreds of millions of dollars. In addition, making sure that the plant is complying with all the legislation and operation costs also makes this an expensive field. 30 percent of the cement industry's total operating expenses relate to energy costs. The cost of a new cement plant is equivalent to around three years of turnover, which ranks the cement industry among the most capital-intensive industries.

Cement is interesting because it must be a homogenous product. It is made from the same natural ingredients each time but must meet a standard because it can otherwise have many safety breaches. This standard makes the market high in competition if some plants can produce the outcome at cheaper costs in cheap labour markets like China. Many developed countries import cement from countries like China for this reduced cost. Transporting cement across countries, or from plants to construction sites, also poses a major energy consumption outcome. The Cement Industry, because it is tied to construction, is a good indicator of general economic activity. When a country is booming, and economy is growing, there are more infrastructure and developmental projects ongoing.

Connecting it back to the theory of Biomimicry, the solutions for the cement industry were derived from corals. Corals in the open ocean are solid structures made from calcium carbonate where organisms live and thrive. Their function, similar to cement, is to remain solid and to organize people and space. In addition to this, cement also has an economic function where the organization of people and space earns a lot of money.

All these factors make it essential for us to find sustainable solutions for this industry.

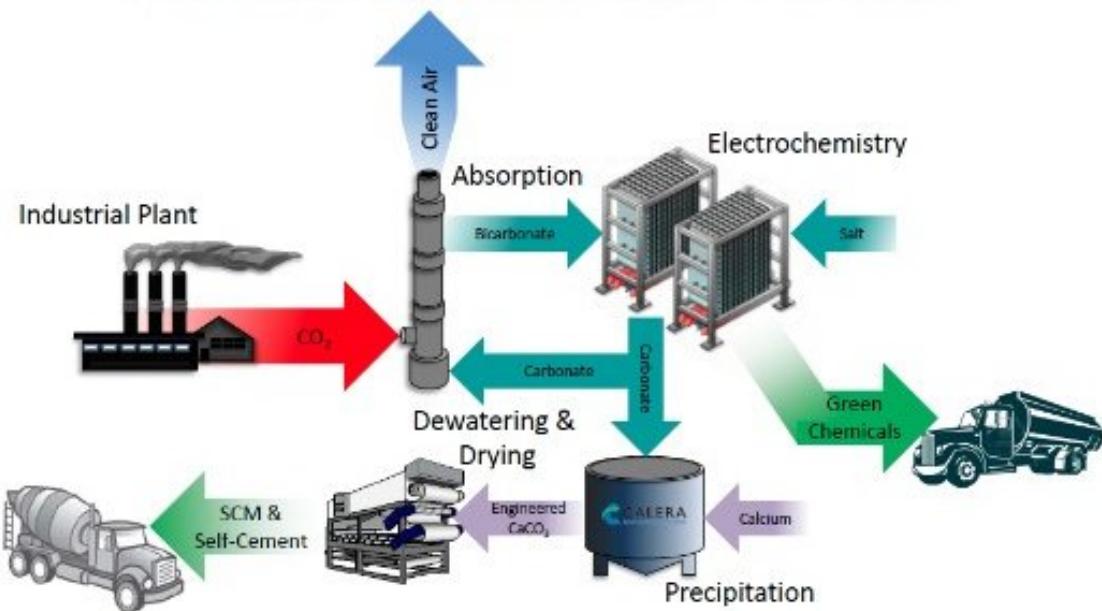
#### 18.6.4 The Biomimicry Solution

The biomimicry solution for cement is based on inspiration derived from the formation of Coral reefs. Instead of consuming carbon dioxide, this method actually removes Carbon dioxide from the environment which we talked about earlier as one of the big problems with this industry. This method was found by Brent Constantz of Stanford University, who founded the company Calera. The method takes waste CO<sub>2</sub> from local power plants and dissolves it into seawater to form carbonate, which mixes with calcium in the seawater and creates a solid. This is the same way that corals form skeletons and we can create cement.

Constantz has described this method in the following way. There is a natural interaction between CO<sub>2</sub>, which is a gas, and water. At equilibrium, the CO<sub>2</sub> is dissolved in water. The colder the water is, the more CO<sub>2</sub> is dissolved into it. This forms another molecule, CO<sub>3</sub>, or carbonate. The higher the concentration of CO<sub>2</sub>, the more carbonate formed. When water interacts with very high concentrations of CO<sub>2</sub>, like the flue gas of a power plant, more CO<sub>2</sub> is dissolved in water to form carbonate. At Calera, there is a 110 foot high absorber, a vertical carwash, which is spraying sea water through a big, vertical column. At the base of the column comes the flue gas from this power plant. It comes up from the base of the column, and it goes up and goes over the top. On its way out, with the sea water spraying through it, the same reaction occurs. The CO<sub>2</sub> goes to CO<sub>3</sub> as it dissolves in the water. Sea water has calcium. When the calcium sees the carbonate, calcium carbonate is formed. This is the same

as limestone is, and how corals form their shells. Solids formed from this process look like milk and fall to the bottom of the column to be separated. They're dried out using the waste heat from the hot flue gas. To trap the heat of the hot flue gas, a heat exchanger is used so there is no burning of fossil fuel to dry it out. This produces a powder in a spray dryer, which is akin to a machine making powdered milk. This is the cement. The cement can be used to make aggregate, synthetic rock like synthetic limestone, or it can be kept dry as a cement and used in a concrete formulation.

## Conversion of Carbon Dioxide to Carbonates



**Figure 18.2:** How Calera technology forms Cement using Biomimicry

This process captures CO<sub>2</sub>, waste heat and fly ash from power plant smokestacks, and runs the CO<sub>2</sub> through seawater to produce calcium carbonate to make cement. This unique process has distinct outcomes that solve for some of the problems we discussed earlier. The flue gas out of the kiln (step 4) is cleaned of its harmful CO<sub>2</sub>. In addition, carbon is sequestered in the cement which then balances out the further carbon production from mining and transportation of cement. The seawater remaining at the end is also pre-treated for desalination for drinking water and has more use than it did before.

The problem with this method is that it asks for the cement production technique to be completely changed. This means that all the capital investment in the industry so far is wasted, and will require new investments to change the status quo. Keeping this in mind,

there is a different biomimicry approach that can be taken.

This approach uses bacteria to repair cracks in concrete and it is a more reactive approach instead of a pre-emptive one to the problem of inefficiencies in concrete production. As populations continue to rise and current buildings and structures are used to their maximum, this approach might be beneficial in reducing concrete waste and thus reduced overproduction. If 25% of total waste in Europe comes from construction and demolition, according to Eurostat, a similar number may be modelled in China and other parts of Asia. This bacteria based option is inspired by the ability of octopi to regrow their lost tentacles, by Dutch microbiologist and finalist of the 2015 European Inventors award, Hendrik Jonkers. Jonkers includes, in traditional and non-traditional concrete, natural bacteria (*bacillus pseudofirmus* and *B. cohnii*) capable of producing limestone. These bacteria are normally dormant but are put into action when they come into contact with water which flows through cracks on a structure. Then, limestone fills the cracks. In addition, the bacteria are aerobic and so they consume oxygen within the confines of the structure. This reduces the amount of internal corrosion of metal in the structure. The bacteria can remain dormant for even up to 200 years which means that even long-term impact can be made in these major civil engineering projects. This reduces maintenance costs, and lowers resource consumption in making new structures.

This idea is being explored by several scientists with different bacteria and substances over the world. One such example is found in a paper by Vijay, Murmu and Deo, where urease engendering bacteria along with the introduction of a calcium source can result in calcite precipitation in cement. Bio-mineralization techniques, like this one, seal natural and time-created cracks. These are permanently sealed by a perpetual hydration process. The ureolytic bacteria, suggested to be used, includes *Bacillus Pasteurii*, and *Bacillus Subtilis* which can engender urea along with the calcium source to seal the freshly composed micro cracks by  $\text{CaCO}_3$  precipitation. This paper, amongst others, shows that the use of bacteria can increase the strength and durability properties of concrete. This may be seen as retrofitting of cement.

### 18.6.5 Cost-Benefit Analysis

Assumptions - Cement making industry is expensive but required for the production of materials that have a lot of uses - The process uses energy that is not clean, and imposes a cost on the environment - Its expenses cannot be paid off if a cement manufacturing plant is used for a short period of time - Energy consumption is bad because of the production of greenhouse gases during the energy manufacturing, and this leads to rising temperatures on the planet  
Discount rates - The cost of producing cement is already expensive, but the fact that it can be stored over time leads to the cost depreciating such that the dollar could have been used elsewhere. Instead the money is used for excess production and more money is used to transport it to assure appropriate allocation of the good.  
Externalities - The Biomimicry system of making concrete has the unintended consequence of desalinating seawater for other uses in the world. This is a positive externality - The retrofitting option reduces oxygen within the concrete structure which reduces corrosion of the steel and other metals used in a building structure  
Flaws - This may reduce the import money coming into China from cement production because countries will begin to make their own cement at low maintenance rates. How is system improved by Biomimicry - Reduced energy use because reduced cement production leads to reduced GHG emissions and reduced impact on global warming - The second system allows infrastructure projects to last longer and for casualties of human life to be reduced

because bridges and buildings are less likely to collapse if cracks are immediately repaired by bacteria

## 18.7 Case Study: Applying Asia's innovation to the United States

It is often assumed that the East learns from the West and from the 'civilized world' but learning from the natural environment has been a big part of the Eastern culture, historically. This ranges from Ayurveda and ancient medicine, to building dung houses to keep cool in the same way that animals use mud/dung. This section explores the reverse - a Biomimicry solution applied in the east which has potential to be brought back. An example of this in Vietnam is the way that local use the leaves of water coconuts, which are waterproof and have the ability to float. The locals sew them together to make roofs that protect their homes from rainfall.



**Figure 18.3:** some caption

### 18.7.1 Characteristics of infrastructure industry

Stadiums are an important point of focus, and have a lot of value in the field of Biomimicry because of the role of “infrastructure” as a glamorous industry. While infrastructure can sometimes be thought of as dry and functional, bridges, stadiums, and some other structures stand as testament to those attracting tourists and investments and attention. Examples of this include the Eiffel tower, and more locally, the Golden gate bridge. In addition, the industry employs millions of people at all its different stages — from energy, to cement production, to labor and manufacturing. This way, it engages large populations. Applying biomimicry to this space would allow this large population to value this field of education and allow publicity of a valuable takeaway— we are always learning from nature. Infrastructure can become a balance of technical progress, of human kind’s power, alongside nature’s mastery of systems.

### 18.7.2 The Bird's Nest Stadium as a Biomimicry Solution

This study is based on the Bird's Nest Stadium or Beijing's National Stadium, which staged the 2008 Olympic games, but has been proven to be innovative yet energy efficient. The stadium is designed by Swiss architects Herzog & de Meuron, inspired by Asian history which I will talk about further. The stadium took five years to complete and was constructed using 42,000 tons of steel, making it the largest steel structure in the world.

Here are the basic features that make the stadium comparable to any other stadium to be built in the future:

- A stadium capacity of approximately 100, 000 people
- A retractable roof,
- A multi-functional design to incorporate different performances and games in the future  
The structure is famous because it is the largest volume of steel used in a project like this - the structure encloses steel approximately 333 meters long by 284 meters wide and 69 meters tall. It must be noted that Steel is easily recyclable and these smaller “green” initiatives were intentional by the architects.

### 18.7.3 Applying Bio-infrastructure to Los Angeles

The Bird's Nest Structure, and similar bioinspired structures may be applicable in Los Angeles because this structure was designed to withstand earthquakes without much damage because it is originally located in one of the world's most seismic zones. The Bird's Nest Stadium can withstand an 8.0 magnitude earthquake. A part that may be easier to figure out in LA, than in Beijing, is the effect of thermal expansion. In Beijing, the temperature can range from over 30°C in the summer to -20°C in the winter, and the architects had to account for this tendency of steel to expand and contract as the temperature changes. LA, like temperature is more uniform yet warmer than in many places where such structures have been built. It is time to think - what are local metals that can be used? How different are the social needs in LA and Beijing? Perhaps, with LA being an upcoming green corridor, with increasing interest in organic foods and trends, such infrastructure will create a domino effect so locals are inspired to make a change. There is an underlying social component to Biomimicry which is how it

makes a public statement for people to recognize how we have eliminated nature from our day-to-day, and also how we have opportunities to incorporate nature effectively if we are more conscious.

See Figure 18.4.



**Figure 18.4:** some caption

## 18.8 Biomimicry and Smart Cities

As population sizes grow bigger, and the rural-urban diaspora grows larger, the need for efficient use of space and energy grows more imminent. In this case, natural spaces also grow smaller and people are concerned about finding ways to be in nature. More and more studies find that natural settings and trees increase productivity, and access to this is increasingly cut off in cities. This section will tackle how we can better intertwine nature in cities without humanly recreating nature and destroying its sanctity. Then it will tackle the role of biomimicry in creating smart cities and the role of automation in these cities.

Cities are interesting, especially in Asia, because they pose the large challenge where they host large portions of the country's GDP, and the country's population, but are becoming increasingly polluted and hard to live in. This problem becomes a desperate one to solve in order to get some of these countries to move from developing to developed.

An example of smart evolution in cities is being developed by Cambridge bioengineer Michelle Oyen who has been making artificial bone and eggshells. Now, her samples are only centimeters in length, but one day they make up high-rises and skyscrapers. One of the big natural case studies scientists are trying to recreate is the problem of tree cover. In the built environment, when the site is cleared and the vertical structure is taken out or land is left barren, rain directly hits the ground at maximum velocity. In forests, especially virgin forests like those remaining in some parts of Borneo, the ecosystem is structured with the shrub layer, the mid-level tree layer, and the canopy layer. All these layers slow down the rain so that by the time it actually hits the soil it is absorbed very quickly.

Biomimicry may also be used to have better transportation networks across cities. When automation changed things so that people used ‘cars’ instead of horses, it influenced the culture of the world in more ways than was predicted. Cars come with a culture around racing, around transportation and consumption of goods produced all over the world/ country, around the mindset that the place you live is not the only place you know. It led to the tourism and travel industry, the booming of economy and trade, and more. It can be predicted that smarter transportation may transform the world in similar ways.

Arndt Pechstein is a neuroscientist in Berlin who is working on a project inspired by this concept. He is working with researchers at the Audi Urban Future Initiative to rethink Berlin’s transportation network and he is inspired by the way “cargo” moves within the cells of our bodies.

Proteins and organelles—the “cargo”—are transported via carriers called motor proteins that travel along different microtubules, or “streets.” He describes in an interview how a single motor protein is not only able to carry one specific cargo, so it can be decoupled from that cargo to take on another. He also describes how there are different motor proteins that can switch between different infrastructures without any waiting time or delay. Here is a diagram showing this idea.

Smart cities, with efficient transportation, and efficient energy usage, and space for millions of people to live without waste accumulation, drought, or the creation of food deserts, require sustainability efforts. These smart cities are also sometimes called Sustainable cities or Eco-cities. An eco-city, is first defined in 1987 by Richard Register in his book “Ecocity Berkeley: building cities for a healthy future,” as a city designed with consideration of environmental impact, inhabited by people dedicated to minimization of required inputs of energy, water and food, and waste output of heat, air pollution — carbon dioxide, methane, and water pollution. A city like this sustains little on surrounding suburbs and countryside. This means reduced transportation of goods and people into and out of the city, which leads to reduced car usage and pollution. This means different things for different industries. For agriculture, it means an investment in vertical farming, in low-land-use plants, in potentially genetically manufactured products. For energy production, it means solar panels, biomass energy plants, converting waste to energy, and other small-scale production. The Central Intelligence Agency estimates that 55 percent of total world population lives in Urban environments. This only makes our cause more urgent. Industrial ecology (IE), defined as a ‘systems-based, multidisciplinary discourse that seeks to understand emergent behavior of complex integrated human/natural systems’ is also the study of material and energy flows through industrial systems such as cities. There are many ways to study the application of Biomimicry to urban planning but this chapter will now follow initiatives that have already been taken in this field.

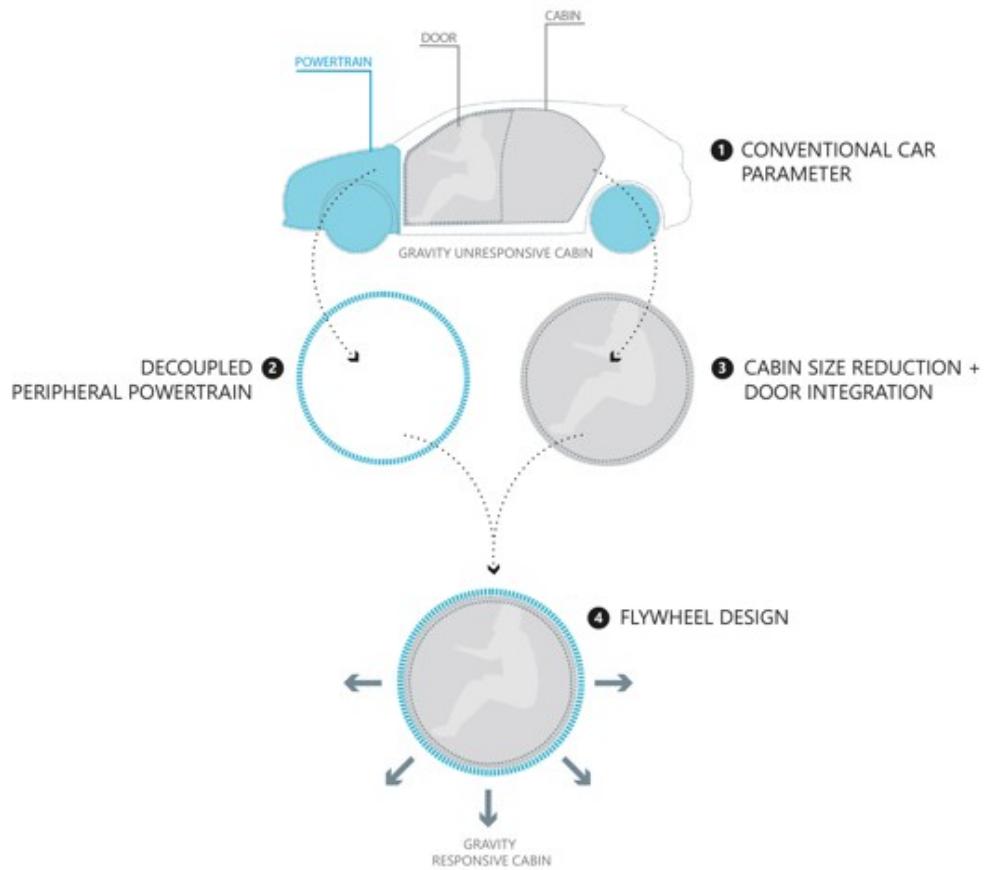


Figure 18.5: some caption

### 18.8.1 Existing initiatives in Asia

It is important to go back to initiatives that have been successful to reflect on what works, and what can be done to make these better, in Asia and outside.

China, in partnership with the Singaporean government, is building an ecocity in the Coastal New District of Tianjin City in northern China, named the “Sino-Singapore Tianjin Eco-city.” The goal is that Tianjin Eco-city will support both countries in tackling environmental protection, resource conservation, energy conservation, and sustainable development, and serve as models for sustainable development for Singapore and other cities in China. Another such initiative is Rizhao. Rizhao, recognized by the United Nations as one of the most habitable cities in the world in 2009, is situated on the coastline along the Yellow Sea, and features a major seaport. The city mandates solar panels and solar water heaters in all new buildings, and oversees the construction process to ensure the panels are correctly installed. The effort to install solar water heaters began in 1992. As of 2007, 99 percent of households in the central districts use solar water heaters, and most of the lighting and traffic signals are powered with photovoltaic solar power. In 2007 the city had over a half-million square meters of solar water heating panels, which have effectively reduced conventional electricity usage by 348 million kilowatt-hours per year. The city has been designated as the Environmental Protection Model City by China’s SEPA, and is consistently listed in the top 10 cities for air quality in China. The city population stands at 2,801,100 as of the 2010 census, and stands as a successful smart and sustainable city.

### 18.8.2 Failed initiatives

Failures are important to define successes, and find the things that are not socially acceptable, but are not actually adhering with natural convention. Following is an example of both. Dongtan Eco-city is the name of the third largest island in China at the mouth of the Yangtze River near Shanghai. Dongtan was publicized as an urban center for green technologies and how smart design can cut the carbon footprint of up to a half-million people in the area. The project was scheduled to accommodate 50,000 residents by 2010, but its state-owned developer has currently put construction on hold. Huangbaiyu is another major eco-city being built by China which is ready, but uninhabited. In 2003, Leading American “green” architect and designer William McDonough teamed with Deng Nan, to promote economically sustainable development in China through the China-US Centre for Sustainable Development. They hoped that Huangbaiyu would become an example of how technology could improve villagers’ lives and reducing energy costs and consumption. This is a more rural solution with the village made of “eco-dwellings” or houses built from hay and pressed-earth bricks, which are fully insulated and solar-powered. Such a unique project has become inspiration to many sociologists and anthropologists who hope to understand people who chose to partake in these spacial experiments.

### 18.8.3 Benefits of a Smart City

Now that we have recognized smart cities and eco cities as places that use bio-inspiration in intersection with technology, it is important to assess how this would transform our lives socially and physically. This is interesting because intuitively, it might seem like nature and

technology cannot coexist without one being rampant. The two ways this paper suspects smart cities and technology can coexist is by increasing government accountability, and data access.

Government accountability: A smart city has increased transparency, data collection and technology usage to track information. This reduces information asymmetry in the government and in public sector jobs where productivity and outcomes are not accurately measured.

Data access. Accessible data creates opportunities for new private-sector services and companies that could potentially change residents' lives. This includes a popular example - transit information feeds which can combine city, weather, and traffic data to help transit users decide whether a bikeshare, bus, or train is their best option on a given day.

#### 18.8.4 Risks of a Smart City

There are drawbacks though, to compromising 'nature' where technology doesn't typically have a place. This paper suspects that the two aspects most affected will be privacy risks, and technology becoming a cover for ineffective reforms. Privacy risks: Data sharing and collection may lead to more personalised services and products, but this may also breach certain levels of privacy and even autonomy. Leaks of such data, especially in sensitive parts of the country's affairs, like the government, may be a risk that the country has to bear. Keeping data safe is a major area for research and development in an environment where the governments' ability for surveillance goes up, and civil rights and privacy are always under the spotlight. Cover for ineffective reforms. Policy or Legal upholdings may be compromised by both politicians, lobbyists, and lawyers because they may lack the incentive to pursue these long term, meaningful changes. Instead, many changes will be technological solutions which are not guaranteed to have results, either positively or negatively.

### 18.9 Conclusion

Biomimicry is important because research in this field started off from a systems perspective. It started off as an attempt to design cleaner, faster, and better structures with efficiency and engineering in intention. Today, Biomimicry is changing as our moral responsibility as humans increases. There is value in assimilating with the natural environment, in going back to the ways that nature conducted processes and built structures. This value comes from sustainability — reduced waste, reused materials, and organic materials. This value comes from bowing down to nature and submitting to its design tendencies — learning from what exists. In many Asian cultures, nature is compared to god. God being the force that runs the world and created the world. Here, it seems Biomimicry would be well accepted for its moral outcomes. Then we are simply giving back to the Earth what we have taken from it. Pragmatically, it is accepted that both efficiency and sustainability goals might drive bio-inspiration, but it is important to accept the context of sustainability and how it helps us save the future of the world.

This textbook talks about many morbid realities of the globe. It talks about palm oil deforestation, climate change in Thailand, soil erosion, changing food production in Korea, a breadth of research. Biomimicry brings to it all, a fresh perspective, and an opportunity for repair. Perhaps, there might be ways in which we cut down carbon emissions, and slow down climate change, by reducing cars in cities. We may be able to reduce soil erosion by creating building

foundations that function like roots which retain water in the soil. Through this, Biomimicry is a solution-driven branch of Environmental Analysis. It is a young, yet promising field of study in a world which is simply driven by understanding problems and not brainstorming solutions. As students who have had the chance to visit Singapore, Vietnam, Thailand, India, travel across urban and rural spaces with local people, we have hope. We have hope that people still value each other, and value the earth as is. As the population continues to grow, and the earth is burdened with resource overutilization, it is imperative that we remember that humans have always learned and bounced back. This is our time, and Biomimicry is a tool we can use to restore what was once the glory of Earth.

(Benyus, 1997)

author? (???)



## **Chapter 19**

# **Social Justice, Energy, Climate**

### **19.1 Divestment from Fossil Fuels**



## **Chapter 20**

# **Sustainable Food Systems**



# **Chapter 21**

## **Sustainable Consumption**

### **21.1 Plastics**

#### **21.1.1 Sources of Marine Plastics**

#### **21.1.2 Riverine Plastics**

The `\appendix` command should be used only once. Subsequent appendices can be created using the Chapter command.



## **Appendix A**

# **Answer Key to Exercises**



## **Appendix B**

# **The Second Appendix**

Some text for the second Appendix.



# **Part IV**

## **Backmatter**



The back matter often includes one or more of an index, an afterword, acknowledgments, a bibliography, a colophon, or any other similar item. In the back matter, chapters do not produce a chapter number, but they are entered in the table of contents. If you are not using anything in the back matter, you can delete the back matter TeX field and everything that follows it.



# References

- ??, ???. URL <http://www.bing.com/cr?IG=B157DD0E178A4930AB220AB3E3BEBE63&CID=0F6F6CAD8A7B6321260067498B2B62D8&rd=1&h=bP9tg2EH5aKWI5ndk0-m4AmzUOKy0gJZ7tkTK0m5108&v=1&r=http://www.nws.noaa.gov/os/hurricane/resources/TropicalCyclones11.pdf&p=DevEx.LB.1,5913.1>.
- ??? ??? 1970-2100: panel b - temperature increase. Missing Journal Name .
- Ahmad, A., H. Diwan, and Y. P. Abrol, 2009. Global climate change, stress and plant productivity. Pages 503–521 in Abiotic Stress Adaptation in Plants. Springer.
- Aiken, S. R. 2004. Runaway fires, smoke-haze pollution, and unnatural disasters in Indonesia. Geographical Review **94**:55–79.
- Aksornkoae, S., R. Tokrisna, E. Barbier, S. Sathirathai, et al. 2004. Overview of shrimp farming and mangrove loss in Thailand. Shrimp farming and mangrove loss in Thailand pages 37–51.
- Aluri, J. S. R., R. Bethapudi, and P. R. Chappidi. 2017. Reproductive Ecology of *Acanthus ilicifolius* L. a Non-Viviparous Mangrove Associate in Coringa Mangrove Forest Andhra Pradesh (India). Transylvanian Review of Systematical and Ecological Research **19**:17–28.
- Amran, A., S. K. Ooi, C. Y. Wong, and F. Hashim. 2015. Business Strategy for Climate Change: An ASEAN Perspective. Corporate Social Responsibility and Environmental Management **23**:213–227.
- an Ayala-Bizarro, I., and J. Z. niga Mendoza, 2016. SPIGA: Compute SPI Index using the Methods Genetic Algorithm and Maximum Likelihood. URL <https://CRAN.R-project.org/package=SPIGA>.

- Ang, B., H. Wang, and X. Ma. 2017. Climatic influence on electricity consumption: The case of Singapore and Hong Kong. *Energy* **127**:534–543.
- Anthes, R. A., R. W. Corell, G. Holland, J. W. Hurrell, M. C. MacCracken, and K. E. Trenberth. 2006. Hurricanes and global warming—Potential linkages and consequences. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society* **87**:623–628.
- Aristotle, and J. Barnes. 1984. *The complete works of Aristotle: the revised Oxford translation*. Princeton Univ. Press.
- Arunrat, N., C. Wang, N. Pumijumnong, S. Sereenonchai, and W. Cai. 2017. Farmers intention and decision to adapt to climate change: A case study in the Yom and Nan basins, Phichit province of Thailand. *Journal of Cleaner Production* **143**:672–685.
- ASEAN, ., 2015. ASEAN Cooperation on Climate Change. URL <http://environment.asean.org/asean-working-group-on-climate-change/>.
- Ashok, K., Z. Guan, and T. Yamagata. 2003. Influence of the Indian Ocean Dipole on the Australian winter rainfall. *Geophysical Research Letters* **30**.
- Asio, V. B., C. C. Cabunos Jr, and Z.-S. Chen. 2006. Morphology, physicochemical characteristics, and fertility of soils from quaternary limestone in Leyte, Philippines. *Soil science* **171**:648–661.
- Atkins, P., et al. 2014. *Physical Chemistry: Thermodynamics, structure, and change*. Macmillan Higher Education.
- author? ??? title? www.theage.com.au URL <https://www.theage.com.au/news/world/chinas-first-ecovillage-proves-a-hard-sell/2006/08/25/1156012740582.html?page=fullpage>.
- author?, 2008. New Explanation For Monsoon Development Proposed. URL <https://www.sciencedaily.com/releases/2008/07/080721152002.htm>.
- Avery, G. C., H. Bergsteiner, et al. 2016. Sufficiency thinking: Thailand's gift to an unsustainable world. missing journal nameXXXX .

- Bae, D.-H., I.-W. Jung, and H. Chang. 2008. Long-term trend of precipitation and runoff in Korean river basins. *Hydrological processes* **22**:2644–2656.
- Baetz, U., and E. Martinoia. 2014. Root exudates: the hidden part of plant defense. *Trends in Plant Science* **19**:90–98.
- Baillie, I. 2001. Soil survey staff 1999, soil taxonomy. *Soil Use and management* **17**:57–60.
- Ballhorn, U., F. Siegert, M. Mason, and S. Limin. 2009. Derivation of burn scar depths and estimation of carbon emissions with LIDAR in Indonesian peatlands. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* **106**:21213–21218.
- Bashan, Y., M. E. Puente, L. E. de Bashan, and J.-P. Hernandez. 2008. Environmental uses of plant growth-promoting bacteria. *Plant-Microbe interactions*. Research Signpost, Trivandrum, Kerala, India pages 69–93.
- Bashkin, V., S. Park, M. Choi, and C. Lee, 2002. Nitrogen budgets for the Republic of Korea and the Yellow Sea region. Pages 387–403 in *The Nitrogen Cycle at Regional to Global Scales*. Springer.
- BBC, ., 2015. What causes South East Asia's haze? URL <http://www.bbc.com/news/world-asia-34265922>.
- Belayneh, A., and J. Adamowski. 2012. Standard precipitation index drought forecasting using neural networks, wavelet neural networks, and support vector regression. *Applied Computational Intelligence and Soft Computing* **2012**:6.
- Bell, E. A., P. Bohnke, T. M. Harrison, and W. L. Mao. 2015. Potentially biogenic carbon preserved in a 4.1 billion-year-old zircon. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* **112**:14518–14521.
- Benyus, J. M. 1997. Biomimicry: Innovation inspired by nature. Morrow New York.
- Berhe, A. A., J. Harte, J. W. Harden, and M. S. Torn. 2007. The significance of the erosion-induced terrestrial carbon sink. *AIBS Bulletin* **57**:337–346.
- Bhullar, L. 2013. Climate change adaptation and water policy: lessons from Singapore.

- Sustainable Development **21**:152–159.
- Bishop, D. M. 1993. Group theory and chemistry. Courier Corporation.
- Bonn, A., T. Allott, M. Evans, H. Joosten, and R. Stoneman. 2016. Peatland restoration and ecosystem services: science, policy and practice. Cambridge University Press.
- Brady, N., and R. Weil. 2007. The colloidal fraction: seat of soil chemical and physical activity. The Nature and Properties of Soils, 14th ed. Prentice Hall pages 310–357.
- Bravo, F., V. LeMay, R. Jandl, and K. von Gadow. 2017. Managing forest ecosystems: the challenge of climate change. Springer.
- Bridgman, S. D., J. Pastor, B. Dewey, J. F. Weltzin, and K. Updegraff. 2008. Rapid carbon response of peatlands to climate change. Ecology **89**:3041–3048.
- Bridhikitti, A. 2013. Connections of ENSO/IOD and aerosols with Thai rainfall anomalies and associated implications for local rainfall forecasts. International Journal of Climatology **33**:2836–2845.
- Brook, S. M., N. Dudley, S. P. Mahood, G. Polet, A. C. Williams, J. Duckworth, T. Van Ngoc, and B. Long. 2014. Lessons learned from the loss of a flagship: The extinction of the Javan rhinoceros *Rhinoceros sondaicus annamiticus* from Vietnam. Biological Conservation **174**:21–29.
- Brown, C., P. B. Durst, A.-P. F. Commission, et al. 2003. State of forestry in Asia and the Pacific, 2003. Status, changes and trends. Missing Journal Name .
- Brown, S., A. J. Gillespie, and A. E. Lugo. 1991. Biomass of tropical forests of south and southeast Asia. Canadian Journal of Forest Research **21**:111–117.
- Buol, S. W., and H. Eswaran, 1999. Oxisols. Pages 151–195 in Advances in Agronomy, volume 68. Elsevier.
- Burmeister, L. L. 1987. The South Korean green revolution: induced or directed innovation? Economic Development and Cultural Change **35**:767–790.

- Cahir, J. J., 2018. Weather forecasting. URL <https://www.britannica.com/science/weather-forecasting>.
- Cardinale, B. J., J. P. Wright, M. W. Cadotte, I. T. Carroll, A. Hector, D. S. Srivastava, M. Loreau, and J. J. Weis. 2007. Impacts of plant diversity on biomass production increase through time because of species complementarity. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* **104**:18123–18128.
- Carlson, K. M., and L. M. Curran, 2013. Refined carbon accounting for oil palm agriculture: disentangling potential contributions of indirect emissions and smallholder farmers.
- Cassman, K. G., and P. L. Pingali. 1995. Extrapolating trends from long-term experiments to farmers' fields: the case of irrigated rice in Asia. *Missing Journal Name* .
- Cey, E., J. Hanania, C. Le, K. Stenhouse, and J. Donev. 1900. Coal Formation. University of Calgary .
- Chae, G.-T., S.-T. Yun, B.-Y. Choi, S.-Y. Yu, H.-Y. Jo, B. Mayer, Y.-J. Kim, and J.-Y. Lee. 2008. Hydrochemistry of urban groundwater, Seoul, Korea: The impact of subway tunnels on groundwater quality. *Journal of contaminant hydrology* **101**:42–52.
- Chambers, C., and A. Ferdig. 2011. Aquaculture in Thailand: Economic pressures versus ecological health. *Westminster College's Thailand May Term Blog*, Thailand .
- Chappell, N. A. 2010. Soil pipe distribution and hydrological functioning within the humid tropics: a synthesis. *Hydrological processes* **24**:1567–1581.
- Chappell, N. A., M. Sherlock, K. Bidin, R. Macdonald, Y. Najman, and G. Davies, 2007. Runoff processes in Southeast Asia: role of soil, regolith, and rock type. Pages 3–23 in Forest Environments in the Mekong River Basin. Springer.
- Chappell, N. A., and M. D. Sherlock. 2005. Contrasting flow pathways within tropical forest slopes of Ultisol soils. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms* **30**:735–753.
- Chatzistathis, T., and I. Therios, 2013. How soil nutrient availability influences plant biomass and how biomass stimulation alleviates heavy metal toxicity in soils: The cases of nutrient use efficient genotypes and phytoremediators, respectively. Page missing pages in Biomass Now-Cultivation and Utilization. InTech.

- Chiem, N. H. 1993. Geo-pedological study of the Mekong Delta. Missing Journal Name .
- Cho, M., K. Min, and H. Kim. 2018. Geology of the 2018 Winter Olympic site, Pyeongchang, Korea. International Geology Review **60**:267–287.
- Choenkwan, S., J. M. Fox, and A. T. Rambo. 2014. Agriculture in the Mountains of North-eastern Thailand: Current Situation and Prospects for Development. Mountain Research and Development **34**:95–106.
- Chokkalingam, U., I. Kurniawan, and Y. Ruchiat. 2005. Fire, livelihoods, and environmental change in the middle Mahakam peatlands, East Kalimantan. Ecology and Society **10**.
- Chung, H.-K., H. J. Yang, D. Shin, and K. R. Chung. 2016. Aesthetics of Korean foods: the symbol of Korean culture. Journal of Ethnic Foods **3**:178–188.
- Cole, J. J., Y. T. Prairie, N. F. Caraco, W. H. McDowell, L. J. Tranvik, R. G. Striegl, C. M. Duarte, P. Kortelainen, J. A. Downing, J. J. Middelburg, et al. 2007. Plumbing the global carbon cycle: integrating inland waters into the terrestrial carbon budget. Ecosystems **10**:172–185.
- Corlett, R. 2014. The ecology of tropical East Asia. Oxford University Press (UK).
- Dalton, B., and K. Jung. 2009. Feeding the dictator or making a difference? The experiences of international aid and development agencies in North Korea 1995-2005. The International Review of Korean Studies .
- Dasgupta, S., B. Laplante, S. Murray, and D. Wheeler. 2009. Sea-level rise and storm surges: A comparative analysis of impacts in developing countries. journal name is missing .
- de Bashana, L. E., J.-P. Hernandez, and Y. Bashana, 2012. The potential contribution of plant growth-promoting bacteria to reduce environmental degradation — A comprehensive evaluation. Pages ??–?? *in* need editors for proceedings, editor. booktitle missing!, volume ? publisher.
- De Beer, J. H., M. J. McDermott, et al. 1989. The economic value of non-timber forest products in Southeast Asia: with emphasis on Indonesia, Malaysia and Thailand. The economic value of non-timber forest products in Southeast Asia: with emphasis on Indonesia, Malaysia and Thailand. .

- De la Torre, J. B. B., R. J. R. Claveria, R. E. C. Perez, T. R. Perez, and A. I. Doronila. 2016. Copper uptake by *Pteris melanocaulon* Féé from a Copper-Gold mine in Surigao del Norte, Philippines. International journal of phytoremediation **18**:435–441.
- de Neergaard, A., J. Magid, and O. Mertz. 2008. Soil erosion from shifting cultivation and other smallholder land use in Sarawak, Malaysia. Agriculture, Ecosystems & Environment **125**:182–190.
- DeLucia, E., J. E. Drake, R. B. Thomas, and M. Gonzalez-Meler. 2007. Forest carbon use efficiency: is respiration a constant fraction of gross primary production? Global Change Biology **13**:1157–1167.
- Dennis, R. A., J. Mayer, G. Applegate, U. Chokkalingam, C. J. P. Colfer, I. Kurniawan, H. Lachowski, P. Maus, R. P. Permana, Y. Ruchiat, et al. 2005. Fire, people and pixels: linking social science and remote sensing to understand underlying causes and impacts of fires in Indonesia. Human Ecology **33**:465–504.
- Deutsche Welle, ., 2015. What the Paris climate deal means for Southeast Asia. URL <http://www.dw.com/en/what-the-paris-climate-deal-means-for-southeast-asia/a-18927616>.
- Dise, N. B. 2009. Peatland response to global change. Science **326**:810–811.
- Dixon, J. B., P. S. Bhathal, and P. E. O'brien. 2001. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: predictors of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis and liver fibrosis in the severely obese. Gastroenterology **121**:91–100.
- Dixon, R. K., A. Solomon, S. Brown, R. Houghton, M. Trexier, and J. Wisniewski. 1994. Carbon pools and flux of global forest ecosystems. Science **263**:185–190.
- Dodds, W. K. 2002. Freshwater ecology: concepts and environmental applications. Academic press.
- Don, A., J. Schumacher, and A. Freibauer. 2011. Impact of tropical land-use change on soil organic carbon stocks—a meta-analysis. Global Change Biology **17**:1658–1670.
- Down to Earth Climate Change, ., 2018. Temperature Increase. URL <https://globalclimate.ucr.edu/resources.html>.

- Drasch, G., S. Böse-O'Reilly, C. Beinhoff, G. Roider, and S. Maydl. 2001. The Mt. Diwata study on the Philippines 1999: Assessing mercury intoxication of the population by small scale gold mining. *Science of the Total Environment* **267**:151–168.
- Dudal, R. 2005. Soils of Southeast Asia. *The Physical Geography of Southeast Asia*, 1st ed.; Gupta, A., Ed pages 94–104.
- Dudley, N., C. Buyck, N. Furuta, C. Pedrot, F. Renaud, and K. Sudmeier-Rieux. 2015. Protected areas as tools for disaster risk reduction. A handbook for practitioners. missing journal name .
- Elsenbeer, H. 2001. Hydrologic flowpaths in tropical rainforest soilscapes: A review. *Hydrological Processes* **15**:1751–1759.
- Erban, L. E., S. M. Gorelick, and H. A. Zebker. 2014. Groundwater extraction, land subsidence, and sea-level rise in the Mekong Delta, Vietnam. *Environmental Research Letters* **9**:084010.
- FAOUN, F. xxx. Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Global Forest Resources Assessment 2010: Main Report. FAO Forestry Paper **163**.
- Felkner, J., K. Tazhibayeva, and R. Townsend. 2009. Impact of Climate Change on Rice Production in Thailand. *American Economic Review* **99**:205–210.
- Fenner, M. 2018. One-click science marketing in 2018. Missing Journal Name **11**. URL <http://dx.doi.org/10.1038/nmat3283>.
- Filho, W. L., L. E. Icaza, A. Neht, M. Klavins, and E. A. Morgan. 2018. Coping with the impacts of urban heat islands. *Journal of Cleaner Production* **171**:1140–1149.
- for Health, H. C., and the Global Environment, 2018. Climate Change and Biodiversity Loss. URL <https://chge.hspf.harvard.edu/climate-change-and-biodiversity-loss>.
- Francis, C. M., A. V. Borisenco, N. V. Ivanova, J. L. Eger, B. K. Lim, A. Guillén-Servent, S. V. Kruskop, I. Mackie, and P. D. Hebert. 2010. The role of DNA barcodes in understanding and conservation of mammal diversity in Southeast Asia. *PloS one* **5**:e12575.
- Francisco, H. A. 2008. Adaptation to Climate Change: Needs and Opportunities in Southeast

- Asia. *Asean Economic Bulletin* **25**:7–19.
- Frei, T. 2009. Economic and social benefits of meteorology and climatology in Switzerland. *Meteorological Applications* .
- Friedrich, J., C. Dinkel, G. Friedl, N. Pimenov, J. Wijsman, M.-T. Gomoiu, A. Cociasu, L. Popa, and Wehrl. 2002. Benthic nutrient cycling and diagenetic pathways in the north-western Black Sea. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* **54**:369–383.
- G, K. K. R., T. Baikie, M. D. E. T, Y. Z. Huang, and C. Guet. 2017. Understanding the Southeast Asian haze. *Environmental Research Letters* **12**:084018.
- Gale, E. L., and M. A. Saunders. 2013a. The 2011 Thailand flood: climate causes and return periods. *Weather* **68**:233–237.
- Gale, E. L., and M. A. Saunders. 2013b. The 2011 Thailand flood: climate causes and return periods. *Weather* **68**:233–237.
- Garbero, A., and R. Muttarak. 2013. Impacts of the 2010 droughts and floods on community welfare in rural Thailand: differential effects of village educational attainment. *Ecology and Society* **18**.
- Ge, X., and M. Sun. 1999. Reproductive biology and genetic diversity of a cryptoviviparous mangrove *Aegiceras corniculatum* (Myrsinaceae) using allozyme and intersimple sequence repeat (ISSR) analysis. *Molecular Ecology* **8**:2061–2069.
- Giang, P. Q., L. T. Giang, and K. Toshiki. 2017. Spatial and Temporal Responses of Soil Erosion to Climate Change Impacts in a Transnational Watershed in Southeast Asia. *Climate* **5**:22.
- Goddard Institute for Space Studies, , 2018. URL <https://www.giss.nasa.gov/projects/gcm/>.
- Gower, S. T., C. J. Kucharik, and J. M. Norman. 1999. Direct and indirect estimation of leaf area index, fAPAR, and net primary production of terrestrial ecosystems. *Remote sensing of environment* **70**:29–51.

- Greatbatch, R. J., X. Sun, and X.-Q. Yang. 2013. Impact of variability in the Indian summer monsoon on the East Asian summer monsoon. *Atmospheric Science Letters* **14**:14–19.
- Gullison, R. E., P. C. Frumhoff, J. G. Canadell, C. B. Field, D. C. Nepstad, K. Hayhoe, R. Avissar, L. M. Curran, P. Friedlingstein, C. D. Jones, et al. 2007. Tropical forests and climate policy. *SCIENCE-NEW YORK THEN WASHINGTON-* **316**:985.
- Habib, B. 2013. DPRK Meets UNFCCC: An Introduction to North Korea's Interactions with the International Climate Change Regime. *International Review of Korean Studies* **10**:65–90.
- Hall, R. 2002. Cenozoic geological and plate tectonic evolution of SE Asia and the SW Pacific: computer-based reconstructions, model and animations. *Journal of Asian Earth Sciences* **20**:353–431.
- Handayani, W., and N. R. Kumalasari. Missing Year. Migration as Future Adaptive Capacity: The Case of Java, Indonesia. *Journal Title Missing!* pages 117–138.
- Harden, J., J. Sharpe, W. Parton, D. Ojima, T. Fries, T. Huntington, and S. Dabney. 1999. Dynamic replacement and loss of soil carbon on eroding cropland. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles* **13**:885–901.
- Harley, J. B. 2009. Maps, knowledge, and power. *Geographic thought: a praxis perspective* pages 129–148.
- Harper, K. 2012. Weather by the numbers: the genesis of modern meteorology. The MIT Press.
- Harris, D. C., and M. D. Bertolucci. 1978. *Symmetry and spectroscopy: an introduction to vibrational and electronic spectroscopy*. Courier Corporation.
- Hawthorne, W., C. Marshall, M. Abu Juam, and V. Agyeman. 2011. The impact of logging damage on tropical rainforests, their recovery and regeneration an annotated bibliography. DFID, ITTO. 140pp .
- Hayashi, C., K. Nakazawa, and Y. Nakagawa. 1985. Formation of the solar system. *Missing Journal Name* pages 1100–1153.

- He, J., and J. Xu. 2017. Is there decentralization in North Korea? Evidence and lessons from the sloping land management program 2004–2014. *Land Use Policy* **61**:113–125.
- Heimann, M., and M. Reichstein. 2008. Terrestrial ecosystem carbon dynamics and climate feedbacks. *Nature* **451**:289.
- Hijioka, Y., E. Lin, J. Pereira, R. Corlett, X. Cui, G. Insarov, A. Surjan, C. Field, V. Barros, and K. Mach. 2014. Chapter 24: Asia Climate Change 2014: Impacts, Adaptation, and Vulnerability, IPCC Working Group II Contribution to AR5. Cambridge, U. Press, Cambridge UK and New York, USA Google Scholar .
- Hirano, T., J. Jauhainen, T. Inoue, and H. Takahashi. 2009. Controls on the carbon balance of tropical peatlands. *Ecosystems* **12**:873–887.
- Hirsch, P. 2016. Routledge handbook of the environment in Southeast Asia. Taylor & Francis.
- Hiwasaki, L., E. Luna, Syamsidik, and J. A. Maríal. 2014. Local and indigenous knowledge on climate-related hazards of coastal and small island communities in Southeast Asia. *Climate Change* **128**:35–56.
- Hoegh-Guldberg, O. 1999. Climate change, coral bleaching and the future of the world's coral reefs. *Marine and freshwater research* **50**:839–866.
- Holden, J. 2005. Peatland hydrology and carbon release: why small-scale process matters. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London A: Mathematical, Physical and Engineering Sciences* **363**:2891–2913.
- Holiday Weather, W., 2018. Thailand: Annual Weather Averages. URL <http://www.holiday-weather.com/bangkok/averages/>.
- Hong, E., et al. 1987. Natives of Sarawak: survival in Borneo's vanishing forest. Institut Masyarakat Berhad.
- Houghton, R. 2005. Aboveground forest biomass and the global carbon balance. *Global change biology* **11**:945–958.
- Houghton, R. A., 1996. Land-use change and terrestrial carbon: the temporal record. Pages

- 117–134 *in* Forest ecosystems, forest management and the global carbon cycle. Springer.
- Hu, D., L. Wu, W. Cai, A. S. Gupta, A. Ganachaud, B. Qiu, A. L. Gordon, X. Lin, Z. Chen, S. Hu, et al. 2015. Pacific western boundary currents and their roles in climate. *Nature* **522**:299.
- Humphrey, J., C. Hawes, A. Peace, R. Ferris-Kaan, and M. Jukes. 1999. Relationships between insect diversity and habitat characteristics in plantation forests. *Forest ecology and management* **113**:11–21.
- Hutchison, C. S., et al. 1989. Geological evolution of South-east Asia. Clarendon Press Oxford.
- International Fund for Agricultural Development, 1998. FOA/GIEWS Special Report on Korea DPRK. Report on implementation of Crop and Livestock Rehabilitation in the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, Executive Board Meeting, Sixty-fifth Session, Rome, Italy, December 2-3.
- Jacinthe, P.-A., R. Lal, and J. Kimble. 2002. Carbon dioxide evolution in runoff from simulated rainfall on long-term no-till and plowed soils in southwestern Ohio. *Soil and Tillage Research* **66**:23–33.
- Jenner, L., 2016. El Niño Brought Drought and Fire to Indonesia. URL <https://www.nasa.gov/feature/goddard/2016/el-nino-brought-drought-and-fire-to-indonesia/>.
- Jeong, H., H. Kim, and T. Jang. 2016. Irrigation water quality standards for indirect wastewater reuse in agriculture: a contribution toward sustainable wastewater reuse in South Korea. *Water* **8**:169.
- Ji, C., 2012. Surface coal mining methods in China. Pages xx–xx *in* Mining Methods. InTech.
- Jørgensen, B. B. 1980. Seasonal oxygen depletion in the bottom waters of a Danish fjord and its effect on the benthic community. *Oikos* pages 68–76.
- Juo, A. S., and K. Franzluebbers. 2003. Tropical soils: properties and management for sustainable agriculture. Oxford University Press on Demand.
- Kikuchi, M., and Y. Hayami. 1978. Agricultural growth against a land resource constraint: a

- comparative history of Japan, Taiwan, Korea, and the Philippines. *The Journal of Economic History* **38**:839–864.
- Kim, B., J.-H. Park, G. Hwang, M.-S. Jun, and K. Choi. 2001. Eutrophication of reservoirs in South Korea. *Limnology* **2**:223–229.
- Kim, H., and K.-K. Lee. 2018. A Comparison of the Water Environment Policy of Europe and South Korea in Response to Climate Change. *Sustainability* **10**:384.
- Kim, K.-H., S.-T. Yun, B. Mayer, J.-H. Lee, T.-S. Kim, and H.-K. Kim. 2015. Quantification of nitrate sources in groundwater using hydrochemical and dual isotopic data combined with a Bayesian mixing model. *Agriculture, Ecosystems & Environment* **199**:369–381.
- Kim, S., and T. Jamal. 2015. The co-evolution of rural tourism and sustainable rural development in Hongdong, Korea: complexity, conflict and local response. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism* **23**:1363–1385.
- Kim, S. H., M. S. Kim, M. S. Lee, Y. S. Park, H. J. Lee, S.-a. Kang, H. S. Lee, K.-E. Lee, H. J. Yang, M. J. Kim, et al. 2016. Korean diet: characteristics and historical background. *Journal of Ethnic Foods* **3**:26–31.
- King, V. T. 1993. Politik pembangunan: the political economy of rainforest exploitation and development in Sarawak, East Malaysia. *Global Ecology and Biogeography Letters* pages 235–244.
- Kitoh, A. ??? Asian monsoons in the future. Springer Praxis Books *The Asian Monsoon* pages 631–649.
- Klorvuttimontara, S., C. J. McClean, and J. K. Hill. 2011. Evaluating the effectiveness of Protected Areas for conserving tropical forest butterflies of Thailand. *Biological Conservation* **144**:2534–2540.
- Kobayashi, T. 1933. A sketch of Korean geology. *American Journal of Science* pages 585–606.
- Koh, D.-C., B. Mayer, K.-S. Lee, and K. Kyung-Seok. 2010. Land-use controls on sources and fate of nitrate in shallow groundwater of an agricultural area revealed by multiple environmental tracers. *Journal of contaminant hydrology* **118**:62–78.

- Koh, T.-Y., and C.-K. Teo. 2009. Toward A Mesoscale Observation Network In Southeast Asia. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society* **90**:481–488.
- Kozlowski, T. T. 2012. *Fire and ecosystems*. Elsevier.
- Kristensen, E., F. Ø. Andersen, N. Holmboe, M. Holmer, and N. Thongtham. 2000. Carbon and nitrogen mineralization in sediments of the Bangrong mangrove area, Phuket, Thailand. *Aquatic Microbial Ecology* **22**:199–213.
- Kristensen, E., M. Holmer, and N. Bussarawit. 1991. Benthic metabolism and sulfate reduction in a southeast Asian mangrove swamp. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* pages 93–103.
- Kuenzer, C., J. Zhang, A. Tetzlaff, P. Van Dijk, S. Voigt, H. Mehl, and W. Wagner. 2007. Uncontrolled coal fires and their environmental impacts: investigating two arid mining regions in north-central China. *Applied Geography* **27**:42–62.
- Kusky, T. M., B. F. Windley, L. Wang, Z. Wang, X. Li, and P. Zhu. 2014. Flat slab subduction, trench suction, and craton destruction: comparison of the North China, Wyoming, and Brazilian cratons. *Tectonophysics* **630**:208–221.
- Kwon, H.-H., U. Lall, and S.-J. Kim. 2016. The unusual 2013–2015 drought in South Korea in the context of a multicentury precipitation record: Inferences from a nonstationary, multivariate, Bayesian copula model. *Geophysical Research Letters* **43**:8534–8544.
- Kyuma, K., and K. Kawaguchi. 1966. Major Soils of Southeast Asia and the Classification of Soils under Rice Cultivation: Paddy Soils. Missing Journal Name .
- Langkulsen, U., and D. Rwodzi, 2018. Climate Change, Air Pollution, and Human Health in Bangkok, Chapter missing, page missing . mssing.
- Larmola, T., J. L. Bubier, C. Kobyljanec, N. Basiliko, S. Juutinen, E. Humphreys, M. Preston, and T. R. Moore. 2013. Vegetation feedbacks of nutrient addition lead to a weaker carbon sink in an ombrotrophic bog. *Global change biology* **19**:3729–3739.
- Lasco, R. D. 2002. Forest carbon budgets in Southeast Asia following harvesting and land cover change. *SCIENCE IN CHINA SERIES C LIFE SCIENCES-ENGLISH EDITION* **45**:55–64.

- Lee, J.-Y., K. D. Kwon, Y.-C. Park, and W.-H. Jeon. 2017. Unexpected nationwide nitrate declines in groundwater of Korea. *Hydrological Processes* **31**:4693–4704.
- Lee, K. S., and E.-S. Chung. 2007. Hydrological effects of climate change, groundwater withdrawal, and land use in a small Korean watershed. *Hydrological Processes* **21**:3046–3056.
- Lee, S. 1998. Ecological role of grapsid crabs in mangrove ecosystems: a review. *Marine and freshwater research* **49**:335–343.
- Lieth, H., and M. J. Werger. 2012. Tropical rain forest ecosystems: biogeographical and ecological studies. Elsevier.
- Loo, Y. Y., L. Billa, and A. Singh. 2015. Effect of climate change on seasonal monsoon in Asia and its impact on the variability of monsoon rainfall in Southeast Asia. *Geoscience Frontiers* **6**:817–823.
- Maie, N., O. Pisani, and R. Jaffé. 2008. Mangrove tannins in aquatic ecosystems: Their fate and possible influence on dissolved organic carbon and nitrogen cycling. *Limnology and Oceanography* **53**:160–171.
- Marjuki, G. V. D. Schrier, A. M. G. K. Tank, E. J. V. D. Besselaar, Nurhayati, and Y. S. Swarinoto. 2016. Observed Trends and Variability in Climate Indices Relevant for Crop Yields in Southeast Asia. *Journal of Climate* **29**:2651–2669.
- Marks, D. 2011. Climate change and Thailand: Impact and response. *Contemporary Southeast Asia: A Journal of International and Strategic Affairs* **33**:229–258.
- Marshall, R. H., 1988. Environmental factors affecting plant productivity. Pages 27–32 *in* Fort Keogh research symposium, volume 1.
- McCutcheon, S., and J. Schnoor. 2003. Overview of phytotransformation and control of wastes. *Phytoremediation: Transformation and control of contaminants* **358**.
- Meehl, G. A., T. F. Stocker, W. D. Collins, P. Friedlingstein, T. Gaye, J. M. Gregory, A. Kitoh, R. Knutti, J. M. Murphy, A. Noda, et al. 2007. Global climate projections. Missing Journal Name .

- Min, J.-H., S.-T. Yun, K. Kim, H.-S. Kim, and D.-J. Kim. 2003. Geologic controls on the chemical behaviour of nitrate in riverside alluvial aquifers, Korea. *Hydrological Processes* **17**:1197–1211.
- Minderhoud, P., G. Erkens, V. Pham, V. T. Bui, L. Erban, H. Kooi, and E. Stouthamer. 2017. Impacts of 25 years of groundwater extraction on subsidence in the Mekong delta, Vietnam. *Environmental Research Letters* **12**:064006.
- Montmerle, T., J.-C. Augereau, M. Chaussidon, M. Gounelle, B. Marty, and A. Morbidelli. 2006. From Suns to Life: A Chronological Approach to the History of Life on Earth 3. Solar System Formation and Early Evolution: the First 100 Million Years. Missing Journal Name **98**:39–95.
- Nabangchang-Srisawalak, O., J. Jianjun, A. L. Indab, T. D. Thuy, D. Harder, and R. F. Subade. 2016. Mobilizing Resources for Marine Turtle Conservation in Asia: A Cross-Country Perspective. *Marine and Coastal Ecosystem Valuation, Institutions, and Policy in Southeast Asia* pages 129–142.
- Naito, T., and S. Traesupap, 2014. The Relationship Between Mangrove Deforestation and Economic Development in Thailand. Pages 273–294 in *Mangrove Ecosystems of Asia*. Springer.
- Nam, W.-H., E.-M. Hong, and J.-Y. Choi. 2015. Has climate change already affected the spatial distribution and temporal trends of reference evapotranspiration in South Korea? *Agricultural Water Management* **150**:129–138.
- National Climate Change Secretariat, . 2018. unknown. unknown. URL <https://www.nccs.gov.sg/climate-change-and-singapore/national-circumstances/impact-of-climate-change-on-singapore>.
- National Environment Agency, S., 2018. Singapore: Annual Weather Averages. URL <http://www.nea.gov.sg/weather-climate/forecasts/24-hour-forecast>.
- National Geographic Society, ., 2012. Meteorology. URL <https://www.nationalgeographic.org/encyclopedia/meteorology/>.
- Naylor, R. L., R. J. Goldburg, J. H. Primavera, N. Kautsky, M. C. Beveridge, J. Clay, C. Folke, J. Lubchenco, H. Mooney, and M. Troell. 2000. Effect of aquaculture on world fish supplies. *Nature* **405**:1017.

- Nicholls, R. J., and A. Cazenave. 2010. Sea-level rise and its impact on coastal zones. *science* **328**:1517–1520.
- Noss, R. F., and A. Cooperrider. 1994. Saving nature's legacy: protecting and restoring biodiversity. Island Press.
- Othman, J. 2003. Linking agricultural trade, land demand, and environmental externalities: Case of oil palm in Southeast Asia. *ASEAN Economic Bulletin* pages 244–255.
- Owen, T. 1992. The composition and early history of the atmosphere of Mars. *Mars* pages 818–834.
- Page, S., A. Hoscilo, H. Wösten, J. Jauhainen, M. Silvius, J. Rieley, H. Ritzema, K. Tansey, L. Graham, H. Vasander, et al. 2009. Restoration ecology of lowland tropical peatlands in Southeast Asia: current knowledge and future research directions. *Ecosystems* **12**:888–905.
- Page, S. E., and A. Hooijer. 2016. In the line of fire: the peatlands of Southeast Asia. *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. B* **371**:20150176.
- Parkpoom, S., and G. Harrison. 2008. Analyzing the Impact of Climate Change on Future Electricity Demand in Thailand. *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems* **23**:1441–1448.
- Phadnis, M. J., H. Levy, and W. J. Moxim. 2002. On the evolution of pollution from South and Southeast Asia during the winter-spring monsoon. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres* **107**.
- Pinto, E., M. Coelho, L. Oliver, and E. Massad. 2011. The influence of climate variables on dengue in Singapore. *International Journal of Environmental Health Research* **21**:415–426.
- Polgar, G. 2009. Species-area relationship and potential role as a biomonitor of mangrove communities of Malayan mudskippers. *Wetlands ecology and management* **17**:157.
- Promchote, P., S.-Y. S. Wang, and P. G. Johnson. 2016. The 2011 Great Flood in Thailand: Climate Diagnostics and Implications from Climate Change. *Journal of Climate* **29**:367–379.
- Qie, L., S. L. Lewis, M. J. Sullivan, G. Lopez-Gonzalez, G. C. Pickavance, T. Sunderland, P. Ashton, W. Hubau, K. A. Salim, S.-I. Aiba, et al. 2017. Long-term carbon sink in

- Borneo's forests halted by drought and vulnerable to edge effects. *Nature communications* **8**:1966.
- Quinton, J. N., G. Govers, K. Van Oost, and R. D. Bardgett. 2010. The impact of agricultural soil erosion on biogeochemical cycling. *Nature Geoscience* **3**:311.
- R Core Team, 2017. R: A Language and Environment for Statistical Computing. URL <https://www.R-project.org/>.
- Rasiah, R., A. Ahmed, A. Q. Al-Amin, and S. Chenayah. 2016. Climate change mitigation: comparative assessment of Malaysian and ASEAN scenarios. *Environmental Science and Pollution Research* **24**:2632–2642.
- Ree, J.-H., M. Cho, S.-T. Kwon, and E. Nakamura. 1996. Possible eastward extension of Chinese collision belt in South Korea: the Imjingang belt. *Geology* **24**:1071–1074.
- Rezanezhad, F., J. S. Price, W. L. Quinton, B. Lennartz, T. Milojevic, and P. Van Cappellen. 2016. Structure of peat soils and implications for water storage, flow and solute transport: A review update for geochemists. *Chemical Geology* **429**:75–84.
- Rhie, J.-H., K.-S. Lee, I.-H. Seo, S.-W. Min, and D.-Y. Chung. 2017. Assessing the Limits of Agricultural Situation for the Food Security in North Korea. *Korean Journal of Soil Science and Fertilizer* **50**:275–284.
- Robinson, A. K. 2017. The Growth of Singapore and Hong Kong in the Face of Climate Change and Environmental Degradation. University of Chicago Law School International Immersion Program Papers **64**.
- Rogers, D. P., and V. V. Tsirkunov. 2013. Weather and climate resilience: effective preparedness through national meteorological and hydrological services. World Bank Publications.
- Ruimy, A., G. Dedieu, and B. Saugier. 1996. TURC: A diagnostic model of continental gross primary productivity and net primary productivity. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles* **10**:269–285.
- Russell-Smith, J., S. Djoeroemana, J. Maan, and P. Pandanga. 2007. Rural livelihoods and burning practices in savanna landscapes of Nusa Tenggara Timur, eastern Indonesia. *Human Ecology* **35**:345–359.

- Sagan, C. 1994. Pale Blue Dot. Random House.
- Saidi, K., and S. Hammami. 2015. The impact of CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and economic growth on energy consumption in 58 countries. *Energy Reports* **1**:62–70.
- Santos, G., 1974. Mineral distribution and geological features of the Philippines. Pages 89–105 in Metallogeneticche und Geochemische Provinzen/Metallogenic and Geochemical Provinces. Springer.
- Sastry, N. 2002. Forest fires, air pollution, and mortality in Southeast Asia. *Demography* **39**:1–23.
- Scherr, S. J. 1999. Soil degradation: a threat to developing-country food security by 2020? *Intl Food Policy Res Inst.*
- Schmidt-Vogt, D., S. J. Leisz, O. Mertz, A. Heinemann, T. Thiha, P. Messerli, M. Epprecht, P. Van Cu, V. K. Chi, M. Hardiono, et al. 2009. An assessment of trends in the extent of swidden in Southeast Asia. *Human Ecology* **37**:269.
- Scholander, P., L. Van Dam, C. L. Claff, and J. Kanwisher. 1955. Micro gasometric determination of dissolved oxygen and nitrogen. *The Biological Bulletin* **109**:328–334.
- Schroeder, D. V. 1999. An Introduction to Thermal Physics. AAPT.
- Selvam, V., and V. Karunagaran. 2004. Ecology and biology of mangroves. MS Swaminathan Research Foundation, Chennai, 61pp .
- Setiawan, R., B. D. Gerber, U. M. Rahmat, D. Daryan, A. Y. Firdaus, M. Haryono, K. O. Khairani, Y. Kurniawan, B. Long, A. Lyet, et al. 2018. Preventing Global Extinction of the Javan Rhino: Tsunami Risk and Future Conservation Direction. *Conservation Letters* **11**:e12366.
- Shaaz, M., 2008. Causeway Pipeline. URL [https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Causeway\\_pipeline.jpg](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Causeway_pipeline.jpg).
- Shin, H.-J., M.-J. Park, S.-J. Hwang, J.-Y. Park, and S.-J. Kim. 2014. Hydrologic impact of climate change with adaptation of vegetation community in a forest-dominant

- watershed. Paddy and Water Environment **12**:51–63. URL <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10333-014-0426-2>.
- Shiva, V. 1993. Monocultures of the Mind. Trumpeter **10**.
- Shukla, K. P., S. Sharma, N. K. Singh, V. Singh, K. Tiwari, and S. Singh. 2011. Nature and role of root exudates: efficacy in bioremediation. African Journal of Biotechnology **10**:9717–9724.
- Silver, W., R. Ostertag, and A. Lugo. 2000. The potential for carbon sequestration through reforestation of abandoned tropical agricultural and pasture lands. Restoration ecology **8**:394–407.
- Sneddon, C., and C. Fox. 2006. Rethinking transboundary waters: A critical hydropolitics of the Mekong basin. Political Geography **25**:181–202.
- Snow, N., and . Ice Data Center, 2018. National Snow and Ice Data Center. URL [https://nsidc.org/cryosphere/arctic-meteorology/climate\\_vs\\_weather.html](https://nsidc.org/cryosphere/arctic-meteorology/climate_vs_weather.html).
- Sodhi, N. S., L. P. Koh, B. W. Brook, and P. K. Ng. 2004. Southeast Asian biodiversity: an impending disaster. Trends in ecology & evolution **19**:654–660.
- Spiro, T. G., K. L. Purvis Roberts, and W. M. Stigliani. 2012. Chemistry of the Environment. University Science Books.
- Spooner, D., and W. Maher. 2009. Benthic sediment composition and nutrient cycling in an Intermittently Closed and Open Lake Lagoon. Journal of Marine Systems **75**:33–45.
- Staff, S. S. 2003. Keys to soil taxonomy. Department of Agriculture: Natural Resources Conservation Service.
- Stenberg, B., R. A. V. Rossel, A. M. Mouazen, and J. Wetterlind, 2010. Visible and near infrared spectroscopy in soil science. Pages 163–215 *in* Advances in agronomy, volume 107. Elsevier.
- Stracher, G. B. 2007. Coal fires burning around the world: Opportunity for innovative and interdisciplinary research. GSA Today **17**:36–37.

- Strack, M. 2008. Peatlands and climate change. IPS, International Peat Society.
- Struckmeier, W., W. Gilbrich, A. Richts, and M. Zaepke. 2004. Groundwater resources of the world. Special edition. BGR, Hannover and UNESCO, Paris .
- Suh, J. 2015. Communitarian cooperative organic rice farming in Hongdong District, South Korea. *Journal of Rural Studies* **37**:29–37.
- Sunderland, T. C., J. Sayer, and H. T. M. Ha. 2012. Evidence-based conservation: lessons from the lower Mekong. Routledge.
- Suwannatrakai, A., K. Pratumchart, K. Suwannatrakai, K. Thinkhamrop, J. Chaiyos, C. S. Kim, R. Suwanweerakamorn, T. Boonmars, T. Wongsaroj, B. Sripa, and et al. 2016. Modeling impacts of climate change on the potential distribution of the carcinogenic liver fluke, *Opisthorchis viverrini*, in Thailand. *Parasitology Research* **116**:243–250.
- Suyanto, S., G. Applegate, R. P. Permana, N. Khususiyah, and I. Kurniawan. 2004. The role of fire in changing land use and livelihoods in Riau-Sumatra. *Ecology and Society* **9**.
- Taylor, D. A. 2003. The ABCs of haze. *Environmental Health Perspectives* **111**:A21.
- TBD. 2018. To Be Determined. Useful Source **TBD:TBD**.
- TCCS, 2013. Thailand Forecast: Floods, Droughts and Political Instability. URL <https://climateandsecurity.org/2011/11/14/thailand-forecast-floods-droughts-and-political-instability/>.
- Teague, K. A., and N. Galicchio. 2017. The evolution of meteorology a look into the past, present, and future of weather forecasting. Wiley Blackwell.
- Terborgh, J. W. 2015. Toward a trophic theory of species diversity. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* **112**:11415–11422.
- The World Bank, 2018a. CO2 emissions (metric tons per capita).
- The World Bank, 2018b. Methane emissions (

- Thorndike, E. H. 1976. Energy and Environment: a Primer for Scientists and Engineers. Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, Reading, MA.
- Thu, P. M., and J. Populus. 2007. Status and changes of mangrove forest in Mekong Delta: Case study in Tra Vinh, Vietnam. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* **71**:98–109.
- Tolera, M. B., S. Park, S. W. Chang, and I.-M. Chung. 2017. Spatial assessment of groundwater quality in the Jangseong region, South Korea. *Environmental Earth Sciences* **76**:545.
- Townsend, J. S. 2010. Quantum Physics: A Fundamental Approach to Modern Physics. University Science Books.
- Tripathi, B. M., M. Kim, D. Singh, L. Lee-Cruz, A. Lai-Hoe, A. Ainuddin, R. Go, R. A. Rahim, M. Husni, J. Chun, et al. 2012. Tropical soil bacterial communities in Malaysia: pH dominates in the equatorial tropics too. *Microbial ecology* **64**:474–484.
- Trisurat, Y. 2006. Community-based wetland management in northern Thailand. *International Journal of Environmental, Cultural, Economic and Social Sustainability* **2**:49–62.
- Trisurat, Y., P. Eawpanich, and R. Kalliola. 2016. Integrating land use and climate change scenarios and models into assessment of forested watershed services in Southern Thailand. *Environmental Research* **147**:611–620.
- Tubiello, F. N., M. Salvatore, A. F. Ferrara, J. House, S. Federici, S. Rossi, R. Biancalani, R. D. Condor Golec, H. Jacobs, A. Flammini, et al. 2015. The contribution of agriculture, forestry and other land use activities to global warming, 1990–2012. *Global change biology* **21**:2655–2660.
- Turetsky, M. R., B. Benscoter, S. Page, G. Rein, G. R. Van Der Werf, and A. Watts. 2015. Global vulnerability of peatlands to fire and carbon loss. *Nature Geoscience* **8**:11.
- Turley, C. 2000. Bacteria in the cold deep-sea benthic boundary layer and sediment—water interface of the NE Atlantic. *FEMS microbiology ecology* **33**:89–99.
- UNISDR. 2012. Philippines early warning system saves lives as thousands flee Typhoon Bopha. UNISDR News URL <https://www.unisdr.org/archive/29954>.

Unknown?, 2017. How Climate Change in Thailand Is Impacting Development. publisher?  
URL <https://borgenproject.org/climate-change-in-thailand/>.

U.S. Department of Agriculture, Office of the Chief Economist, and World Agricultural Outlook Board. 2017. USDA Agricultural Projections to 2026. Prepared by the Interagency Agricultural Projections Committee. Long-term Projections Report OCE-2017-1, Feb. .

US Department of Commerce, N. O., and A. Administration, 2006. A History of Observing the Weather. URL [https://celebrating200years.noaa.gov/foundations/weather\\_obs/welcome.html](https://celebrating200years.noaa.gov/foundations/weather_obs/welcome.html).

Vaiphasa, C., W. De Boer, A. Skidmore, S. Panitchart, T. Vaiphasa, N. Bamrongrugs, and P. Santitamnont. 2007. Impact of solid shrimp pond waste materials on mangrove growth and mortality: a case study from Pak Phanang, Thailand. *Hydrobiologia* **591**:47–57.

Valiela, I., J. L. Bowen, and J. K. York. 2001. Mangrove Forests: One of the World's Threatened Major Tropical Environments: At least 35% of the area of mangrove forests has been lost in the past two decades, losses that exceed those for tropical rain forests and coral reefs, two other well-known threatened environments. *Bioscience* **51**:807–815.

van Groenigen, K.-J., J. Six, B. A. Hungate, M.-A. de Graaff, N. Van Breemen, and C. Van Kessel. 2006. Element interactions limit soil carbon storage. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* **103**:6571–6574.

Van Oost, K., T. Quine, G. Govers, S. De Gryze, J. Six, J. Harden, J. Ritchie, G. McCarty, G. Heckrath, C. Kosmas, et al. 2007. The impact of agricultural soil erosion on the global carbon cycle. *Science* **318**:626–629.

Van Straaten, P. 2002. Rocks for crops: Agrominerals of sub-Saharan Africa. MISSING JOURNAL NAME .

Velasco, E., and M. Roth. 2012. Review of Singapore's air quality and greenhouse gas emissions: Current situation and opportunities. *Journal of the Air and Waste Management Association* **62**:625–641.

Verstappen, H. T. 1997. The effect of climatic change on southeast Asian geomorphology. *Journal of Quaternary Science: Published for the Quaternary Research Association* **12**:413–418.

- Voris, H. K. 2000. Maps of Pleistocene sea levels in Southeast Asia: shorelines, river systems and time durations. *Journal of Biogeography* **27**:1153–1167.
- Willer, H., J. Lernoud, and B. Schlatter. 2014. Current statistics on organic agriculture worldwide: Organic area, producers and market. *The world of organic agriculture statistics and emerging trends* pages 33–124.
- Williams, R. T., and R. L. Crawford. 1984. Methane production in Minnesota peatlands. *Applied and Environmental Microbiology* **47**:1266–1271.
- World Resources Institute, ., 2017. ASEAN Countries Must Act Together to Confront Climate Change. URL <http://www.wri.org/blog/2017/11/asean-countries-must-act-together-confront-climate-change>.
- Xie, K.-C., 2015. Geological Characteristics of Coal. Pages 1–27 in *Structure and Reactivity of Coal*. Springer.
- Xie, Y., 2013. knitr: A general-purpose package for dynamic report generation in R. URL <http://yihui.name/knitr/>.
- Xue, Z., J. P. Liu, and Q. Ge. 2011. Changes in hydrology and sediment delivery of the Mekong River in the last 50 years: connection to damming, monsoon, and ENSO. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms* **36**:296–308.
- Yoo, S.-H., S.-H. Lee, J.-Y. Choi, and J.-B. Im. 2016. Estimation of potential water requirements using water footprint for the target of food self-sufficiency in South Korea. *Paddy and water environment* **14**:259–269.
- Youngchul, K., H. Gilson, L. Jin-Woo, P. Je-Chul, K. Dong-Sup, K. Min-Gi, and C. In-Soung. 2006. Experiences with constructed wetland systems in Korea. *Journal of Ocean University of China* **5**:345–350.
- Yuan, H., M. Sun, and Y. Wang. 2015. Assessment of the benefits of the Chinese Public Weather Service. *Meteorological Applications* **23**:132–139.
- Zhao, G., M. Sun, S. A. Wilde, and L. Sanzhong. 2005. Late Archean to Paleoproterozoic evolution of the North China Craton: key issues revisited. *Precambrian Research* **136**:177–202.

# Glossary

**Biodiversity** biodiversity is cool.. 31

**Biomass** living and dead things produced by living organisms.. 34

**chloroplasts** is cool.. 35

**Fossil fuels** are hydrocarbons, meaning they are composed of hydrogen and carbon. This term typically includes coal, crude oil, and natural gas which all started to form millions of years ago from plant and animal remains.. 113, 115

**gross primary productivity** is cool.. 35

**nebulae** huge clouds of gas.. 5

**net primary productivity** is cool.. 35

**orographic effects** is cool.. 28

**Peat** is cool.. xviii, 116

**photosynthesis** is cool.. 35

**respired carbon** is cool.. 37